# brother

# **Operation Manual**

# **Embroidery and Sewing Machine**

Product Code: 882-W20/W22



Be sure to read this document before using the machine. We recommend that you keep this document nearby for future reference.

# **INTRODUCTION**

Thank you for purchasing this embroidery and sewing machine. Before using this machine, carefully read the "IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS", and then study this manual for the correct operation of the various functions.

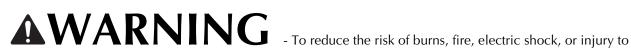
In addition, after you have finished reading this manual, store it where it can quickly be accessed for future reference.

# **IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

Please read these safety instructions before attempting to use the machine.



f 1 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet immediately after using, when cleaning, when making any user servicing adjustments mentioned in this manual, or if you are leaving the machine unattended.



persons.

- 2 Always unplug the machine from the electrical outlet when removing covers, or when making any adjustments mentioned in the instruction manual.
- To unplug the machine, switch the machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off, then grasp the plug and pull it out of the electrical outlet. Do not pull on the cord.
- Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet. Do not use an extension cord.
- Always unplug your machine if the power is cut.

**3** Electrical Hazards:

- This machine should be connected to an AC power source within the range indicated on the rating label. Do not connect it to a DC power source or inverter. If you are not sure what kind of power source you have, contact a qualified electrician.
- This machine is approved for use in the country of purchase only.

4 Never operate this machine if it has a damaged cord or plug, if it is not working properly, if it has been dropped or damaged, or water is spilled on the unit. Return the machine to the nearest authorized Brother dealer for examination, repair, electrical or mechanical adjustment.

- While the machine is stored or in use if you notice anything unusual, such as an odor, heat, discoloration or deformation, stop using the machine immediately and unplug the power cord.
- When transporting the sewing machine, be sure to carry it by its handle. Lifting the sewing machine by any other part may damage the machine or result in the machine falling, which could cause injuries.
- When lifting the sewing machine, be careful not to make any sudden or careless movements, otherwise you may injure your back or knees.

# **5** Always keep your work area clear:

- Never operate the machine with any air openings blocked. Keep ventilation openings of the sewing machine and foot control free from the build up of lint, dust, and loose cloth.
- Do not store objects on the foot controller.
- Do not use extension cords. Plug the machine directly into the electrical outlet.
- Never drop or insert any object into any opening.
- Do not operate where aerosol (spray) products are being used or where oxygen is being administered.
- Do not use the machine near a heat source, such as a stove or iron; otherwise, the machine, power cord or garment being sewn may ignite, resulting in fire or an electric shock.
- Do not place this sewing machine on an unstable surface, such as an unsteady or slanted table, otherwise the sewing machine may fall, resulting in injuries.

**b** Special care is required when sewing:

- Always pay close attention to the needle. Do not use bent or damaged needles.
- Keep fingers away from all moving parts. Special care is required around the machine needle.
- Switch the sewing machine to the symbol "O" position to turn it off when making any adjustments in the needle area.
- Do not use a damaged or incorrect needle plate, as it could cause the needle to break.
- Do not push or pull the fabric when sewing, and follow careful instruction when free motion stitching so that you do not deflect the needle and cause it to break.

**7** This machine is not a toy:

- Your close attention is necessary when the machine is used by or near children.
- The plastic bag that this sewing machine was supplied in should be kept out of the reach of children or disposed of. Never allow children to play with the bag due to the danger of suffocation.
- Do not use outdoors.

**8** For a longer service life:

- When storing this machine, avoid direct sunlight and high humidity locations. Do not use or store the machine near a space heater, iron, halogen lamp, or other hot objects.
- Use only neutral soaps or detergents to clean the case. Benzene, thinner, and scouring powders can damage the case and machine, and should never be used.
- Always consult the operation manual when replacing or installing any assemblies, the presser feet, needle, or other parts to assure correct installation.

### **9** For repair or adjustment:

- If the light unit is damaged, it must be replaced by an authorized Brother dealer.
- In the event a malfunction occurs or adjustment is required, first follow the troubleshooting table in the back of the operation manual to inspect and adjust the machine yourself. If the problem persists, please consult your local authorized Brother dealer.

Use this machine only for its intended use as described in the manual.

Use accessories recommended by the manufacturer as contained in this manual.

Use only the interface cable (USB cable) included with this machine.

Use only the mouse designed specifically for this machine.

Use only the sensor pen included with this machine.

The contents of this manual and specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

For additional product information and updates, visit our website at <u>www.brother.com</u>

# SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS This machine is intended for household use.

### FOR USERS IN COUNTRIES EXCEPT EUROPEAN COUNTRIES

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

### FOR USERS IN EUROPEAN COUNTRIES

This appliance can be used by children aged from 8 years and above and persons with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities or lack of experience and knowledge if they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance in a safe way and understand the hazards involved. Children shall not play with the appliance. Cleaning and user maintenance shall not be made by children without supervision.

# FOR USERS IN THE UK, EIRE, MALTA AND CYPRUS ONLY

### IMPORTANT

- In the event of replacing the plug fuse, use a fuse approved by ASTA to BS 1362, i.e. carrying the 🗰 mark, rating as marked on plug.
- Always replace the fuse cover. Never use plugs with the fuse cover omitted.
- If the available electrical outlet is not suitable for the plug supplied with this equipment, you should contact your authorized Brother dealer to obtain the correct lead.

# Trademarks

#### **IMPORTANT:**

READ BEFORE DOWNLOADING, COPYING, INSTALLING OR USING.

By downloading, copying, installing or using the software you agree to this license. If you do not agree to this license, do not download, install, copy or use the software.

### Intel License Agreement For Open Source Computer Vision Library

Copyright © 2000, Intel Corporation, all rights reserved. Third party copyrights are property of their respective owners.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistribution's of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistribution's in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- The name of Intel Corporation may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

This software is provided by the copyright holders and contributors "as is" and any express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are disclaimed. In no event shall Intel or contributors be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages (including, but not limited to, procurement of substitute goods or services; loss of use, data, or profits; or business interruption) however caused and on any theory of liability, whether in contract, strict liability, or tort (including negligence or otherwise) arising in any way out of the use of this software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

All information provided related to future Intel products and plans is preliminary and subject to change at any time, without notice.

Secure Digital (SD) Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

CompactFlash is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sandisk Corporation.

Memory Stick is a registered trademark or a trademark of Sony Corporation.

SmartMedia is a registered trademark or a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

MultiMediaCard (MMC) is a registered trademark or a trademark of Infineon Technologies AG.

xD-Picture Card is a registered trademark or a trademark of Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd.

IBM is a registered trademark or a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

"Adobe" and "Adobe Reader" are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brands and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the explanations for markings such as  $^{\circ}$  and  $^{m}$  are not clearly described within the text.

# Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (For U.S.A. Only)

Responsible Party:

Brother International Corporation 200 Crossing Boulevard P.O. Box 6911 Bridgewater, NJ 08807-0911 USA TEL : (908) 704-1700

#### declares that the product

Product Name:	Brother Sewing Machine
Model Number:	XV8500D

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the authorized Brother dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The included interface cable should be used in order to ensure compliance with the limits for a Class B digital device.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Brother Industries, Ltd. could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

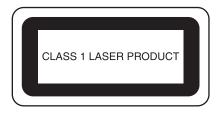
# Laser Notices (For U.S.A. only)

### **Laser Safety**

This sewing machine is certified as a Class 1 laser product under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. This means that the sewing machine does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

### IEC 60825-1 Specification

This sewing machine is a Class 1 laser product as defined in IEC 60825-1:2007 specifications.



The laser beam emitted by the laser unit installed in this machine is restricted to an output at a safe level. However, the machine contains 6-milliwat, 630-640nanometer wavelength, 6-12 degree at parallel divergence angle, 24-34 degree at perpendicular divergence angle, InGaAIP laser diodes. Therefore, eye damage may result from disassembling or altering this machine. Safety precautions have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

### **FDA Regulations**

U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has implemented regulations for laser products manufactured on and after August 2, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States. The label shown on the back of the sewing machine indicates compliance with the FDA regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

Brother Industries, Ltd. 15-1, Naeshiro-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya 467-8561, JAPAN

This product complies with FDA performance standards for laser products except for deviations pursuant to Laser Notice No. 50, dated June 24, 2007.

# **A** CAUTION

• Use of controls, adjustments or the performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

# Laser Notices (For countries except U.S.A.)

### IEC 60825-1 Specification

This sewing machine is a Class 1 laser product as defined in IEC 60825-1:2007 specifications.



The laser beam emitted by the laser unit installed in this machine is restricted to an output at a safe level. However, the machine contains 6-milliwat, 630-640nanometer wavelength, 6-12 degree at parallel divergence angle, 24-34 degree at perpendicular divergence angle, InGaAIP laser diodes. Therefore, eye damage may result from disassembling or altering this machine. Safety precautions have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

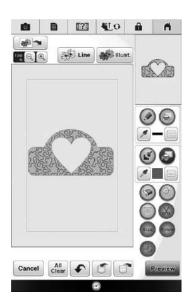
# 

- This sewing machine has a Class 3B Laser Diode in the Laser Unit. The Laser Unit should not be opened under any circumstances.
- Use of controls, adjustments or the performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

# **OUTSTANDING FEATURES**

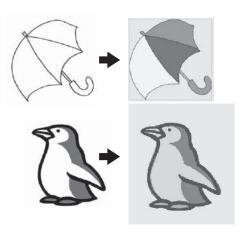
# **My Design Center**

Draw your own shape or lines to design original embroidery patterns. You can specify colors, line type and fill stitch type. Try the stipple-like embroidery pattern. It's very easy and fun!



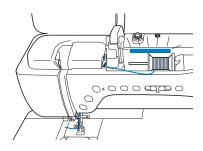
# Line Scan / Fill Scan

You don't need a computer to create line art anymore. Scan your favorite drawing or illustration or import a JPEG format data to make your original embroidery pattern. Embroider your unforgettable memories!



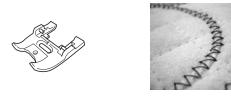
# **Spool Stand LED Lighting**

Now, your sewing machine shows you the thread color you are going to embroider next.



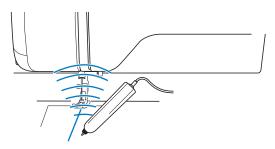
# Couching Dual Feed Foot with Dual Feed

Couching gains more popularity everyday. The powerful dual feed foot helps you add embellishment securely with an attractive result to your favorite materials. Enjoy creating many types of couching embellishment projects with this dual feed foot.



### Improved Laser Guideline Marker

It's easy and accurate to specify the stitch position using the improved laser guideline marker. You can use this function easily without any preparation.



# **Improved Camera Function**

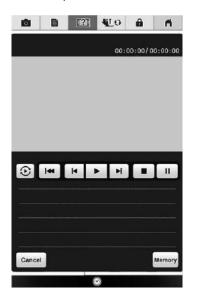
Can you imagine a sewing machine with a built-in camera? Not only viewing the close up view of the needle position, but also you can align the embroidery position, connect the embroidery patterns and place the pattern position while checking the fabric image. The camera functions become clearer and more accurate.



# Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos

Your MPEG-4 (MP4) videos can be played and saved from USB media. It's going to be easier to create your project watching the tutorial video on the machine.

Original tutorial videos are installed in this machine. When you find this icon **mathematical** on the title in this manual, you can find the tutorial video of the procedure in your machine.



# WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE

# **Getting Ready**

To learn the operation of the principal parts and the screens



# **Utility Stitches**

Pre-programmed with more than 100 frequently used stitches



# **MY CUSTOM STITCH**

Create original decorative stitches

Chapter 5 Page 197

# **Advanced Embroidery**

To create the variety of embroidery designs

Chapter 7 Page 285

# How to Create Bobbin Work

To learn how to create bobbin work

Chapter 9 Page 371

# **Sewing Basics**

To learn how to prepare for sewing and basic sewing operations

Chapter 2 Page 81

# Character/Decorative Stitches

The variety of stitches widen your creativity

Chapter 4 Page 169

# **Basic Embroidery**

Maximum 36 cm  $\times$  24 cm (approx. 14  $\times$  9-1/2 inches) for large embroidery designs

Chapter **6** Page 209

# **My Design Center**

Create original embroidery pattern

Chapter **8** Page 337

# **Appendix**

Caring for your machine and dealing with errors and malfunctions

Chapter 10 Page 387

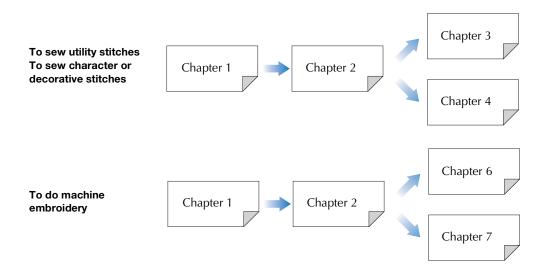
# HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Chapter 1 and Chapter 2 explain your sewing machine's basic operation procedures for someone who is using the sewing machine for the first time. If you want to sew utility stitches or character/ decorative stitches, read Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, then go on to Chapter 3 (Utility Stitches) or Chapter 4 (Character/ Decorative Stitches).

When you are ready to begin using the embroidery function after reading Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, proceed to Chapter 6 (Basic Embroidery) and Chapter 7 (Advanced Embroidery).

In the screens appearing in the step-by-step instructions, the parts referred to in the operations are marked

with \_\_\_\_\_\_. Compare the screen in the directions with the actual screen, and carry out the operation. If, while using the machine, you experience something you do not understand, or there is a function you would like to know more about, refer to the index at the back of the operation manual in conjunction with the table of contents to find the section of the manual you should refer to.



# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	1
IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS	1
Trademarks	4
OUTSTANDING FEATURES	8
WHAT YOU CAN DO WITH THIS MACHINE	. 10
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL	. 11
NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR	
FUNCTIONS	. 15
Machine	15
Needle and Presser Foot Section	16
Embroidery Unit	
Operation Buttons	
Using the Flat Bed Attachment	18
Using the Accessory Case	18
Storing Bobbin Clips	19
Included Accessories	
Accessories that are Included in Some Countries or Regions	22
Options	22
Using the Multi-purpose Screwdriver	24
Using the Spool Stand	24
Using the Multi-function Foot Controller	
(Only for supplied models)	26
Assembling the Controller	26

29

### Chapter 1 Getting Ready

Setting Your Machine for the First Time       31         LCD SCREEN       32         Using the Machine Setting Mode Key       33         Using the Sewing Machine Help Key       42         Using the Operation Guide Function       43         Using the Sewing Guide Function       44         Playing a Tutorial Video       45         Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos       46         Using the Pattern Explanation Function       47         CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE       48         MACHINE       48         Using USB Media       48         Connecting the Machine to the Computer       48         Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)       49         USING THE SENSOR PEN       50         Connecting the Sensor Pen       50         Connecting the Sensor Pen       50         Connecting the Sensor Pen       51         Using the Sensor Pen       52         Calibrating the Sensor Pen       52         Calibrating the Sensor Pen       52         LOWER THREADING       54         Winding the Bobbin       54         Setting the Spool Stand       67         Using the Trivin Needle Mode       67         Using the Presser Foot       70 <th>TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF</th> <th></th>	TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF	
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key33Using the Sewing Machine Help Key42Using the Operation Guide Function43Using the Sewing Guide Function44Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47 <b>CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THEMACHINE</b> 48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49 <b>USING THE SENSOR PEN</b> 50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72ChanGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Setting Your Machine for the First Time	31
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key33Using the Sewing Machine Help Key42Using the Operation Guide Function43Using the Sewing Guide Function44Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47 <b>CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THEMACHINE</b> 48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49 <b>USING THE SENSOR PEN</b> 50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72ChanGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	LCD SCREEN	. 32
Using the Sewing Machine Help Key42Using the Operation Guide Function43Using the Sewing Guide Function44Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE48MACHINE48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Syool Stand67Using the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot71Using the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Using the Machine Setting Mode Key	33
Using the Operation Guide Function43Using the Sewing Guide Function44Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE48MACHINE48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Using the Sewing Machine Help Key	42
Using the Sewing Guide Function44Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE48MACHINE48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Connecting the Sensor Pen51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Spool Stand62Upper Threading62Using the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot71Using the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Using the Operation Guide Function	43
Playing a Tutorial Video45Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46Using the Pattern Explanation Function47CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THEMACHINE48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Spool Stand67Using the Spool Stand67Using the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot71Using the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using the Pattern Explanation Function47CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THEMACHINE.48Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer.48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately).49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Spool Stand67Using the Presser Foot70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot71Using the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THEMACHINE		
MACHINE.48Using USB Media.48Connecting the Machine to the Computer.48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately).49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Setting the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Spool Stand67Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Using the Pattern Explanation Function	47
Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using USB Media48Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	MACHINE	. 48
Connecting the Machine to the Computer48Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
USING THE SENSOR PEN50Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50Connecting the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE77About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Connecting the Sensor Pen50Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using the Sensor Pen Holder51Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using the Sensor Pen51Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Important Information about Sensor Pen52Calibrating the Sensor Pen52LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
LOWER THREADING54Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Winding the Bobbin54Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Calibrating the Sensor Pen	52
Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	LOWER THREADING	. 54
Setting the Bobbin59Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61UPPER THREADING62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Winding the Bobbin	54
UPPER THREADING.62Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode.65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Upper Threading62Using the Twin Needle Mode.65Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread	61
Using the Twin Needle Mode	UPPER THREADING	. 62
Using the Spool Stand67Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly69CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Using the Twin Needle Mode	65
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT70Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Removing the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot70Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71Using the Dual Feed Foot72CHANGING THE NEEDLE75About the Needle77Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations77NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
Attaching the Presser Foot       70         Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       71         Using the Dual Feed Foot       72         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       75         About the Needle       77         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       77         NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT	. 70
Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter       71         Using the Dual Feed Foot       72         CHANGING THE NEEDLE       75         About the Needle       77         Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations       77         NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	Removing the Presser Foot	70
Using the Dual Feed Foot		
Using the Dual Feed Foot	Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter	71
About the Needle	Using the Dual Feed Foot	72
Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations		
NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN		
	Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations	
	NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN	
		. 78

### Chapter 2 Sewing Basics 81

SEWING	82
Sewing a Stitch	82
Specifying the Multi-Function Foot Controller	
(Only for supplied models)	84
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches	85
Automatic Reinforcement Stitching	85
Sewing Curves	87
Changing Sewing Direction	87
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics	
Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener Tape	
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics	
Sewing Stretch Fabrics	
STITCH SETTINGS	90
Setting the Stitch Width	90
Setting the Stitch Length	
Setting the "L/R Shift"	91
Setting the Thread Tension	
USEFUL FUNCTIONS	93
Automatic Thread Cutting	
Adjusting the Needle Drop Position with the Guideline Marker	94
Pivoting	
Using the Knee Lifter	96
Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot	
Pressure)	
Needle Position - Stitch Placement	
Checking the Needle Location in the Screen	98
USING SENSOR FUNCTIONS WITH SEWING	
STITCH 1	00
Sensor Function Area	100
Specifying the Guideline Marker Position	
With the Sensor Pen	100
Specifying the Needle Drop Position With the Sensor Pen	102
Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Stitching Width	
	103
Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Sewing End Point	105

## Chapter 3 Utility Stitches 109

SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES	110
Selecting a Stitch	113
Saving Your Stitch Settings	
SEWING THE STITCHES	
Straight Stitches	116
Dart Seam	121
Gathering	121
Flat Fell Seam	
Pintuck	123
Zigzag Stitches	124
Elastic Zigzag Stitches	125
Overcasting	126
Quilting	129
Blind Hem Stitches	
Appliqué	
Shelltuck Stitches	142
Scallop Stitches	142
Crazy Quilting	143
Smocking Stitches	143
Fagoting	
Tape or Elastic Attaching	145
Heirloom	146
Zigzag Couching	147
One-step Buttonholes	
Four-step Buttonholes	
Bar Tacks	155
Button Sewing	156
Eyelet	157
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch)	
Zipper Insertion	159

Edge Sewing ..... 162

Chapter 4 Character/Decorative Stitches	169
SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS	170
Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stit	ch
Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/	
Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns	
Alphabet Characters/Japanese characters SEWING STITCH PATTERNS	
Sewing Attractive Finishes	
Basic Sewing	
Making Adjustments	176
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS	178
Changing the Size	
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only) .	
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image	
Sewing a Pattern Continuously	
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern	181
Checking the Image	182
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS	
Before Combining	
Combining Various Stitch Patterns Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns	
Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns	
Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length	
Making Step Stitch Patterns	
(for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)	
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION	
Stitch Data Precautions	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media	
Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer	
Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory	
Recalling from USB Media	193
Recalling from USB Media Recalling from the Computer	193
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH	193 194 <b>197</b>
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH	193 194 <b>197</b> 198
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b>
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer Attaching the Embroidery Unit	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer Attaching the Embroidery Unit SELECTING PATTERNS	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211 211 214
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer Attaching the Embroidery Unit SELECTING PATTERNS Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Decorative Alphabet Patter	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211 211 214 erns/
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer Attaching the Embroidery Unit Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Decorative Alphabet Patter Utility Embroidery Patterns/Bobbin Work Patterns	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211 211 214 orns/ 216
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH ENTERING STITCH DATA Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES Storing Custom Stitches in Your List Retrieving Stored Stitches Chapter 6 Basic Embroidery BEFORE EMBROIDERING Embroidery Step by Step Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer Attaching the Embroidery Unit SELECTING PATTERNS Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Decorative Alphabet Patter	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 210 211 211 214 erns/ 216 217
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 206 206 200 210 211 211 211 214 217 219 219
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 206 <b>209</b> 210 211 211 211 214 215 217 219 219 221
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 209</b> <b> 210</b> 211 <b> 211</b> <b> 214</b> rrns/ 216 217 219 219 221 222
Recalling from the Computer Chapter 5 MY CUSTOM STITCH DESIGNING A STITCH	193 194 <b>197</b> 198 200 204 206 206 206 206 206 210 210 211 211 214 orns/ 216 217 219 219 221 222 224
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 209</b> <b> 210</b> 211 <b> 211</b> <b> 214</b> rms/ 216 217 219 219 221 222 <b> 224</b> 226 226 226
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 207</b> <b> 210</b> 210 211 <b> 214</b> rms/ 216 217 219 219 221 222 <b> 224</b> 226 226 227
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 207</b> <b> 210</b> 211 <b> 211</b> <b> 211</b> <b> 214</b> rrns/ 215 219 221 221 222 <b> 224</b> 226 226 227 228
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 207</b> <b> 210</b> 211 <b> 211</b> <b> 214</b> rrns/ 216 217 219 221 221 222 <b> 224</b> 226 226 227 228 229
Recalling from the Computer	193 194 <b>197</b> <b> 198</b> <b> 200</b> 204 <b> 206</b> 206 <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 206</b> <b> 207</b> <b> 210</b> 211 <b> 211</b> <b> 214</b> rrns/ 215 219 221 221 222 <b> 224</b> 226 226 227 228 228 229 230

Patterns Only)	231
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns	232
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns	233

Deleting the Pattern	
Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified	
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing	
Changing the Thread Color	
Creating a Custom Thread Table	
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table	
Find New Color Schemes With	
the Color Shuffling Function 241	
Designing Repeated Patterns 243	
Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly	
Duplicating a Pattern	
VIEWING THE EMBROIDERY SCREEN	
COMBINING PATTERNS	
Editing Combined Patterns	
Sewing Combined Patterns	
PREPARING THE FABRIC	
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric	$\prec$
Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame	
Embroidering Small Fabrics or Fabric Edges 259	
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME 261	
CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION 263	
Checking the Needle Drop Point With the Embroidery Foot	
"W+" with LED Pointer 263	
Aligning the Embroidering Position	
Using the Built-In Camera	
Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position	
Specifying the Embroidering Position With the Sensor Pen 268	
Checking the Pattern Position	
EMBROIDERING AN PATTERN 273	
Embroidering Attractive Finishes 273	
Embroidering Patterns 274	
Spool Stand LED 276	
Using Appliqués	
ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY	
PROCESS 280	6
<b>PROCESS</b> 280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280	6
<b>PROCESS</b> 280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281	6
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282	6
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282	6
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282	6
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285	6 7
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286	6 7
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285	6 7
PROCESS       280         If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread       280         If the Thread Breaks During Sewing       281         Restarting from the Beginning       282         Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power       282         Chapter 7       Advanced Embroidery       285         VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS       286         Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color :       286         Display the Fabric While Aligning       286	6 7
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286	6 7
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery286	6 7
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297	6 7 8
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet.299	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case301	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)303	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function303	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (End Color Trim)304	6 7 8 9
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Position Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (End Color Trim)304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305	6 7 8 9 10
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing281Restarting from the Beginning282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)303Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305Changing the Thread Color Display305	6 7 8 9 10
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing.281Restarting from the Beginning.282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color :286Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERYPATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305Changing the Embroidery Frame Display306	6 7 8 9 10
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing.281Restarting from the Beginning.282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color :286Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305Changing the Thread Color Display305Changing the Embroidery Frame Display306Aligning the Embroidery Frame Display306	6 7 8 9 10
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing.281Restarting from the Beginning.282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color :286Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305Changing the Embroidery Frame Display306Aligning the Pattern and the Needle307Embroidering Linked Characters308	6 7 8 9 10
PROCESS280If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread280If the Thread Breaks During Sewing.281Restarting from the Beginning.282Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power282Chapter 7Advanced Embroidery285VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS286Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color :286Monochrome)286Display the Fabric While Aligning286Basting Embroidery290Creating an Appliqué Piece291PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY296Selecting a Pattern297Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet299Sewing Embroidery Patterns300MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS301Adjusting Thread Tension301Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case303Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function304Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)304Adjusting the Embroidery Speed305Changing the Thread Color Display305Changing the Embroidery Frame Display306Aligning the Embroidery Frame Display306	6 7 8 9 10

13

Saving Embroidery Patterns to	USB Media 313
	the Computer 314
	achine's Memory
	IONS 317
	an Appliqué (1) 317
	e an Appliqué (2) 318
Sewing Split Embroidery Patter	ns 319
USING THE CAMERA TO	
CONNECT PATTERNS	
Changing the Desition of a Stic	ker 327
	<b>D PATTERNS</b>
	ed Along an Edge 332
RESUME FEATURE	
Chapter 8 My Design	Center 337
ABOUT MY DESIGN CEN	TER 338
	REEN 340
STITCH SETTINGS SCREE	N
EMBROIDERY IMAGE PR	EVIEW SCREEN 349
MY DESIGN CENTER WI	
	TH SCAN 350
Using the Scanning Frame	<b>TH SCAN 350</b>
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background	<b>TH SCAN 350</b> 
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN	TH SCAN         350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C	TH SCAN         350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan	TH SCAN         350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan	TH SCAN         350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN	TH SCAN         350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING.	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree	TH SCAN       350         350       350         Image       351         354       354         Create a Pattern       354         Create a Pattern       357         Create a Pattern       357         On Center       360         ippling Pattern       363         367       367         ate Bobbin Work 371
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan ILLUSTRATION SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK	TH SCAN       350         350       350         Image       351         354       354         Greate a Pattern       354         Greate a Pattern       357         Greate Bobbin Work       371         372       372
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread .	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread . CREATING BOBBIN WO	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread . CREATING BOBBIN WO Positioning the Fabric and Sew	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread . CREATING BOBBIN WO Positioning the Fabric and Sew Bobbin Work Free Motion Sew	TH SCAN       350         350       350         Image       351         354       354         Greate a Pattern       354         Greate a Pattern       357         Greate a Pattern       357         Greate a Pattern       360         n Center       360         n Center       360         ippling Pattern       363         372       372         N WORK       373         374       374         RK (SEWING)       378         ring.       378         ring.       378
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread . CREATING BOBBIN WO Positioning the Fabric and Sew Bobbin Work Free Motion Sew CREATING BOBBIN WOR	TH SCAN       350
Using the Scanning Frame Scanning to Trace Background LINE SCAN Using the Scanning Frame to C with Line Scan Using the Scanning Frame to C with Illustration Scan STIPPLING Basic Stippling with My Design Scanning Drawing to Create St Scanning Fabric and Stippling Chapter 9 How to Cree ABOUT BOBBIN WORK PREPARING FOR BOBBIN Required Materials Upper Threading Preparing the Bobbin Thread . CREATING BOBBIN WO Positioning the Fabric and Sew Bobbin Work Free Motion Sew CREATING BOBBIN WOR Selecting the Pattern	TH SCAN       350         350       350         Image       351         354       354         Greate a Pattern       354         Greate a Pattern       357         Greate a Pattern       357         Greate a Pattern       360         n Center       360         n Center       360         ippling Pattern       363         372       372         N WORK       373         374       374         RK (SEWING)       378         ring.       378         ring.       378

Start Embroidering	382
ADJUSTING BOBBIN WORK	
THREAD TENSION	. 385
TROUBLESHOOTING	. 386

### Chapter 10 Appendix

CARE AND MAINTENANCE	388
Restrictions on oiling	388
Precautions on storing the machine	388
Cleaning the LCD Screen	388
Cleaning the Machine Casing	388
Cleaning the Race	388
Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area	390
About the Maintenance Message	390
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN	391
Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display	391

**387** 

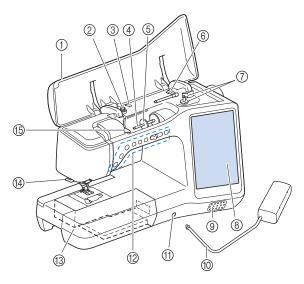
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning	391
TROUBLESHOOTING	392
Frequent Troubleshooting Topics	392
Upper Thread is Too Tight	392
Tangled Thread on Wrong Side of Fabric	393
Incorrect Thread Tension	395
Fabric is Caught in the Machine and Cannot be Removed	396
List of Symptoms	399
ERROR MESSAGES	405
SPECIFICATIONS	411
UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE	412
Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media	412
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer	413
STITCH SETTING CHART	414
INDEX	423

# NAMES OF MACHINE PARTS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

The names of the various parts of the sewing machine and their functions are described below. Before using the sewing machine, carefully read these descriptions to learn the names of the machine parts.

# Machine

### Front View



① Top cover

Open the top cover when threading the machine or winding the bobbin.

- Pre-tension disk Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk when winding the bobbin thread. (page 54)
- ③ Thread guide for bobbin winding Pass the thread through this thread guide when winding the bobbin thread. (page 54)
- ④ Spool pin Place a spool of thread on the spool pin. (page 62)
- 5 Spool cap

Use the spool cap to hold the spool of thread in place. (page 62)

- (6) Supplemental spool pin Use this spool pin to wind the bobbin thread, or to sew with the twin needle. (page 54, 65)
- ⑦ Bobbin winder
- Use the bobbin winder when winding the bobbin. (page 54) (8) LCD (liquid crystal display)
- Settings for the selected stitch and error messages appear in the LCD. (page 32)
- ③ Speaker
- 1 Knee lifter
- Use the knee lifter to raise and lower the presser foot. (page 96) (f) Knee lifter slot
- Insert the knee lifter into the slot. (page 96)
  (2) Operation buttons (7 buttons) and sewing speed controller

Use these buttons and the slide to operate the sewing machine. (page 17)

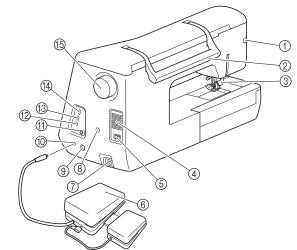
- (3) Flat bed attachment with accessory compartment Store presser feet and bobbins in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment. When sewing cylindrical pieces, remove the flat bed attachment. (page 18)
- (4) Thread cutter

Pass the threads through the thread cutter to cut them. (page 64)

#### (5) Thread guide plate

Pass the thread around the thread guide plate when threading upper thread. (page 62)

### Right-side/Rear View



- Connector for the presser foot Connect the dual feed foot or embroidery foot with LED pointer. (page 72, 211)
- Handle
  - Carry the sewing machine by its handle when transporting the machine.
- ③ Presser foot lever

Raise and lower the presser foot lever to raise and lower the presser foot. (page 70)

④ Air vent

The air vent allows the air surrounding the motor to circulate. Do not cover the air vent while the sewing machine is being used.

**(5)** Main power switch

Use the main power switch to turn the sewing machine ON and OFF. (page 30)

6 Multi-function foot controller

Various sewing machine operations can be programmed into the multi-function foot controller. For some countries and areas, normal foot controller is included with the machine.

- Power cord receptacle Insert the power cord into the machine receptacle. (page 30)
   Server men helder commenter
- Sensor pen holder connector Connect the included sensor pen holder. (page 51)
   Sensor pen jack
- Connect the sensor pen. (page 50)
  - Foot controller jack
- Insert the foot controller plug into its jack on the machine. (page 83)
- Headphones or external speaker jack Connect the headphone.
- USB port for computer

In order to import/export patterns between a computer and the machine, plug the USB cable into the USB port. (page 48, 189, 191, 194, 222, 298, 314, 413)

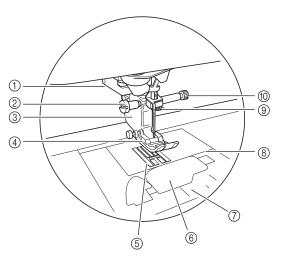
- (3) USB port for mouse (page 48)
- USB port

In order to send patterns from/to USB media, plug the USB media directly into the USB port. (page 36, 48,189,190, 193, 221, 239, 288, 298, 313, 412)

15 Handwheel

Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise and lower the needle. The wheel should be turned toward the front of the machine.

### **Needle and Presser Foot Section**



#### ① Buttonhole lever

The buttonhole lever is used with the one-step buttonhole foot to create buttonholes. (page 149)

Presser foot holder screw Use the presser foot holder screw to hold the presser foot in place. (page 71)

#### ③ Presser foot holder

The presser foot is attached to the presser foot holder. (page 70)

④ Presser foot

The presser foot consistently applies pressure to the fabric as sewing takes place. Attach the appropriate presser foot for the selected stitch. (page 70)

#### 5 Feed dogs

The feed dogs feed the fabric in the sewing direction.

6 Bobbin cover

Open the bobbin cover to set the bobbin. (page 59, 125) **Needle plate cover** 

Remove the needle plate cover to clean the race. (page 119, 274)

**8** Needle plate

The needle plate is marked with guides to help sew straight seams. (page 118)

#### (9) Needle bar thread guide

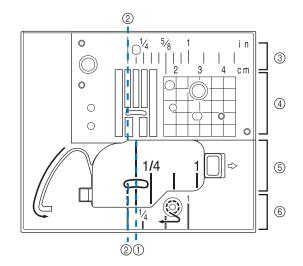
Pass the upper thread through the needle bar thread guide. (page 62)

#### 10 Needle clamp screw

Use the needle clamp screw to hold the needle in place. (page 71)

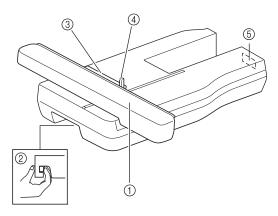
# Measurements on the needle plate, bobbin cover (with mark) and needle plate cover

The measurements on the bobbin cover are references for patterns with a middle (center) needle position. The measurements on the needle plate and the needle plate cover are references for stitches with a left needle position.



- ① For stitches with a middle (center) needle position
- ② For stitches with a left needle position
- 3 Left needle position on the needle plate <inch>
- ④ Left needle position on the needle plate <cm>
- 6 Middle (center) needle position on the bobbin cover (with mark) <inch>
- ⑥ Left needle position on the needle plate cover <inch>

# **Embroidery Unit**



#### ① Carriage

- The carriage moves the embroidery frame automatically when embroidering. (page 211)
- ② Release lever (located under the embroidery unit) Press the release lever to remove the embroidery unit. (page 212)
- 3 Embroidery frame holder Insert the embroidery frame into the embroidery frame holder to hold the frame in place. (page 261)
   4 Frame-securing lever

(5) Embroidery unit connection Insert the embroidery unit connection into the connection port when attaching the embroidery unit. (page 211)

# **A** CAUTION

- Before inserting or removing the embroidery unit, turn the main power to off.
- After the embroidery frame is set in the frame holder, be sure the frame-securing lever is correctly lowered.

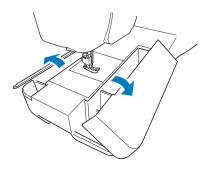
# **Operation Buttons**

	1	"Start/Stop" button In Press this button and the machine will sew a few stitches at a slow speed and then begin sewing at the speed set by the sewing speed controller. Press the button again to stop the machine. Hold the button in to sew at the machine's slowest speed. The button changes color according to the machine's operation mode.
en		Green: The machine is ready to sew or is sewing.
		Red: The machine cannot sew.
er ery	2	<ul> <li><b>"Reverse Stitch" button</b></li> <li>For straight, zigzag, and elastic zigzag stitch patterns that take reverse stitches, the machine will sew reverse stitches at low speed only while holding down the "Reverse Stitch" button. The stitches are sewn in the opposite position.</li> <li>For other stitches, use this button to sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing. Press and hold this button, and the machine sews 3 stitches in the same spot</li> </ul>
ort		and stops automatically. (page 85)
	3	<b>"Reinforcement Stitch" button</b> Use this button to sew a single stitch repeatedly and tie-off. For character/decorative stitches, press this button to end with a full stitch instead of at a mid-point. The LED light beside this button lights up while the machine is sewing a full motif, and automatically turns off when the sewing is stopped. (page 85)
e	4	"Needle Position" button
	5	<b>"Thread Cutter" button</b> (>C) Press this button after sewing to automatically trim the excess thread.
	ര	"Presser Foot Lifter" button
		Press this button to lower the presser foot and apply pressure to the fabric. Press this button again to raise the presser foot.
	7	Sewing Speed controller
		Use this controller to adjust the sewing speed. Move the slide to the left to sew at slower speeds. Move the slide to the right to sew at higher speeds. Beginners should sew at a slow speed.
	8	"Automatic Threading" button 🕞
		Use this button to automatically thread the needle.
		<ul> <li>A CAUTION</li> <li>Do not press the thread cutter button after the threads have been cut. The needle may break and threads may become tangled, or damage to the machine may occur.</li> </ul>

Press the frame-securing lever down to secure the embroidery frame. (page 261)

# Using the Flat Bed Attachment

Pull the top of the flat bed attachment to open the accessory compartment.

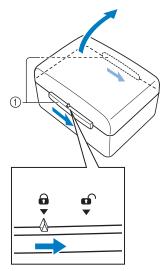


# Using the Accessory Case

### Opening the Accessory Case

Fully slide the bar on each side of the accessory case to the unlocked position, and then lift off the lid to open the case.

The case can only be opened or locked correctly if both bars are slid in the same direction.

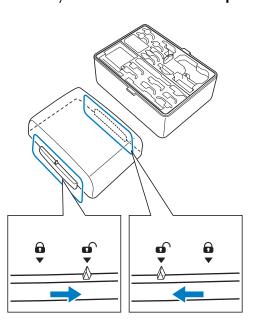




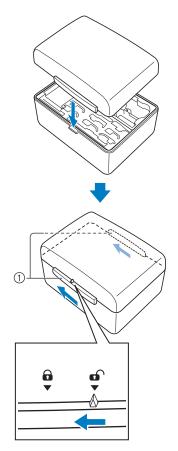
### ■ Closing the Accessory Case

Fully slide the bar on each side of the accessory case lid to the unlocked position.

1



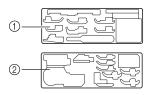
Place the lid on top of the case so that the notches in the lid align with the tabs on the case, and then slide the bar on each side back to the locked position.



① Bars

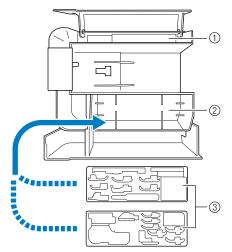
### Using the Accessory Trays

Two presser foot storage trays are stored in the included accessory case. One is for presser feet for utility sewing, and the other is for presser feet for embroidery and machine quilting.



- ① For presser feet for utility sewing
- ② For presser feet for embroidery and machine quilting

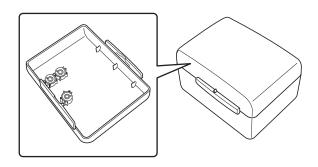
For your convenience, a presser foot storage tray can be stored in the accessory compartment of the flat bed attachment.



- Additional storage space of the flat bed attachment
- ② Presser foot storage space of the flat bed attachment
- ③ Presser foot storage trays

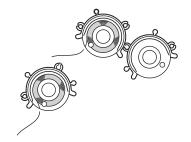
# **Storing Bobbin Clips**

Bobbin clips can be stored inside of the accessory case cover.

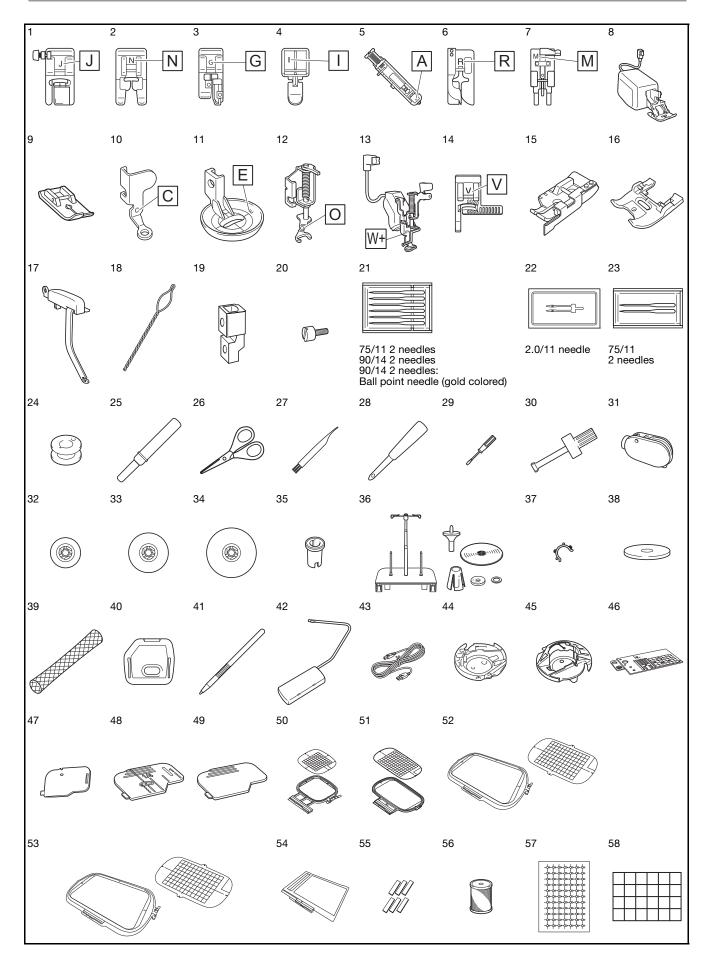


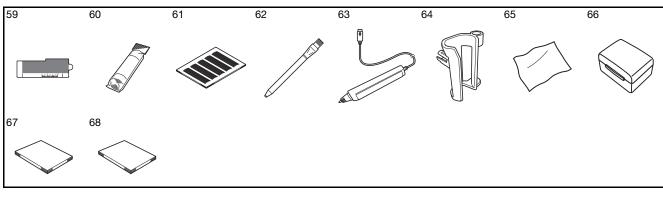
#### Memo

 Placing bobbin clips on bobbins helps prevent the thread from unwinding from the bobbin. In addition, snapping bobbin clips together allows the bobbins to be conveniently stored and prevents them from rolling around if they are dropped.



# **Included Accessories**





			Part Code
No.	Part Name	Americas	Others
1	Zigzag foot "J" (on machine)	Х	C3022-001
2	Monogramming foot "N"	Х	53840-351
3	Overcasting foot "G"	XC3098-051	
4	Zipper foot "I"	X59370-051	
5	Buttonhole foot "A"	Х	57789-351
6	Blind stitch foot "R"	Х	56409-051
7	Button fitting foot "M"	1	30489-001
8	Dual feed foot	SA196 (U.S.A.) SA196C (Canada)	DF1: XF4166-001 (EU area) DF1AP: XF6843-001 (Asia/Oceania) XF3165-001 (other area)
9	Straight stitch foot	SA167	F042N: XC1973-052
10	Free motion quilting foot "C"	-	F4737-001
11	Free motion echo quilting foot "E"		E0766-001
12	Free motion open toe quilting foot "O"	SA187	F061: XE1097-001
13	Embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer	SA197 (U.S.A.) SA197C (Canada)	FLED1: XF4168-001 (EU area) FLED1AP: XF6845-001 (Asia/Oceania) XF3124-001 (other area)
14	Vertical stitch alignment foot "V"	SA189	F063: XE5224-001
15	1/4 quilting foot with guide	SA185	F057:XC7416-252
16	Couching dual feed foot	Х	F9332-001
17	Top-left yarn guide	XG0786-001	
18	Yarn threader	Х	F7187-001
19	Adapter	SA131	F010N:XF3613-001
20	Screw (small)		A4813-051
21	Needle set *1	XE4962-001	
22	Twin needle *2		E4963-001
23	Ball point needle set *3		D0705-151
24	Bobbin × 10 (One is on machine.)	SA156	SFB: XA5539-151
25	Seam ripper	XF4967-001	
26	Scissors	XC1807-121	
27	Cleaning brush		59476-051
28	Eyelet punch		Z5051-001
29	Screwdriver (small)		55468-051
30	Screwdriver (large)		C4237-021
31	Multi-purpose screwdriver	SAMDRIVER1 (U.S.A) SAMDRIVER1C (Canada)	(EU area) MDRIVER1AP (other area)
32	Spool cap (small)		30013-154
33	Spool cap (medium) × 2 (One is on machine.)	X	55260-153
34	Spool cap (large)	1	30012-054
35	Thread spool insert (mini king thread spool)	X	A5752-121

No.	Dout Nome	Part Code		
NO.	Part Name	Americas	Others	
36	Spool stand	SA562 (U.S.A.) SA562C (Canada)	TS6: XF4180-001	
			ee page 24	
37	Bobbin clip × 10		E3060-001	
38	Spool felt (on machine)		57045-051	
39	Spool net × 2		A5523-050	
40	Embroidery needle plate cover		E5131-001	
41	Touch pen (stylus)		A9940-051	
42	Knee lifter	SA599	KL1: XE5902-001	
43	USB cable		D0745-051	
44	Alternate bobbin case (no color on the screw)		C8167-551	
45	Bobbin case (gray, for bobbin work)		E8298-001	
46	Straight stitch needle plate	-	F3076-001	
47	Cord guide bobbin cover (with single hole)	Х	E8991-101	
48	Bobbin cover (with mark)		F0750-101	
49	Bobbin cover (on machine)	Х	E8992-101	
50	Embroidery frame set (medium) H 10 cm × W 10 cm (H 4 inches × W 4 inches)	SA438	EF74: XC8480-152	
51	Embroidery frame set (large) H 18 cm × W 13 cm (H 7 inches × W 5 inches)	SA439	EF75: XC8481-152	
52	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 30 cm × W 20 cm (H 12 inches × W 8 inches)	SA447	EF92: XE5071-001	
53	Embroidery frame set (super large) H 36 cm × W 24 cm (H 14 inches × W 9-1/2 inches)	XF9309-001		
54	Scanning frame	XF9321-001		
55	Magnet × 6	XF9325-001		
56	Embroidery bobbin thread	SA-EBT	EBT-CEN: X81164-001	
57	Embroidery positioning sticker sheets × 4	SAEPS2 (U.S.A.) SAEPS2C (Canada)	EPS2: XF0763-001	
58	White calibration stickers (solid)	XE7916-001		
59	Edge sewing sheet × 6	SAESS1 (U.S.A.) SAESS1C (Canada)	ESS1: XE5094-001	
60	Stabilizer material	SA519	BM3: XE0806-001	
61	Grid sheet set	SA507	GS3: X81277-151	
62	Chalk pencil	Х	E8568-001	
63	Sensor pen		2-001 (EU area)	
			6-001 (other area)	
64	Pen holder		F2973-001	
65	LCD cleaning cloth	Х	E4913-001	

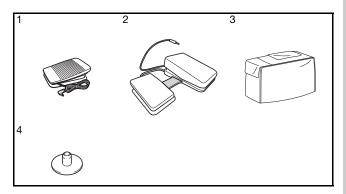
No.	Part Name	Part Code	
		Americas	Others
66	Accessory case	XG062 XF9159	9-001 (EU area) 0-001 (other area)
67	Operation manual	Т	his manual
68	Quick reference guide	Х	F9337-001

75/11 2 needles \*1

- 90/14 2 needles 90/14 2 needles: Ball point needle (gold colored)
- \*2 \*3 2.0/11 needle
  - 75/11 2 needles: Ball point needle for embroidery HAX130EBBR

# Accessories that are Included in Some Countries or Regions

If these accessories are not included with your machine, these are available as optional accessories.



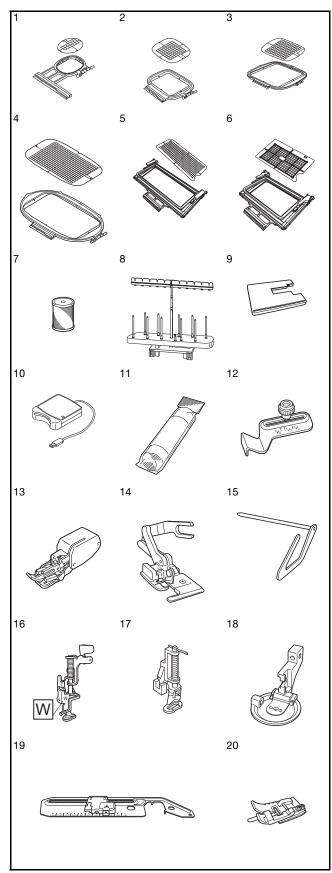
No.	Part Name	Part Code	
140.	Fait Name	Americas	Others
1	Foot controller		51 (EU area) 1 (other area)
2	Multi-function foot controller	SAMFFC (U.S.A.) SAMFFCC (Canada)	MFFC1: XF4159-001 MFFC10C: XF4471-001 (Australia)
		See p	age 26
3	Dust Cover	XG1096-001	
4	Bobbin center pin and instruction sheet	XF504	48-001

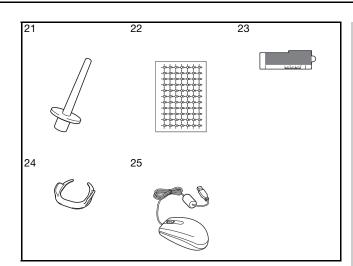
### Memo

- (For U.S.A. only) Foot controller: Model U This foot controller can be used on the machine with product code 882-W20/W22. The product code is mentioned on the machine rating plate.
- · Always use accessories recommended for this machine.
- The screw for the presser foot holder is available through your authorized Brother dealer (Part code XA4813-051).

# Options

The following are available as optional accessories to be purchased separately from your authorized Brother dealer.





No.	Part Name	Part Code		
110.	r art Name	Americas	Others	
1	Embroidery frame set (small) H 2 cm × W 6 cm (H 1 inch × W 2-1/2 inches)	SA437	EF73: XC8479-152	
2	Square embroidery frame H 15 cm × W 15 cm (H 6 inches × W 6 inches)	SA448 (U.S.A.) SA448C (Canada)	SEF150: XF4163-001	
3	Embroidery frame set (quilt) H 20 cm × W 20 cm (H 8 inches × W 8 inches)	SA446	EF91: XE5068-101	
4	Embroidery frame set (extra large) H 26 cm × W 16 cm (H 10-1/4 inches × W 6-1/4 inches)	SA441	EF81: XC9763-151	
5	Border embroidery frame H 30 cm × W 10 cm (H 12 inches × W 4 inches)	SABF6200D1 (U.S.A.) SABF6200D1 C (Canada)	BF3: XF4170-001	
6	Border embroidery frame set H 18 cm × W 10 cm (H 7 inches × W 4 inches)	SABF6000D	BF2: XE5059-001	
7	Embroidery bobbin thread (white)	SAEBT	EBT-CEN: X81164-001	
	Embroidery bobbin thread (black)	SAEBT999	EBT-CEBN: XC5520-001	
8	10 spool stand	SA561 (U.S.A.) SA561C (Canada)	TS5: XF4175-001	
9	Wide table	SAWT6200D (U.S.A.) SAWT6200D C (Canada)	WT10: XF4184-001	
10	Embroidery card reader	SAECRI		
11	Stabilizer material	SA519	BM3: XE0806-001	
	Water soluble stabilizer	SA520	BM5: XE0615-001	
12	Seam guide	SA538	SG1: XC8483-052	
13	Walking foot	SA140	F033N: XC2214-052	
14	Side cutter foot	SA177	F054: XC3879-152	
15	Quilting guide	SA132	F016N: XC2215-002	
16	Embroidery foot "W"	XF40	12-001	
17	Free-motion quilting foot	SA129	F005N: XC1948-052	
18	Couching foot	SA199V (U.S.A) SA199VC (Canada)	F073: XF8185-001 (EU area) F073AP: XF8188-001 (other area)	

No.	Part Name	Part	Code
NO.	Part Name	Americas	Others
19	Circular attachment	SACIRC1	CIRC1: XE3527-001
20	Stitch in the ditch foot	SA191	F065: XF2339-001
21	Vertical spool pin	XC86	19-052
22	Embroidery positioning sticker sheets × 8	SAEPS2	EPS2: XF0763-001
23	Edge sewing sheet × 5	SAESS1	ESS1: XE5094-001
24	Free motion guide grip	SAFMGRIP	FMG2: XF6266-001 (EU area)
			FMG2AP: XF6267-001 (other area)
25	USB mouse	XE53	34-101

### Memo

 All specifications are correct at the time of printing. Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

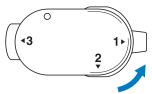
#### V Note

• Visit your nearest authorized Brother dealer for a complete listing of optional accessories for your machine.

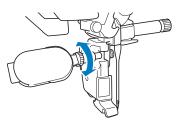
### Using the Multi-purpose Screwdriver

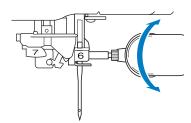
Since the screwdriver can be changed to three different positions, it can be extremely useful for the various machine preparations.

### ■ Position "1"

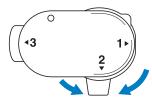


You can install/remove the presser foot holder, needle clamp screw.





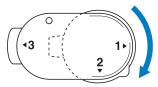
### ■ Position "2"



You can install/remove the needle plate.



### ■ Position "3"



The multi-purpose screwdriver can be positioned over the screw on the embroidery frame to tighten the screw after hooping the fabric or when removing the fabric.

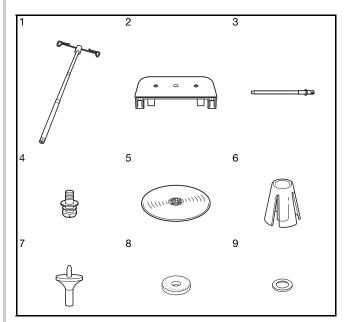


#### V Note

• When rotating the multi-purpose screwdriver, do not forcefully rotate it in the direction that it does not rotate; otherwise, it may break.

# Using the Spool Stand

The included spool stand is useful when using thread spools with a large diameter (cross-wound thread). The spool stand can hold two spools of thread.



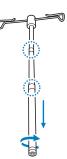
No.	Part Name	Part Code
1	Telescopic thread guide	XE0776-001
2	Spool support	XE4637-001
3	Spool pin × 2	XA6313-051
4	Screw and washer	XC7568-051
5	Spool cap (XL) × 2	XE0779-001
6	Spool holder × 2	XA0679-050
7	Spool cap base × 2	XE0780-001
8	Spool felt × 2	XC7134-051
9	Ring × 4	026030-136

# **A** CAUTION

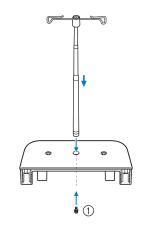
- Do not lift the handle of the machine while the spool stand is installed.
- Do not push or pull the telescopic thread guide or spool pins with extreme force, otherwise damage may result.
- Do not place any object other than spools of thread on the spool support.
- Do not try to wind thread on the bobbin while sewing using the spool stand.

■ How to assemble the spool stand

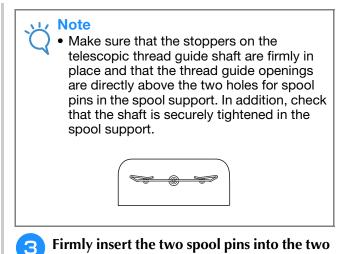
Fully extend the telescopic thread guide shaft, and then rotate the shaft until the two internal stoppers click into place.



2 Insert the telescopic thread guide into the round hole at the center of the spool support, and then use a screwdriver to securely tighten the screw (①) from the reverse side.

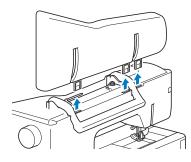


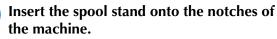
① Screw

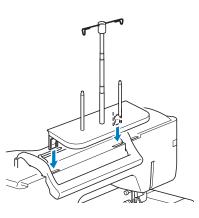


holes in the spool support.

**4** Open the upper cover of the machine, and then pull the upper cover up to remove it from the machine.



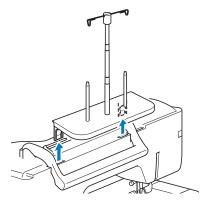




### ■ How to remove

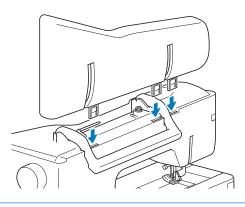


Pull the spool stand up to remove it from the machine.





Attach the upper cover to the machine.

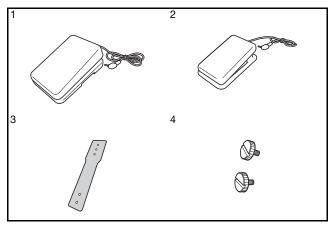


#### Memo Å

- See page 58 about the bobbin winding using the spool stand.
- See page 67 about the upper threading using the spool stand.

### **Using the Multi-function Foot Controller (Only for supplied** models)

Refer to see "Specifying the Multi-Function Foot Controller (Only for supplied models)" on page 84, before using this foot controller.

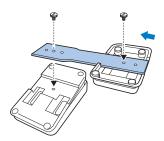


No.	Part Name	Part Code
1	Main foot controller	XF6708-201 (U.S.A.) XF6710-201 (other area)
2	Side pedal	XF3217-001
3	Mounting plate	XF3222-001
4	Mounting screw × 2	XF3223-001

# Assembling the Controller

#### Align the wide side of the mounting plate with the notch in the bottom of the main foot controller, and then secure them together with a screw.

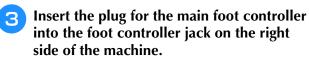
Feed the other side of the mounting plate into the notch on the bottom of the side pedal, and then secure them together with a screw.

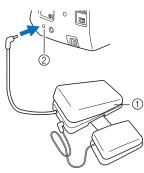




Insert the plug for the side pedal into the jack at the back of the main foot controller.



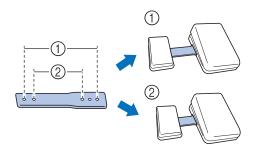




- ① Multi-function foot controller
- ② Foot controller jack

### ■ Adjusting the Pedal Positions

The pedal spacing can be adjusted depending on the screw holes used in the mounting plate. The pedal spacing is the widest when the pedals are attached using the outermost screw holes ①; the pedal spacing is the narrowest when they are attached using the innermost screw holes ②.



#### Vote

- The side pedal may be attached on the right or left side of the main foot controller.
- For greater distance you always have the option of not connecting the side pedal and main foot controller using the mounting plate, making sure that both pedals are connected using the jack from the side pedal to the main foot controller.



TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF
Setting Your Machine for the First Time
LCD SCREEN
■ Home Page Screen
Using the Machine Setting Mode Key
<ul> <li>Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media</li></ul>
<ul> <li>Changing the Pointer Shape When a USB Mouse Is Used</li></ul>
Changing the Screen Saver Image
Selecting the Initial Screen Display
<ul> <li>Choosing the Display Language</li></ul>
<ul> <li>Specifying the Size of Pattern Thumbnails</li></ul>
Using the Sewing Machine Help Key42
Using the Operation Guide Function43
Using the Sewing Guide Function44
Playing a Tutorial Video45
Playing MPEG-4 (MP4) Videos46
Using the Pattern Explanation Function47
CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE 48
Using USB Media48
Connecting the Machine to the Computer48
Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)49
Clicking a Key
Changing Pages
USING THE SENSOR PEN 50
Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen50
Connecting the Sensor Pen50
Using the Sensor Pen Holder51
Using the Sensor Pen
Important Information about Sensor Pen52 Calibrating the Sensor Pen52
LOWER THREADING
Winding the Bobbin54
Using the Supplemental Spool Pin
<ul> <li>Using the Spool Pin</li></ul>
<ul> <li>Untangling Thread from Beneath the Bobbin Winder Seat</li></ul>
Setting the Bobbin59
Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread61
UPPER THREADING
Upper Threading62
Using the Twin Needle Mode65
Using the Spool Stand67
Using the Spool Stand
Using Threads that Unwind Quickly
Using the Spool Net
CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT 70
Removing the Presser Foot70
Attaching the Presser Foot
Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter71
Attaching the Walking Foot

■ Attaching the Dual Feed Foot......72

<ul> <li>Attaching/Detaching toe</li> <li>Using the Dual Feed Position Lever</li> <li>Adjusting the Amount of Fabric Feeding of the Dual Feed Fo</li> <li>CHANGING THE NEEDLE</li> </ul>	74 oot74
About the Needle Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN CAMERA	77

# **TURNING THE MACHINE ON/OFF**

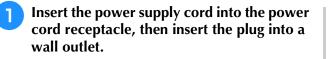
# WARNING

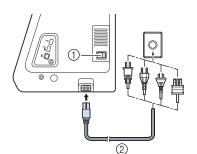
- Use only regular household electricity for the power source. Using other power sources may result in fire, electric shock, or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the plugs on the power cord are firmly inserted into the electrical outlet and the power cord receptacle on the machine. Otherwise, a fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not insert the plug on the power cord into an electrical outlet that is in poor condition.
- Turn the main power to OFF and remove the plug in the following circumstances:
- When you are away from the machine After using the machine
- When the power fails during use

When the machine does not operate correctly due to a bad connection or a disconnection During electrical storms

# 

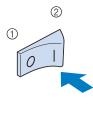
- Use only the power cord included with this machine.
- Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters with many other appliances plugged in to them. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Do not touch the plug with wet hands. Electric shock may result.
- When unplugging the machine, always turn the main power to OFF first. Always grasp the plug to remove it from the outlet. Pulling on the cord may damage the cord, or lead to fire or electric shock.
- Do not allow the power cord to be cut, damaged, modified, forcefully bent, pulled, twisted, or bundled. Do not place heavy objects on the cord. Do not subject the cord to heat. These things may damage the cord, or cause fire or electric shock. If the cord or plug is damaged, take the machine to your authorized Brother dealer for repairs before continuing use.
- Unplug the power cord if the machine is not to be used for a long period of time. Otherwise, a fire may result.
- When leaving the machine unattended, either the main switch of the machine should be turned to OFF or the plug must be removed from the socket-outlet.
- When servicing the machine or when removing covers, the machine must be unplugged.
- For U.S.A only
   This appliance has a polarized plug (one blade wider than the other). To reduce the risk of electrical shock, this plug is intended to fit in a polarized outlet only one way.
   If the plug does not fit fully in the outlet, reverse the plug. If it still does not fit, contact a qualified electrician to install the proper outlet. Do not modify the plug in any way.





- Main power switch
- ② Power supply cord

#### Turn the main power switch to "I" to turn on the machine.



① OFF ② ON

#### Memo

• When the machine is turned on, the needle and the feed dogs will make sound when they move; this is not a malfunction.

Turn the main power switch to "O" to turn off the machine.

#### **Memo**

 If the machine is turned off in the middle of sewing in the "Sewing" function, the operation will not be continued after turning the power on again.

# Setting Your Machine for the First Time

When you first turn on the machine, set the language and time/date to your language and local time/date. Follow the procedure below when the settings screen appears automatically.



Press 🕢 and 🕞 to set your local language.

Select your langua	ge.
<b>P</b>	English
	ок

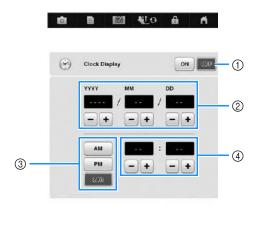
Press OK

The message screen, confirming if you want to set time/date, appears. To set the time/ date, press ok ; to cancel the setting, press Cancel

 $\rightarrow$  The screen to set time/date appears.



Press – or + to set time date.





- ① Press to display the time on the screen.
- ② Set the year (YYYY), month (MM) and date (DD).
- ③ Select whether 24h or 12h setting to display.
- ④ Set the current time.

5

Press OK to start using your machine.

 $\rightarrow$  The clock starts from 0 second of the time you set.

#### Note

- The time/date you set may be cleared, if you don't turn on the machine for an extended period of time.
- Time setting is also available by pressing clock button/time on the bottom of the LCD screen.

# LCD SCREEN

When the machine is turned on, the opening movie is played. Touch anywhere on the screen for the home page screen to be displayed. Touch the LCD screen or a key with your finger or the included touch pen to select a machine function.

#### 🗸 Note

• When the straight stitch needle plate is on the machine, the needle will automatically move to the middle position.

#### 

• Only touch the screen with your finger or the included touch pen. Do not use a sharp pencil, screwdriver, or other hard or sharp object. It is not necessary to press hard on the screen. Pressing too hard or using a sharp object may damage the screen.

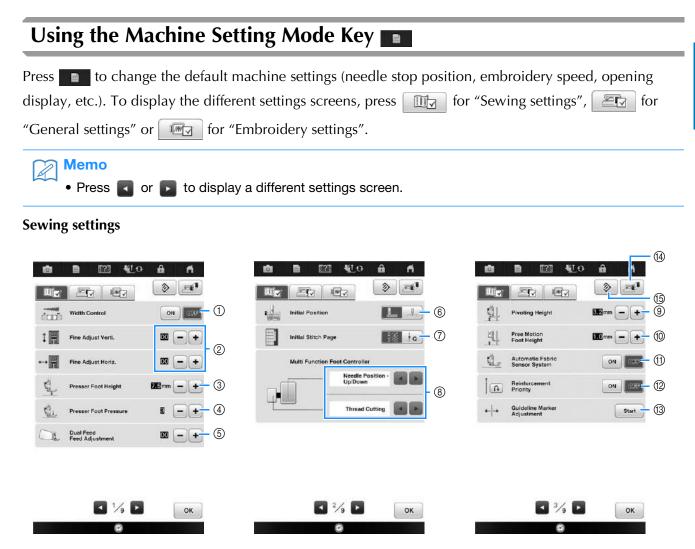
### ■ Home Page Screen



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1		Sewing key	Press this key to sew utility stitches or character/ decorative stitch patterns.	110, 170
2	B	Embroidery key	Attach the embroidery unit and press this key to embroider patterns.	210
3		My Design Center	Press this key to start creating your custom design embroidery patterns.	338
4	đ	Camera view key	Press this key to check the needle location as it is shown on the screen through the built-in camera.	98, 162

10

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
5	8	Machine setting screen key	Press this key to change the needle stop position, adjust the pattern or screen, and change other machine settings.	33
6	[2]	Sewing machine help key	Press this key to see explanations on how to use the machine. You can see the tutorial videos and also the MP4 movie files that you have.	42
	€TO	Presser foot/ Needle exchange key	Press this key before changing the needle, the presser foot, etc. This key locks all key and button functions to prevent operation of the machine.	59, 70
8	£	Screen lock key	Press this key to lock the screen. When the screen is locked, can still sew, but cannot change any of the screen functions. Press this key again to unlock the settings.	170
9	ń	Home page screen key	Press this key anytime it is displayed to return to the home page screen and select a different category - "Sewing", "Embroidery" or "My Design Center".	-
10		Time/Date key	Press this key to set the clock to your local time.	31



- ① Select whether to use the sewing speed controller to determine the zigzag width (see page 133).
- ② Make adjustments to character or decorative stitch patterns (see page 176).
- ③ Adjust the presser foot height. Select the height of the presser foot when the presser foot is raised.
- ④ Adjust the presser foot pressure. The higher the number, the greater the pressure will be. Set the pressure at "3" for normal sewing.
- ⑤ Adjust the amount of fabric feeding of the dual feed foot (see page 74).
- ⑥ Select whether "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is the utility stitch that is automatically selected when the machine is turned on.
- ⑦ Select whether "Utility Stitch" or "Quilt Stitch" displayed first on the stitch selection screen when the "Sewing" is selected.
- ③ You can activate this setting after connecting the multi-function foot controller. (These settings are not operable unless the multi-function foot controller is attached to the machine.) (see page 84)
- ③ Change the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped when the pivot setting is selected (see page 95). Adjust the presser foot to one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm and 7.5 mm).
- 133).
- (1) When set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by an internal sensor while sewing. This enables the fabric to be fed smoothly (see pages 88 and 97).
- When set to "ON", reinforcement stitches are sewn at the beginning and/or end of sewing for a reinforcement stitch pattern, even when the "Reverse Stitch" button is pressed (see page 85).
- ③ Adjust the guideline marker position and brightness (see page 100).
- ( Press to save a settings screen image to USB media (see page 36).
- (5) Press to reset settings. Some settings do not reset.

#### **General settings**

o 🗎 🖾 🖺 o	<b>a A</b>	o D 🗈 🕬 A	
	» Z		
Needle Position- UP/DOWN		Eco Mode	
Veedle Position- Stitch Placement	ON 055 2	Shutoff Support Mode	
Mouse Pointer	k • 🕞 3		
Upper and Bobbin	000 OFF (4)	Screen Saver	
Machine Speaker Volume	8 -+ 5	Opening Screen	
(() Volume	<b>5</b> -+ 6	Spool Stand LED	++ Service Count 00000000 - 16
Light	• <b>-+</b> 7	English ()	V → Total Count No.
Screen Display Brightness	<b>9</b> -+ 8	Sensor Function +	Version *.**
4/9 🖪	ок	5/9 🕨 ок	б⁄у 🕨 ок
8			

# **A** CAUTION

- If "Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor" is set to "OFF", remove the upper thread. If the machine is used with the upper thread threaded, the machine will not be able to detect if the thread has become tangled. Continuing to use the machine with tangled thread may cause damage.
- ① Select the needle stop position (the needle position when the machine is not operating) to be up or down. Select the down position when using the pivot key.
- ② Select the operation of the "Needle Position Stitch Placement" button from the following two sequences (see page 98).
  - Each press of the "Needle Position Stitch Placement" button:
  - "ON" raises the needle, stops it at a nearly lowered position, then lowers it
  - "OFF" raises the needle, then lowers it
- ③ Change the shape of the pointer when a USB mouse is used (see page 37).
- ④ Turn both the upper and bobbin thread sensor "ON" or "OFF". If it is turned "OFF", the machine can be used without thread.
- (5) Change the speaker volume. Increase the number for louder volume, decrease for softer volume.
- 6 Change the headphone (external speakers) volume.
- ⑦ Change the brightness of the needle area and work area lights.
- ⑧ Change the screen display brightness (see page 391).
- ③ Select to save the machine power by setting the "Eco Mode" or the "Shutoff Support Mode" (see page 36).
- Select the length of time until the screen saver appears. A setting between "OFF" (0) and "60" minutes can be set in 1-minute increments.
- 1 Change the image of the screen saver (see page 37).
- (2) Select the initial screen that is displayed when the machine is turned on (see page 38).
- ③ Turn on or off the spool stand LED indicator (see page 276).
- (4) Change the display language (see page 39).
- (5) Calibrate the sensor function (see page 52).
- (b) Display the service count which is a reminder to take your machine in for regular servicing. (Contact your authorized Brother dealer for details.)
- ⑦ Display the total number of stitches sewn on this machine.
- 18 The "No." is the internal machine number for the embroidery and sewing machine.
- (19) Display the program version.

#### 🏹 Memo

 The latest version of software is installed in your machine. Check with your local authorized Brother dealer or at "<u>http://support.brother.com</u>" for available updates (see page 412).

#### **Embroidery settings**

Embroidery Frame Display	mm () () ()	Background Image Display
	Embroidery Background Color	Scan Quality Standard ()
□ #122 # 123   ► ② □ #122 Embroidery   ► ③	Thumbnail Background Color	Fabric Thickness Sensor ON 655
Max Embroidery Speed Speed - + 4	Thumbnail Size	
Embroidery Tension III - + 5	Embroidery Basting Distance	
Embroidery Foot Height	Embroidery Applique ElEmm -+- 12	
	Embroidery Foot With LED Pointer Adjustment	
< 7∕9 ► ОК	■ 8/9 ► OK	9% 🕨 ок
8	©	9

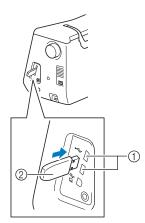
- ① Select from among 23 embroidery frame displays (see page 306).
- ② Change the thread color display on the "Embroidery" screen; thread number, color name (see page 305).
- ③ When the thread number "#123" is selected, select from six thread brands (see page 305).
- ④ Adjust the maximum embroidery speed setting (see page 305).
- (5) Adjust the upper thread tension for embroidering (see page 302).
- ⑥ Select the height of the embroidery foot during embroidering (see page 256).
- ⑦ Change the display units (mm/inch).
- (a) Change the color of the background for the embroidery display area (see page 39).
- (9) Change the color of the background for the thumbnail area (see page 39).
- 1 Press to specify the size of pattern thumbnails (see page 40).
- (f) Adjust the distance between the pattern and the basting stitching (see page 290).
- ② Adjust the distance between the appliqué pattern and the outline (see page 291).
- (3) Adjust the position and brightness of the embroidery foot with LED pointer (see page 263).
- () Specify to display the fabric image on the screen. You can select the scan quality (see page 286).
- (5) Set to "ON" when positioning the pattern on the thick fabric using the built-in camera (see page 289).

### Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media

An image of the settings screen can be saved as a BMP file.

A maximum of 100 images can be saved on a single USB media at one time.

## Insert the USB media into the USB port on the right side of the machine.



#### ① USB port

② USB media



→ The settings screen appears. Select the settings screen page that you want to save the screen image of.

### 3 Press 100.

 $\rightarrow$  The image file will be saved to the USB media.

## Remove the USB media, and then check the saved image using a computer.

The files for Settings screen images are saved with the name "S\*\*.BMP" in a folder labeled "bPocket".

"\*\*" in the name "S\*\*.BMP" will automatically be replaced with a number between 00 and 99.

#### Note If 100 image files have already been saved on the USP media, the following message.

on the USB media, the following message appears. In this case, delete a file from the USB media or use different USB media.



### Selecting the "Eco Mode" or "Shutoff Support Mode"

You can save the machine power by setting the eco mode or the shutoff support mode. If you leave the machine without using for a specified period of time, the machine enters in one of these modes.

#### "Eco Mode";

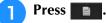
Machine will enter a sleep mode. Touch the screen or press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.

#### "Shutoff Support Mode";

Machine will enter the lower power mode after set period of time. Turn machine off and then back on to restart sewing.

Condition	Eco Mode	Shutoff Support Mode
Available time	OFF, 0 - 120 (minute)	OFF, 1 - 12 (hour)
"Start/Stop" button	Green flashing	Green slow flashing
Suspended function	Machine light, Screen display, LED pointer, Guideline marker, Spool Stand LED	All functions
After recovering	The machine starts from the previous operation.	You need to turn off the machine.

Press the "Start/Stop" button or touch the screen display to recover from these modes.



 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

2 Press 🖅 .

 $\rightarrow$  The General settings screen appears.

- **3** Display page 5 of the General settings screen.
- Use or b to select the time until entering the mode.



#### <sub>ン</sub>Note

• If you turn off the machine while the machine is in the "Eco Mode" or the "Shutoff Support Mode", wait for about 5 seconds before turning on the machine again.

# ■ Changing the Pointer Shape When a USB Mouse Is Used

In the settings screen, the shape can be selected for the pointer that appears when a USB mouse is connected. Depending upon the background color, select the desired shape from the three that are available.

### Memo

• For details on changing the background color, refer to "Changing the Background Colors of the Embroidery Patterns" on page 39.



- $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.
- Press 🖅 .
- $\rightarrow$  The General settings screen appears.
- **3** Display page 4 of the General settings screen.
- 📘 Use 💽 and 🕞 to choose the pointer shape

from the three available setting (  $\mathbf{k}$  ,  $\mathbf{k}$ 

#### and 🕨 ).



5 Press

ok to return to the original screen.

#### Memo

The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

## Changing the Screen Saver Image

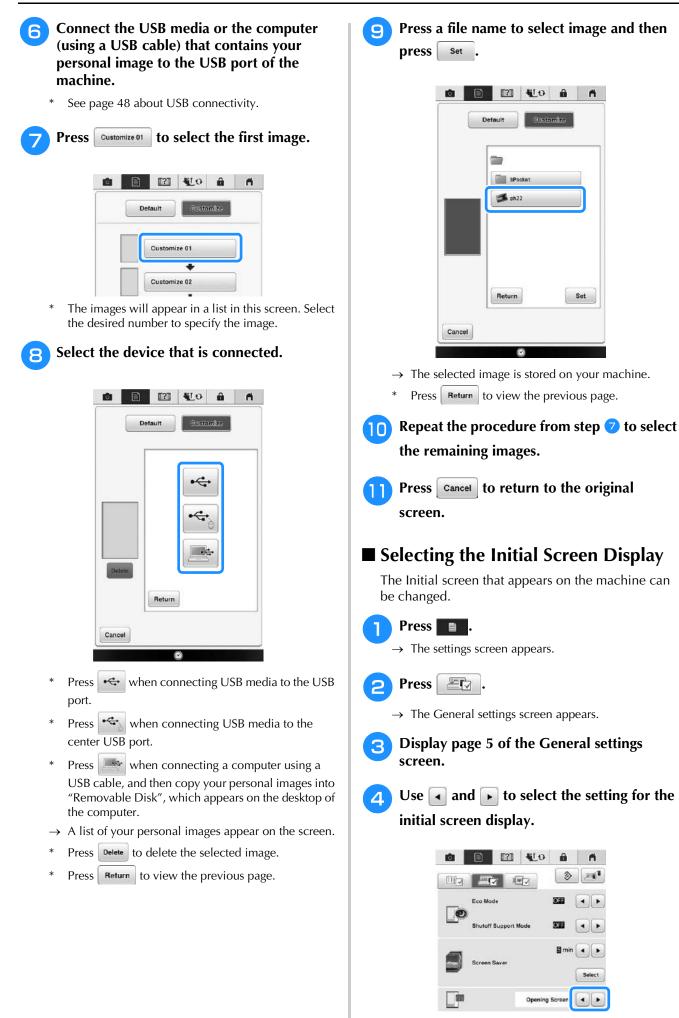
Instead of the default image, you can select your own personal images for the screen saver of your machine.

Before changing the screen saver image, prepare the image on your computer or USB media.

#### Compatible image files

Format	JPEG format (.jpg)
File size	Max. 2 MB for each image
File dimension	$800 \times 1280$ pixels or less, (If the width is more than 800 pixels, the image imported will be reduced to a width of 800 pixels.)
Number allowed	5 or less

e	<ul> <li>Note</li> <li>When using USB media, make sure that it contains only your own personal images to be selected for the screen saver.</li> <li>Folders are recognized. Open the folder that holds your personal images.</li> </ul>
	<b>Press</b> The settings screen appears.
	Press $\square$ . $\rightarrow$ The General settings screen appears.
	<b>3</b> Display page 5 of the General settings screen.
)e	4 Press Select .
	Image: Screen Saver
	5 Press Customize.
en.	
-	Default 01



n

Set

-

ri.

3 20

4 1

4 1 🗟 min 🔺 🕨 Select

.

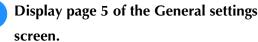
- \* **Opening Screen**: When the machine is turned on, the home page screen appears after the opening movie screen is touched.
- \* **Home Page**: When the machine is turned on, the home page screen appears.
- \* Sewing/Embroidery Screen: When the machine is turned on, the Embroidery screen appears if the embroidery unit is attached to the machine, or the sewing screen appears if the embroidery unit is not attached to the machine.



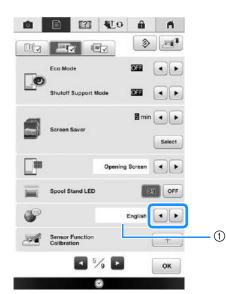
### Choosing the Display Language



- $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.
- Press 🔤.
  - $\rightarrow$  The General settings screen appears.







1 Display language



ok to return to the original screen.

### Changing the Background Colors of the Embroidery Patterns

In the settings screen, the background colors can be changed for the embroidery pattern and pattern thumbnails. Depending on the pattern color, select the desired background color from the 66 color thumbnails shown. Different background colors can be selected for the embroidery pattern and pattern thumbnails.

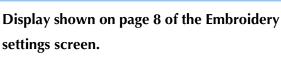


 $\rightarrow$  The Embroidery settings screen appears.

#### Memo

3

 When using the Embroidery or My Design Center, touch to directly access the Embroidery settings screen.

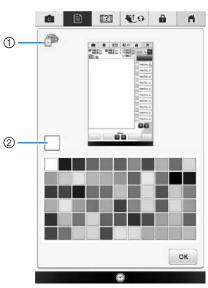




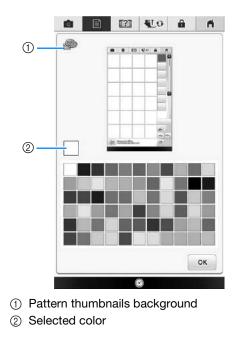
- ① Embroidery pattern background
- ② Pattern thumbnails background

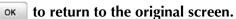


## Select the background color from the 66 color thumbnails shown.



- ① Embroidery pattern background
- ② Selected color





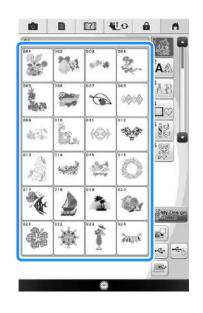
Memo

Press

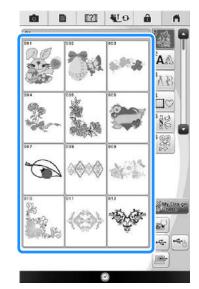
• The setting remains selected even if the machine is turned off.

### Specifying the Size of Pattern Thumbnails

The thumbnails for selecting an embroidery pattern can be set to be displayed at the normal size or a larger size. The larger size is 1.5 times the normal size.







Press 🔳.

1

 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

Press 💷 .

 $\rightarrow$  The Embroidery settings screen appears.

**3** Display page 8 of the Embroidery settings screen.



#### A Press or b to select the desired thumbnail size.

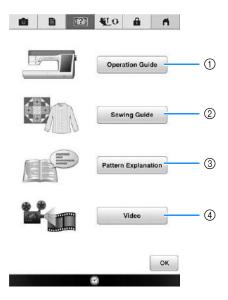


#### Viv Note

• When thumbnail size setting has been changed the pattern selection screen will not immediately reflect the chosen size. To view the patterns with the new thumbnail size, return to the category selection screen, and then select the pattern category again.

## Using the Sewing Machine Help Key

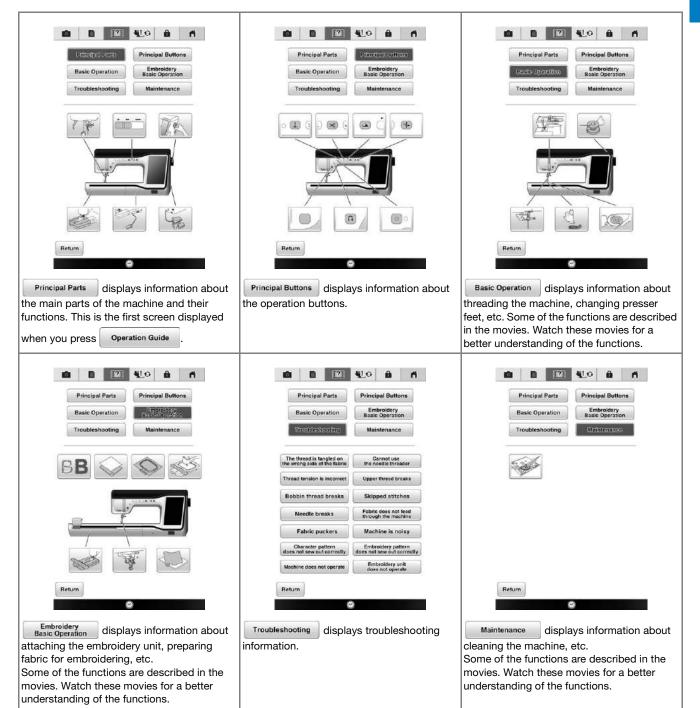
Press **121** to open the sewing machine help screen. Four functions are available from the screen shown below.

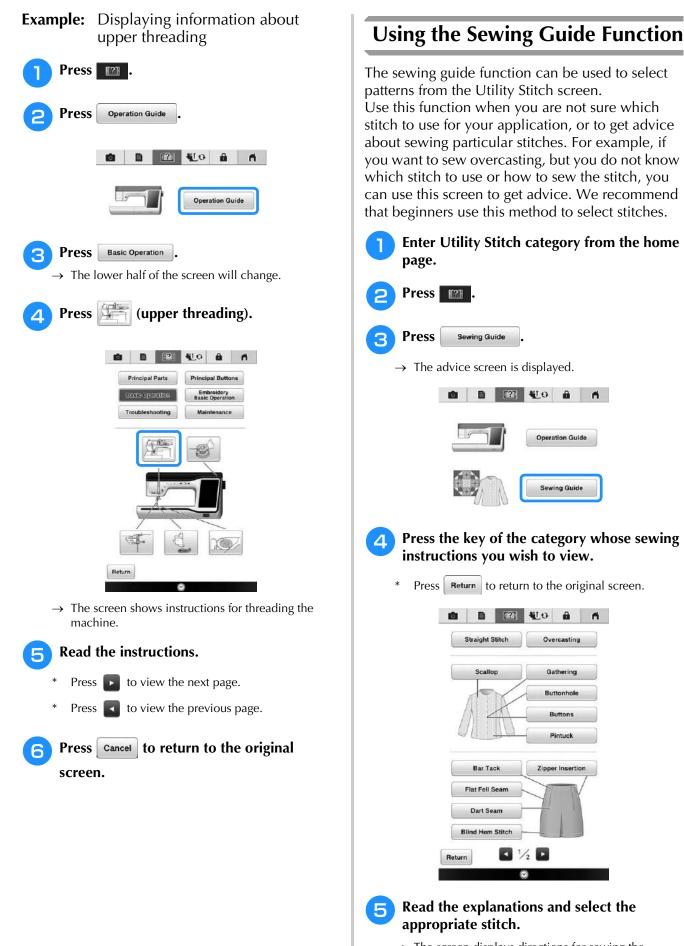


- ① Press this key to see explanation for upper threading, winding the bobbin, changing the presser foot, preparing to embroider a pattern, and how to use the machine (see page 47).
- Press this key to select utility stitches when you are not sure which stitch to use or how to sew the stitch (see page 43).
- ③ Press this key to see an explanation of the stitch selected (see page 44).
- ④ Press this key to watch tutorial videos or MPEG-4 (MP4) files from USB media (see page 45).

## Using the Operation Guide Function

Press Operation Guide to open the screen shown below. Six categories are displayed at the top of the screen. Press a key to see more information about that category.





→ The screen displays directions for sewing the selected stitch. Follow the directions to sew the stitch.

Getting Ready



Number of seconds elapsed/Total number of seconds

#### **Operation keys**

	Play
	Stop
н	Pause
H	Skip back 10 seconds
H	Skip forward 10 seconds
H4	Return to beginning
$\odot$	Repeat
Delete	Delete video (when playing from the machine's memory)
Memory	Save to machine (when playing from USB media)

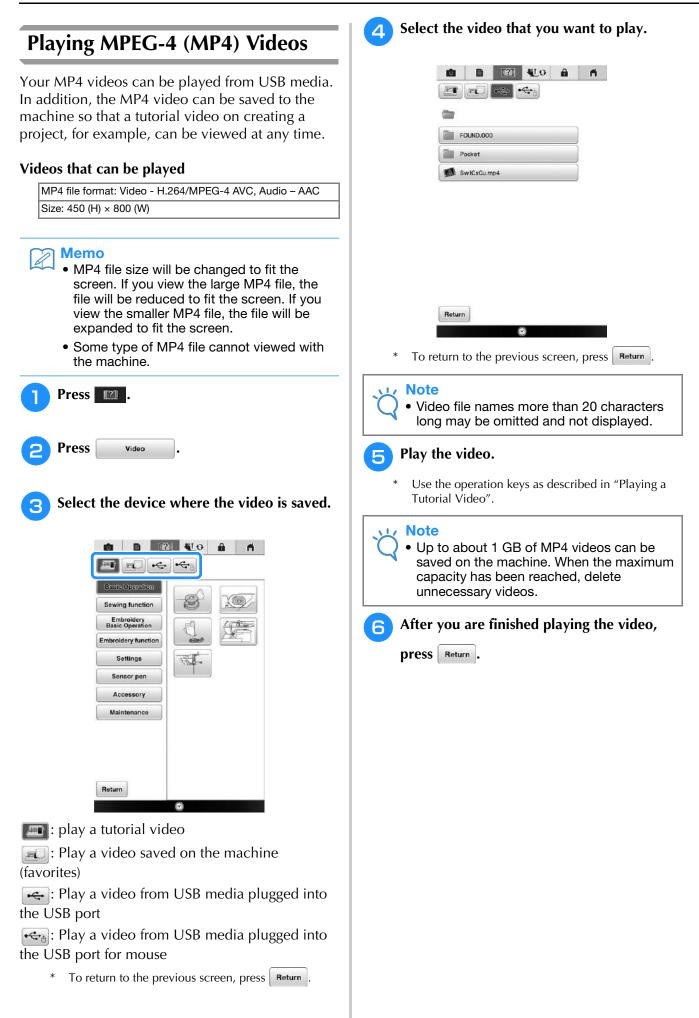
### Memo

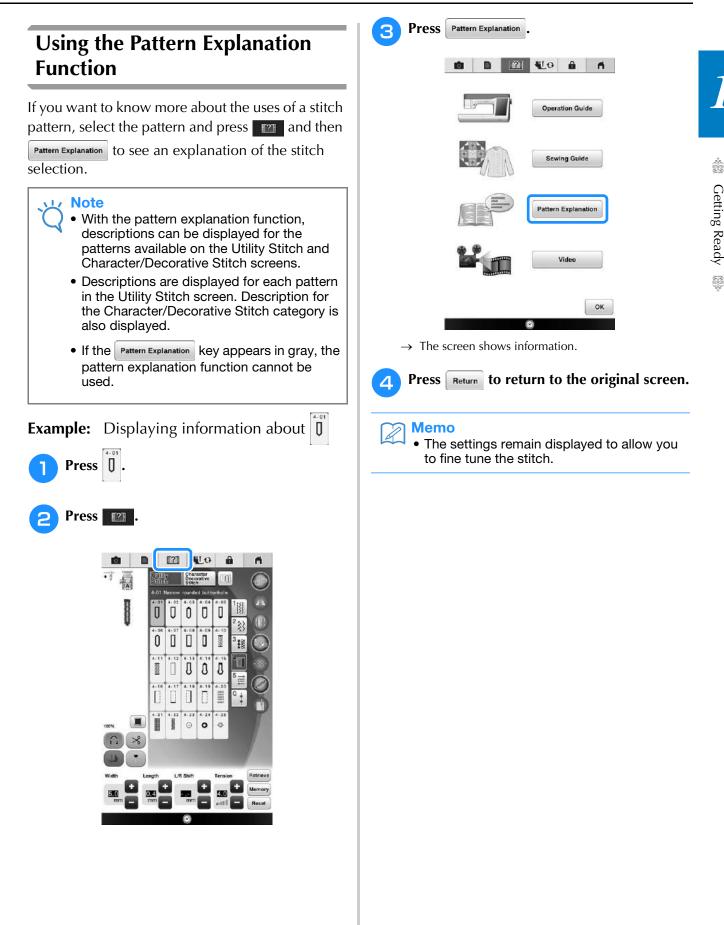
5

• A frequently viewed tutorial video can be saved to *(favorites)* of the machine, from where it can be played.

#### After you are finished playing the video,

press OK.

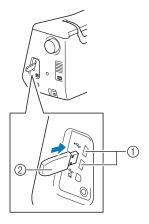




## **CONNECTING THE ACCESSORY TO THE MACHINE**

## Using USB Media

When sending or reading patterns using the USB media, connect the device to the USB port.



- ① USB port
- ② USB media

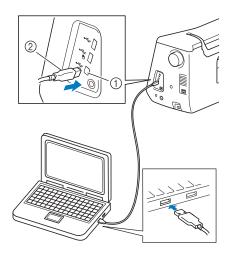
#### Memo

- USB media is widely used, however some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.

# **Connecting the Machine to the Computer**

Using the included USB cable, the sewing machine can be connected to your computer.

Refer to "Connecting Your Machine to the PC" on page 189 for the available computer operating systems.



- ① USB port for computer
- ② USB cable connector

#### Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
  - For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

### Using a USB Mouse (Sold Separately)

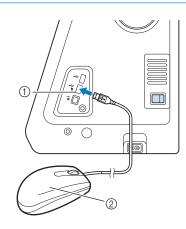
The USB mouse, connected to the sewing machine, can be used to perform a variety of operations in the screens.

Connect a USB mouse to the USB port marked

with  $\bigcirc$ . You can also connect a USB mouse to the other USB port.

### Memo

 If a mouse other than the optional USB mouse is used, it may not perform as described in this Operation Manual.



- USB port marked with
- ② USB mouse

#### Vote

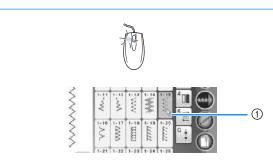
- Do not perform operations with the mouse at the same time that you are touching the screen with your finger or the included touch pen.
- A USB mouse can be connected or disconnected at any time.
- Only the left mouse button and its wheel can be used to perform operations. No other buttons can be used.
- The mouse pointer does not appear in the camera view window, the screen saver, opening screen or the home page screen.

### Clicking a Key

When the mouse is connected, the pointer appears on the screen. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired key, and then click the left mouse button.

#### Memo

Double-clicking has no effect.



① Pointer

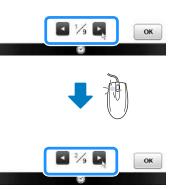
### ■ Changing Pages

Rotate the mouse wheel to switch through the tabs of the pattern selection screens.

#### Memo

 If page numbers and a vertical scroll bar for additional pages are displayed, rotate the mouse wheel or click the left mouse button

with the pointer on  $\bigcirc$  /  $\bigcirc$  or  $\bigcirc$  /  $\bigcirc$  to display the previous or next page.



## **USING THE SENSOR PEN**

## **Convenient Sewing Features by Using the Sensor Pen**

## By using the sensor pen, you have the option of four separate functions

- Setting the guideline as a reference for your sewing position.
- Set the needle position of straight stitch.
- Adjust the width and "L/R Shift" position of a zigzag stitch.
- Set the ending point of a stitch pattern sequence.

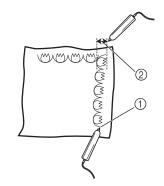
## **A** CAUTION

• The guideline marker is a laser; therefore, do not stare at the laser light directly. Otherwise it may cause blindness.

#### Note

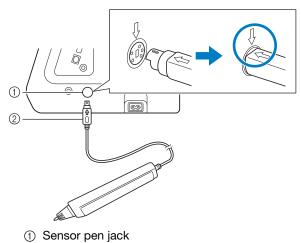
• When the guideline or LED pointer does not appear clearly, set the brightness of the machine light dimmer to see them clearly. Refer to "Using the Machine Setting Mode Key" on page 33.

### Connecting the Sensor Pen



- ① When specifying the end point of your sewing, this function adjusts your pattern or stitch so that you end up with a complete design.
- O It is easy to set the pattern width and position.

When connecting the sensor pen to the machine, make sure that the arrow on the sensor pen connector faces up and that the connector is firmly inserted into the jack.



② Sensor pen connector

## **A** CAUTION

- When connecting the sensor pen, make sure that the arrow on the sensor pen connector faces up, otherwise the connector pins will not align correctly and the connector will be damaged.
- When connecting or disconnecting the sensor pen, grab the connector, and then slowly push it straight in or pull it straight out.
- When disconnecting the sensor pen from the machine, do not pull on the cord, otherwise the sensor pen may be damaged.

### Using the Sensor Pen Holder

When connecting the sensor pen to the machine, attach the sensor pen holder to keep the sensor pen with the machine.

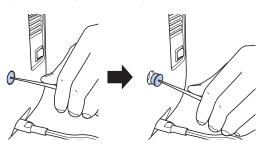
The right side of the holder can be used to hold the touch pen.



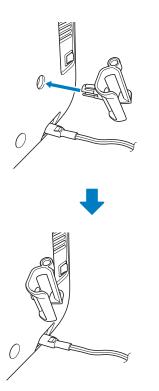
Sensor pen holder

Using the point end of the cleaning brush or the seam ripper point, remove the protective cap covering the hole on the right side of the machine.

→ Insert the point of the seam ripper or cleaning brush into the hole in the protective cap, and then lightly pull out the protective cap to remove it.

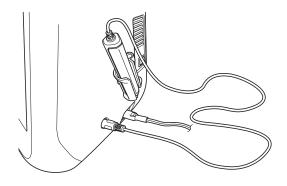


Firmly insert the sensor pen holder into the hole where the protective cap was removed.



**3** Set the sensor pen in the sensor pen holder

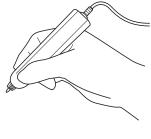
with the pen tip pointing downward, and then connect the sensor pen to the machine.

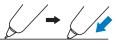


### Using the Sensor Pen

Hold the sensor pen, and then touch the point to be specified. When the tip of the sensor pen is pushed in, the position information is sent to the machine.

When using the sensor pen, touch slowly and gently for the definite operation.





**1) Touch:** Touch a point with the sensor pen, then immediately lift up the pen.

**2) Long touch:** Touching a point with the sensor pen and holding it down for at least one second allows you to activate the functions that you just selected.

#### 🗤 Note

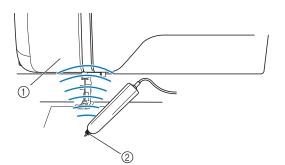
- Once a point is touched with the sensor pen and the entered information is applied in the screen, perform the next operation. Repeatedly touching a point with the sensor pen may prevent the information from being correctly read.
- Do not drag the sensor pen tip on the machine, otherwise the sensor pen tip may be chipped off.
- If there is any problem with the guideline marker, the sensor function may not operate correctly.

#### 河 Memo

• The sensor pen can be used to touch on the screen as a touch pen.

### Important Information about Sensor Pen

The sensor pen emits the signal to the machine, and then the sensor pen receiver receives the signal to specify the position.



- ① Sensor pen receiver
- ② Signal is waved out from the sensor pen

## **A** CAUTION

• Do not insert any object into the sensor pen and the receiver, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

## IMPORTANT

- Do not put your hand, the fabric or any object between the machine and the sensor pen, otherwise the sensor pen receiver may not receive the ultrasonic wave.
- Do not use the machine close to any other unit which produces ultrasonic wave or a vibration sound, otherwise interference may occur.

### Calibrating the Sensor Pen

Before using the sensor pen for the first time, be sure to personalize it using "Sensor Function Calibration" in the settings screen. Doing so allows the machine to learn the position in which you usually hold the pen.

Hold the sensor pen at a comfortable angle and then calibrate the machine according to the procedure below.

Be sure to keep the sensor pen at the same angle while calibrating the first and second points.



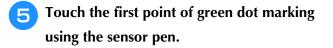
- **Press • .**  $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.
- 2 Press 🔤.
  - $\rightarrow$  The General settings screen appears.
- **3** Display page 5 of the General settings screen.



1 Pr

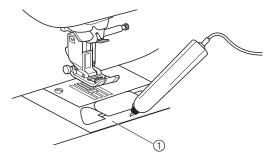
## Press \_\_\_\_\_ after connecting the sensor pen to the machine.

 $\rightarrow$  The Sensor Function Calibration screen appears.





Touch on the needle plate cover. \*

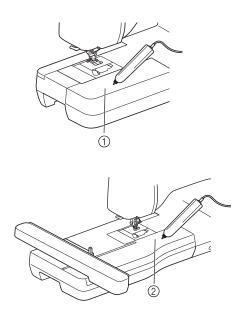


① Needle plate cover

Touch the second point of center of cross-6 hair using the sensor pen.



\* Touch on the point in the illustrations.



- ① Flat bed attachment Embroidery unit

Press ok to finish the calibration. To

repeat the calibration touch the first point again using the sensor pen, and continue with step **6**.

F		
	0	/
		1

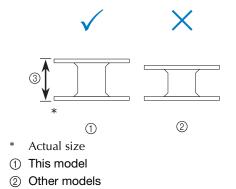
- Press Cancel to return to the original screen without finishing the calibration.
- Press Reset to reset the calibration.

## LOWER THREADING

## Winding the Bobbin 📷

## **CAUTION**

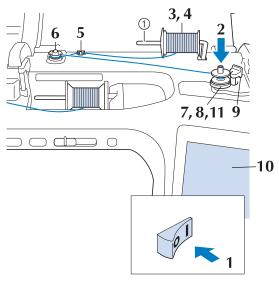
• The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, (SFB: XA5539-151)). SA156 is Class 15 type bobbin.



③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

### ■ Using the Supplemental Spool Pin

With this machine, you can wind the bobbin during sewing. While using the main spool pin to sew embroidery, you can conveniently wind the bobbin using the supplemental spool pin.



① Supplemental spool pin

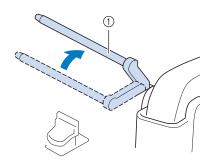
- Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.
- 2 Align the groove in the bobbin with the spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



- ① Groove in the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft

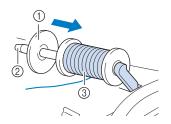
1

**3** Set the supplemental spool pin in the "up" position.



① Supplemental spool pin

**4** Place the spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that thread unrolls from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



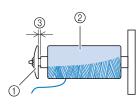
- ① Spool cap
- ② Spool pin
- ③ Thread spool

## **A** CAUTION

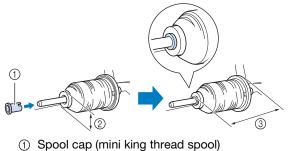
- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large, medium, or small) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

#### Memo

• When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.

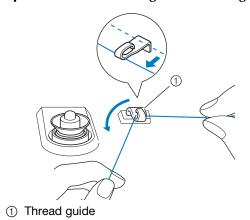


- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space
- If a spool of thread whose core is 12 mm (1/2 inch) in diameter and 75 mm (3 inches) high is inserted onto the spool pin, use the mini spool cap.

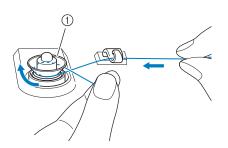


- 2) 12 mm (1/2 inch)
- ③ 75 mm (3 inches)

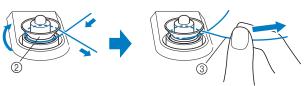
5 With your right hand, hold the thread near the thread spool. With your left hand, hold the end of the thread, and use both hands to pass the thread through the thread guide.



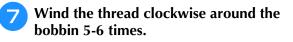
6 Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.

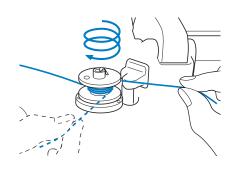


- ① Pre-tension disk
- $\rightarrow$  Make sure that the thread passes under the pretension disk.

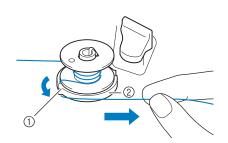


- ② Pre-tension disk
- ③ Pull it in as far as possible.
- → Check to make sure thread is securely set between pre-tension disks.





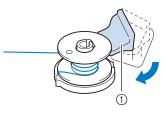
Pass the end of the thread through the guide slit in the bobbin winder seat, and pull the thread to the right to cut the thread with the cutter.



- ① Guide slit (with built-in cutter)
- ② Bobbin winder seat

## **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to follow the process described. If the thread is not cut with the cutter, and the bobbin is wound, when the thread runs low it may tangle around the bobbin and cause the needle to break.
- Set the bobbin winding switch to the left, until it clicks into place.



① Bobbin winding switch

#### א Memo

9

- Sliding the bobbin winding switch to the left switches the machine into bobbin winding mode.
- $\rightarrow$  The bobbin winding window appears.

#### Press Store

→ Bobbin winding starts. The bobbin stops rotating when bobbin winding is completed. The bobbin winding switch will automatically return to its original position.



#### <sub>と</sub>Note

- **state** changes to **stop** while the bobbin is winding.
- Stay near the machine while winding the bobbin to make sure the bobbin thread is being wound correctly. If the bobbin thread

is wound incorrectly, press Stop

immediately to stop the bobbin winding.

• The sound of winding the bobbin with stiff thread, such as nylon thread for quilting, may be different from the one produced when winding normal thread; however, this is not a sign of a malfunction.

#### Memo

You can change the winding speed by

pressing **[\_**] (to decrease) or **[\_**] (to increase) in the bobbin winding window.

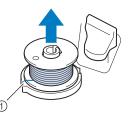


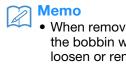
- Press or to minimize the bobbin winding window. Then, you can perform other operations, such as selecting a stitch or adjusting the thread tension, while the bobbin is being wound.
- Press (in top right of the LCD screen) to display the bobbin winding window again.



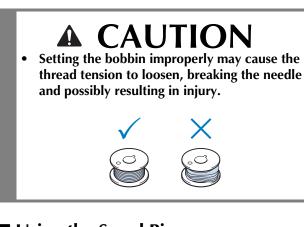


Cut the thread with cutter and remove the bobbin.



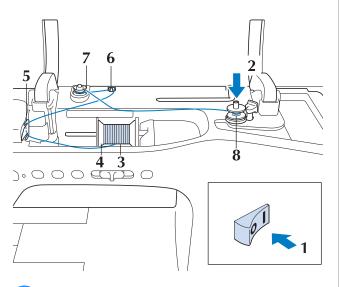


When removing the bobbin, do not pull on the bobbin winder seat. Doing so could loosen or remove the bobbin winder seat, and could result in damage to the machine.



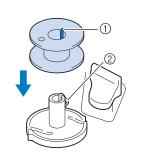
### ■ Using the Spool Pin

You can use the main spool pin to wind the bobbin before sewing. You cannot use this spool pin to wind the bobbin while sewing.

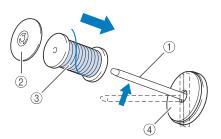


Turn the main power to ON and open the top cover.

Align the groove in the bobbin with the 2 spring on the bobbin winder shaft, and set the bobbin on the shaft.



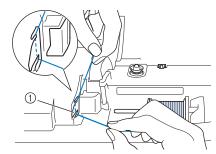
- ① Groove in the bobbin
- ② Spring on the shaft
- Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. З Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



- ① Spool pin
- 2) Spool cap
- ③ Thread spool
- (4) Spool felt

4

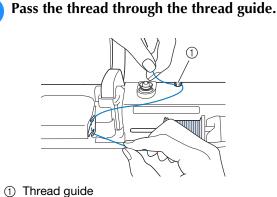
- Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.
- While holding the thread with both hands, 5 pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.



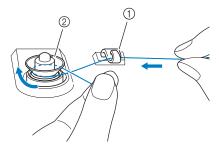
① Thread guide plate

ŵ

Getting Ready



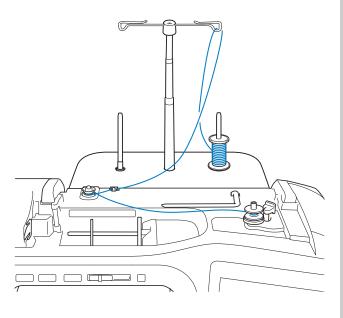
Pass the thread around the pre-tension disk making sure that the thread is under the pre-tension disk.



- Thread guide
- ② Pre-tension disk
- Follow steps 7 through 11 on page 55 through 56.

### Using the Spool Stand

To wind thread on the bobbin while the spool stand is installed, pass the thread from the spool through the thread guide on the telescopic thread guide, and then wind the bobbin according to steps 5 through of "Using the Supplemental Spool Pin" on page 55 to page 56.



#### Memo

- See page 24 to assemble the spool stand.
- See page 67 to thread the machine using the spool stand.

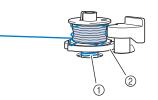
## CAUTION

When winding thread on the bobbin, do not cross the bobbin winding thread with the upper thread in the thread guides.

### Untangling Thread from Beneath the **Bobbin Winder Seat**

If the bobbin winding starts when the thread is not passed through the pre-tension disk correctly, the thread may become tangled beneath the bobbin winder seat.

Wind off the thread according to the following procedure.



① Thread

1

② Bobbin winder seat



Do not remove the bobbin winder seat even if the thread becomes tangled under the bobbin winder seat. It may result in injuries.

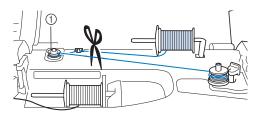
If the thread becomes tangled under the

bobbin winder seat, press **sup** once to stop the bobbin winding.



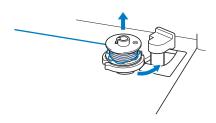


#### Cut the thread with scissors near the pretension disk.

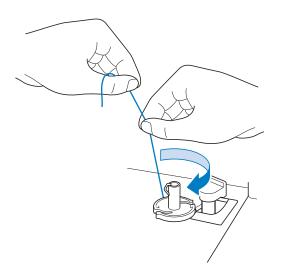


1) Pre-tension disk

Push the bobbin winder switch to the right, and then raise the bobbin at least 100 mm (4 inches) from the shaft.



**4** Cut the thread near the bobbin and hold the thread end of the spool with your left hand. Unwind the thread clockwise near the bobbin winder seat with your right hand as shown below.





#### Wind the bobbin again.

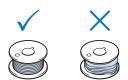
#### <mark>ر Note</mark>

• Make sure that the thread passes through the pre-tension disk correctly (page 55).

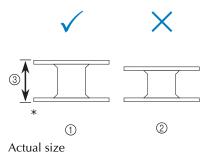
### Setting the Bobbin

## **CAUTION**

• Use a bobbin thread that has been correctly wound. Otherwise, the needle may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.



 The included bobbin was designed specifically for this sewing machine. If bobbins from other models are used, the machine will not operate correctly. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, (SFB: XA5539-151)). SA156 is Class 15 type bobbin.



- This model
- ② Other models
- ③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)
- Before inserting or changing the bobbin, be sure to press such in the LCD to lock all keys and buttons, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.



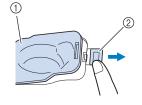
## Press **to lock all keys and buttons and raise the presser foot.**

If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press

ok to continue.



Slide the bobbin cover latch to the right.



- ① Bobbin cover
- Latch
- $\rightarrow$  The bobbin cover opens.

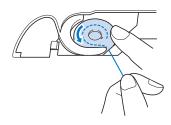


Remove the bobbin cover.

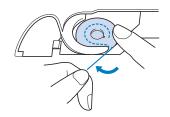
4 Hold the bobbin with your right hand and hold the end of the thread with your left hand.



5 Set the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds to the left.

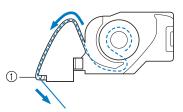


6 Hold the bobbin lightly with your right hand, and then guide the thread with your left hand.





Pass the thread through the guide, and then pull the thread out toward the front.

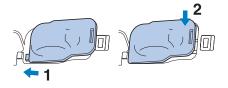


- ① Cutter
- $\rightarrow$  The cutter cuts the thread.

Note
 If the thread is not correctly inserted through the tension spring of the bobbin case, it may cause incorrect thread tension. (see page 92)
 If the thread is not correctly inserted tension. (see page 92)
 If the thread tension of the bobbin case, it may cause incorrect thread tension. (see page 92)

## **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to hold down the bobbin with your finger and unwind the bobbin thread correctly. Otherwise, the thread may break or the thread tension will be incorrect.
- Insert the tab in the lower-left corner of the bobbin cover (1), and then lightly press down on the right side to close the cover (2).





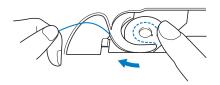
Press we to unlock all keys and buttons.

## Pulling Up the Bobbin Thread

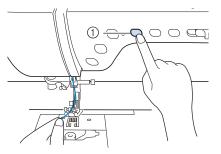
There may be some sewing applications where you want to pull up the bobbin thread; for example, when making gathers, darts, or doing free motion quilting or embroidery.

#### Memo

- You can pull up the bobbin thread after threading the upper thread ("UPPER THREADING" on page 62).
- Follow steps 1 to 4 in "Setting the Bobbin" on page 59 for installing the bobbin into the bobbin case.
- Guide the bobbin thread through the groove, following the arrow in the illustration.
  - \* Do not cut the thread with the cutter.
  - \* Do not replace the bobbin cover.

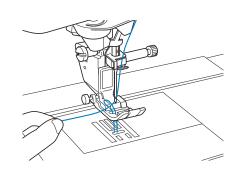


While holding the upper thread, press the "Needle Position" button to lower the needle.

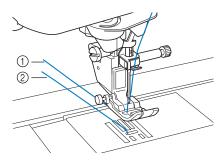


- ① "Needle Position" button
- Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

**5** Gently pull the upper thread. A loop of the bobbin thread will come out of the hole in the needle plate.



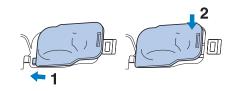
6 Pull up the bobbin thread, pass it under the presser foot and pull it about 100 mm (approx. 3-4 inches) toward the back of the machine, making it even with the upper thread.



Upper thread
 Bobbin thread



Replace the bobbin cover.



ŵ

Getting Ready 👺

## **UPPER THREADING**

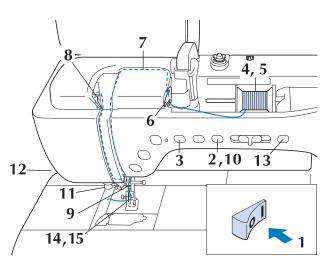
## Upper Threading

## **A** CAUTION

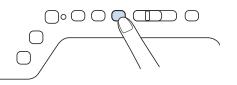
- Be sure to thread the machine properly. Improper threading can cause the thread to tangle and break the needle, leading to injury.
- When using the walking foot, the side cutter or accessories not included with this machine, attach the accessory to the machine after threading the machine.

#### 🔊 Memo

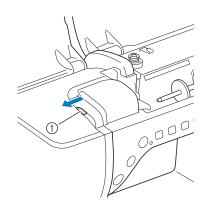
- The automatic threading function can be used with sewing machine needle sizes 75/ 11 through 100/16.
- When threads such as transparent nylon monofilament or speciality threads are used it is not recommended to use the needle threader.
- The automatic threading function cannot be used with the wing needle or the twin needle.



- Turn the main power to ON.
- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The upper thread shutter opens so the machine can be threaded.



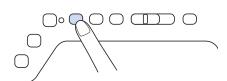
① Upper thread shutter



• This machine is equipped with an upper thread shutter, allowing you to check that the upper threading is performed correctly.

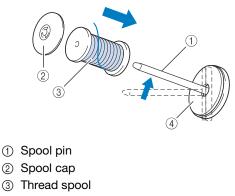


Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



#### <sub>しく</sub>Note

- If you try to thread the needle automatically without raising the needle, the thread may not thread correctly.
- Pivot the spool pin so that it angles upward. Set the thread spool on the spool pin so that the thread unwinds from the front of the spool.



④ Spool felt

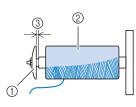
Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible, then return the spool pin to its original position.

## **A** CAUTION

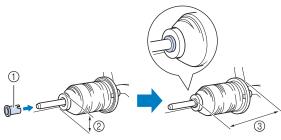
- If the thread spool and/or spool cap are set incorrectly, the thread may tangle on the spool pin and cause the needle to break.
- Use the spool cap (large or medium) or the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool) that is closest in size to the thread spool. If a spool cap smaller than the thread spool is used, the thread may become caught in the slit on the end of the spool and cause the needle to break.

#### Memo

• When sewing with fine, cross-wound thread, use the small spool cap, and leave a small space between the cap and the thread spool.

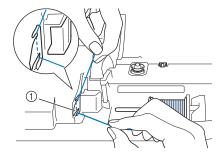


- ① Spool cap (small)
- ② Thread spool (cross-wound thread)
- ③ Space
- If a spool of thread whose core is 12 mm (1/2 inch) in diameter and 75 mm (3 inches) high is inserted onto the spool pin, use the thread spool insert (mini king thread spool).



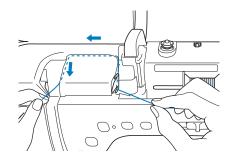
- ① Thread spool insert (mini king thread spool)
- ② 12 mm (1/2 inch)
- ③ 75 mm (3 inches)

6 While holding the thread with both hands, pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.

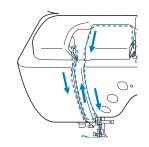


① Thread guide plate

While holding the thread in your right hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.

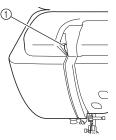


B Guide the thread down, up, then down through the groove, as shown in the illustration.



#### Memo

• Look in the upper groove area to check if the thread catches on the take-up lever visible inside the upper groove area.

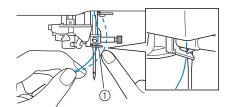


① Look in the upper groove area

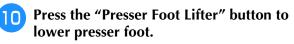
ŵ

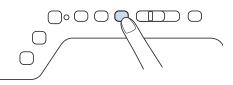
Getting Ready

**9** Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked "6") by holding the thread with both hands and guiding it as shown in the illustration.

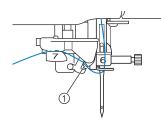


Needle bar thread guide

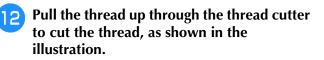


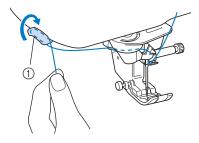


Pass the thread through the thread guide disks (marked "7"). Make sure that the thread passes through the groove in the thread guide.



① Groove in thread guide



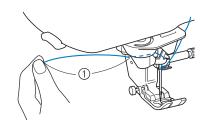


① Thread cutter

#### Note

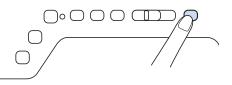
 When using thread that quickly winds off the spool, such as metallic thread, it may be difficult to thread the needle if the thread is cut.
 Therefore, instead of using the thread

cutter, pull out about 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) of thread after passing it through the thread guide disks (marked "7").



① 80 mm (approx. 3 inches) or more

**13** Press the "Automatic Threading" button to have the machine automatically thread the needle.

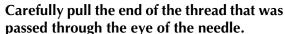


 $\rightarrow$  The thread passes through the eye of the needle.

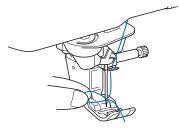
#### 🦙 Memo

14

• When the "Automatic Threading" button is pressed, the presser foot will be automatically lowered. After threading is finished, the presser foot moves back to the position before the "Automatic Threading" button was pressed.



- passed through the eye of the needle.\* If a loop was formed in the thread passed through
- the eye of the needle, carefully pull on the loop of thread through to the back of the needle.

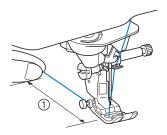


V Note

• Pulling the loop of thread gently will avoid needle breakage.

#### Pull out about 100-150 mm (approx. 4-6 inches) of the thread, and then pass it under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.

→ Raise the presser foot lever if the presser foot is lowered.



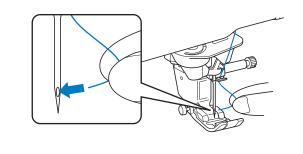
① About 100-150 mm (approx. 4-6 inches)

#### Memo

If the needle could not be threaded or the thread was not passed through the needle bar thread guides, perform the procedure again starting from step 3.
 Then, pass the thread through the eye of the needle after step 9.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

 Some needles cannot be threaded with the needle threader. In this case, instead of using the needle threader after passing the thread through the needle bar thread guide (marked "6"), manually pass the thread through the eye of the needle from the front.



### Using the Twin Needle Mode

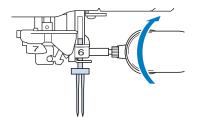
The twin needle can only be used for patterns that

show **(()** after being selected. Before you select a stitch pattern, make sure the stitch can be sewn in the twin needle mode (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).

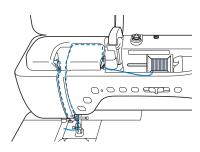
## CAUTION

- Twin needle (part code XE4963-001) is recommended for this machine. Contact your authorized Brother dealer for replacement needles (size 2.0/11 is recommended).
- Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.
- Do not sew with bent needles. The needle could break and cause injury.
- When using the twin needle, it is recommended to use presser foot "J".
- When the twin needle is used, bunched stitches may occur depending on the types of fabric and thread that are used. Use monogramming foot "N" for decorative stitches.
- Before changing the needle or threading the machine, be sure to press on the LCD Screen to lock all keys and buttons, otherwise injuries may occur if the "Start/Stop" button or any other button is pressed and the machine starts sewing.
- Press to lock all keys and buttons and then install the twin needle ("CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 75).
  - If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press

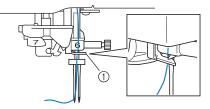
ok to continue.



**2** Thread the machine for the first needle according to the procedure for threading a single needle ("Upper Threading" on page 62).



3 Pass the thread through the needle bar thread guides on the needle bar, then thread the needle on the left side manually.

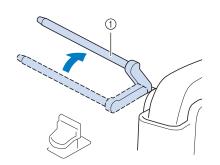


① Needle bar thread guide

#### Viv Note

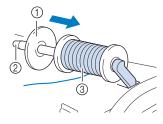
• The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Manually thread the twin needle from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.

## Pull up the supplemental spool pin and set it in the up position.

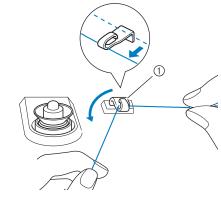


① Supplemental spool pin

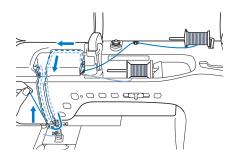
**5** Place the additional spool of thread on the supplemental spool pin, so that the thread unwinds from the front. Push the spool cap onto the spool pin as far as possible to secure the thread spool.



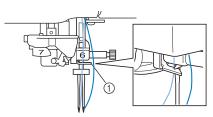
- Spool cap
- ② Spool pin
- ③ Thread spool
- 6 Hold the thread from the spool with both hands, and place the thread in the thread guide.
  - \* Do not place the thread in the pre-tension disks.



- ① Thread guide
- While holding the thread from the spool, pull the thread through the lower notch in the thread guide plate, then through the upper notch. Hold the end of the thread with your left hand, and then guide the thread through the groove, following the arrows in the illustration.



Continue threading however do not pass the thread in the needle bar thread guide "6" on the needle bar. Thread the needle on the right side.



① Needle bar thread guide



#### 10

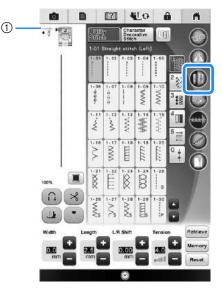
#### Select a stitch pattern. (Example: 1.03)

- \* Refer to "Sewing a Stitch" on page 82 for selecting the stitch.
- \* Refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual for the proper stitch to use with presser foot "J".
- $\rightarrow$  The selected stitch is displayed.

#### <sub>-</sub> Note

• If the **()** key is light gray after selecting the stitch, the selected stitch cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.

## Press I to select the twin needle mode.



① Single needle/twin needle setting

 $\rightarrow$   $\overrightarrow{\bullet}$  appears.

## **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to set the twin needle mode when using the twin needle. Using the twin needle while the machine is in single needle mode could cause the needle to break, resulting in damage.

#### **12** Start sewing.

Sample of Twin Needle Sewing

	$\mathbb{S}$	$\mathbf{X}$		
	$\mathbb{N}$	$\mathbf{X}$		
	$\mathbf{k}$		<b>\</b>	
	mmmmmm	X	$\langle \rangle$	
11	$\leq$	< <u>(</u>	₹₹	_ XX

#### Memo

• To change direction when sewing with the twin needle, raise the needle from the fabric, raise the presser foot lever, and then turn the fabric.

### Using the Spool Stand

The included spool stand is useful when using thread on spools with a large diameter (crosswound thread). This spool stand can hold two spools of thread.

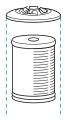
#### Memo

- See page 24 to assemble the spool stand.
- See page 58 to wind the bobbin when using the spool stand.

### Using the Spool Stand

• Be sure to use a spool cap that is slightly larger than the spool.

If the spool cap that is used is smaller or much larger than the spool, the thread may catch and sewing performance may suffer.



• When using thread on a thin spool, place the included spool felt on the spool pin, place the thread spool on the spool pin so that the center of the spool is aligned with the hole at the center of the spool felt, and then insert the spool cap onto the spool pin.



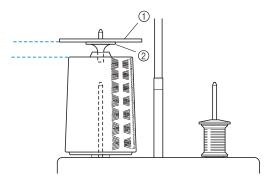
① Spool felt

• When using thread on a cone spool, use the spool holder. When using cone shaped thread spool with other than cotton thread, it is not necessary to use spool caps.

Æ

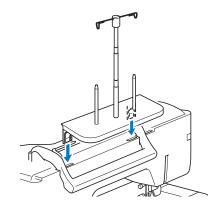


- ① Spool holder
- Depending on the size of spool or the amount of thread remaining, choose the appropriate sized spool cap (large or medium). Spool cap (small) cannot be used with the spool cap base.

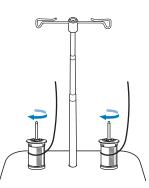


- ① Spool cap
- ② Spool cap base

Attach the spool stand to the machine. (see page 24.)



Place the spool of thread on the spool pin so that the thread feeds off the spool clockwise. Firmly insert the spool cap onto the spool pin.



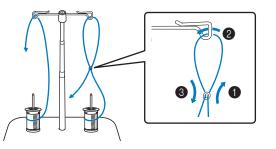
#### Viv Note

2

- When using 2 spools of thread, make sure that both spools are feeding in the same direction.
- Make sure that the spools do not touch each other, otherwise the thread will not feed off smoothly, the needle may break, or the thread may break or become tangled. In addition, make sure that the spools do not touch the telescopic thread guide at the center.
- Make sure that the thread is not caught under the spool.

#### Pull the thread off the spool. Pass the thread from the back to the front through the thread guides at the top.

When using thread that quickly feeds off the spool, such as metallic thread, use the enclosed ring to prevent the thread from becoming entangled. Threading sequence; Pull the thread from the spool, place the thread through the ring from the bottom up (①), into the thread guide (④) and through the ring from the top down (④). When using the ring, do not use the spool cap base.

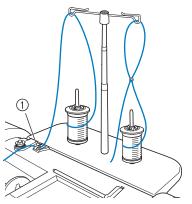


#### 🗤 Note

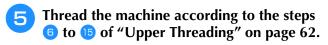
4

- Guide the thread so that it does not become entangled with the other thread.
- After feeding the thread as instructed, wind any excess thread back onto the spool, otherwise the excess thread will become tangled.

Pass the thread through the machine's thread guide from the right to the left.



① Thread guide

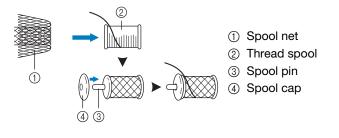


# Using Threads that Unwind Quickly

### ■ Using the Spool Net

If using transparent nylon monofilament thread, metallic thread, or other strong thread, place the included spool net over the spool before using it. When using specialty threads, threading must be done manually.

If the spool net is too long, fold it once to match it to the spool size before placing it over the spool.



### Memo

- When threading the spool with the spool net on, make sure that 50-60 mm (approx. 2 -2-1/2 inches) of thread are pulled out.
- It may be necessary to adjust the thread tension when using the spool net.

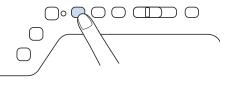
## **CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT**

## A CAUTION

- Always press to on the screen to lock all keys and buttons before changing the presser foot. If not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another button is pressed, the machine will start and may cause injury.
- Always use the correct presser foot for the selected stitch pattern. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, and may cause injury.
- Only use presser feet made for this machine. Using other presser feet may lead to accident or injury.

### Removing the Presser Foot





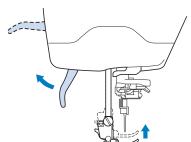


#### Press to lock all keys and buttons.

If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press OK to continue.

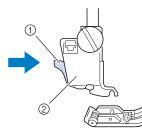


Raise the presser foot lever.





Press the black button on the presser foot holder and remove the presser foot.



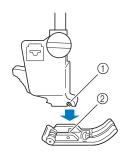


② Presser foot holder

## Attaching the Presser Foot

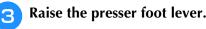
## CAUTION

- Make sure that the presser foot is installed in the correct direction, otherwise the needle may strike the presser foot, breaking the needle and causing injuries.
- Place the new presser foot under the 1 holder, aligning the foot pin with the notch in the holder. Lower the presser foot lever so that the presser foot pin snaps into the notch in the holder.





Press (1) to unlock all keys and buttons.



## Attaching the Presser Foot with the Included Adapter

You can attach the presser feet using the included adapter and small screw.

For example, the walking foot, the free motion echo quilting foot "E", the free motion quilting foot "C" and so on.

Following procedure shows how to attach the walking foot as an example.





## Attaching the Walking Foot

The walking foot holds the fabric between the presser foot and the feed dogs to feed the fabric. This enables you to have better fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics (such as quilted fabrics or velvet) or fabrics that slip easily (such as vinyl, leather, or synthetic leather).

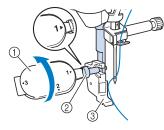
#### Note

- Thread the needle manually when using the walking foot, or only attach the walking foot after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.
- · When sewing with the walking foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

#### Memo

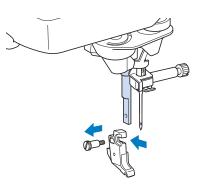
- The walking foot can only be used with straight or zigzag stitch patterns. Reverse stitches cannot be sewn with the walking foot. Only select straight or zigzag stitch patterns with reinforcement stitches. (see page 85.)
- Follow the steps in "Removing the Presser Foot" on the previous page.

Loosen the screw of the presser foot holder to remove the presser foot holder.

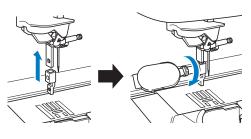


- Multi- purpose screwdriver
- Presser foot holder screw
- ③ Presser foot holder

Remove the screw of the presser foot 3 completely from the presser foot shaft.

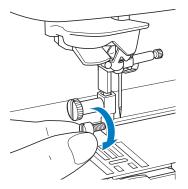


- Getting Ready
- Set the adapter on the presser foot bar, aligning the flat side of the adapter opening with the flat side of the presser bar. Push it up as far as possible, and then tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.

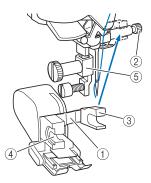


5

Turn a supplied small screw 2 or 3 times with your hand.

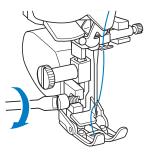


Set the operation lever of the walking foot 6 so that the needle clamp screw is set in the fork. Position the shank of the walking foot on the presser foot bar.



- Operation lever
- Needle clamp screw
- ③ Fork
- ④ Walking foot shank
- (5) Presser foot bar

Lower the presser foot lever. Insert the screw, and tighten the screw securely with the screwdriver.



# A CAUTION

- Use the included screwdriver to tighten the screw securely. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and cause injury.
- Be sure to rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle does not strike the presser foot. If the needle strikes the presser foot, injury may result.

## Using the Dual Feed Foot

Dual feed foot enables you to have best fabric control when sewing difficult fabrics that slip easily, such as quilted fabrics or fabrics that tend to stick to the bottom of a presser foot, such as vinyl, leather or synthetic leather.

#### Note

· When sewing with the dual feed foot, sew at medium to low speeds.

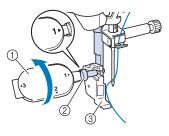
#### Memo

- When selecting stitches to be used with the dual feed foot, only the stitches that can be used will be activated on the display.
- When sewing fabric that easily sticks together, a more attractive finish can be achieved by basting the beginning of sewing.

#### Attaching the Dual Feed Foot

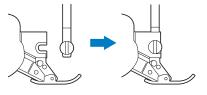
Follow the steps in "Removing the Presser Foot" on page 70.

Loosen the screw of the presser foot holder to remove the presser foot holder.

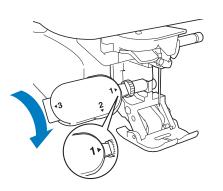


- Multi- purpose screwdriver
- 2 Presser foot holder screw
- ③ Presser foot holder
- Position the dual feed foot to the presser З foot bar by aligning the notch of the dual feed foot to the large screw.

Side view



4 Hold the dual feed foot in place with your right hand, then using the included screwdriver securely tighten the large screw.



# 

• Use the included screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and possibly cause injury.

Plug the connector of the dual feed foot into the jack on the back of your machine.



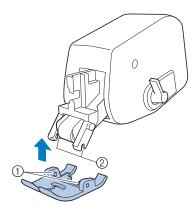


Press sto unlock all keys and buttons.

→ All keys and operation buttons are unlocked, and the previous screen is displayed.

## ■ Attaching/Detaching toe

Attach the toe by aligning the pins with the notches and snap it into place.



- ① Pins
- ② Notches

If you push down on the front and back part of the dual feed foot, the toe of the dual feed foot will snap off.



## ■ Using the Dual Feed Position Lever

When the feed position lever is up, the black roller belt on the dual feed is not engaged.



When the feed position lever is down, the black roller belt on the dual feed is engaged.

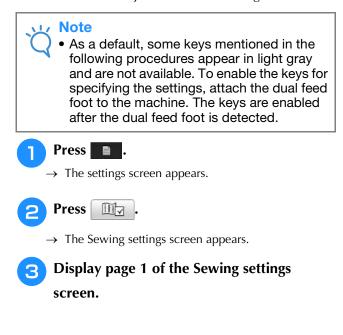


K Note

Do not operate the lever while sewing.

## Adjusting the Amount of Fabric Feeding of the Dual Feed Foot

The dual feed mechanism pulls the top fabric according to the set stitch length. With troublesome fabrics, fine tune the set length, by changing the dual feed feed adjustment in the settings screen.



# Use - or + to increase or decrease the feeding of the top fabric.

- \* Select "00" for sewing in most cases.
- <sup>4</sup> If the feed amount for the top fabric is too little, causing the fabric to be longer than the bottom

fabric, press + to increase the feed amount for the top fabric.

If the feed amount for the top fabric is too much, causing the fabric to be shorter than the bottom

fabric, press — to decrease the feed amount for the top fabric.



5 Press

OK

to return to the original screen.

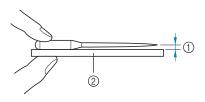
# CHANGING THE NEEDLE

# **A** CAUTION

- Always press on the screen to lock all keys and buttons before changing the needle. If wo is not pressed and the "Start/Stop" button or another operation button is pressed accidentally, the machine will start and injury may result.
- Use only sewing machine needles made for home use. Other needles may bend or break and may cause injury.
- Never sew with a bent needle. A bent needle will easily break and may cause injury.

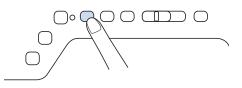
#### Memo

• To check the needle correctly, place the flat side of the needle on a flat surface. Check the needle from the top and the sides. Throw away any bent needles.



- ① Parallel space
- ② Level surface (bobbin cover, glass, etc.)

# Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



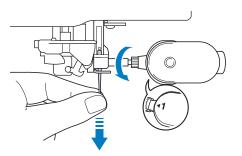


#### Press to lock all keys and buttons.

- \* If the message "OK to automatically lower the presser foot?" appears on the LCD screen, press
  - ok to continue.

#### <sub>ン</sub>Note

• Before replacing the needle, cover the hole in the needle plate with fabric or paper to prevent the needle from falling into the machine. **3** Use the screwdriver to turn the needle clamp screw toward the front of the machine and loosen the screw. Remove the needle.

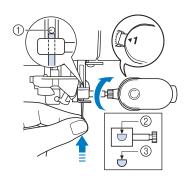


#### 」、Note

• Do not apply pressure to the needle clamp screw. Doing so may damage the needle or machine.



4 With the flat side of the needle facing the back, insert the new needle all the way to the top of the needle stopper (viewing window) in the needle clamp. Use a screwdriver to securely tighten the needle clamp screw.



① Needle stopper

5

- ② Hole for setting the needle
- ③ Flat side of needle

# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to push in the needle until it touches the stopper, and securely tighten the needle clamp screw with a screwdriver. If the needle is not completely inserted or the needle clamp screw is loose, the needle may break or the machine may be damaged.

Press (1) to unlock all keys and buttons.

## About the Needle

The sewing machine needle is probably the most important part of the sewing machine. Choosing the proper needle for your sewing project will result in a beautiful finish and fewer problems. Below are some things to keep in mind about needles.

- The smaller the needle number, the finer the needle. As the numbers increase, the needles get thicker.
- Use fine needles with lightweight fabrics, and thicker needles with heavyweight fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 with stretch fabrics.
- To avoid skipped stitches, use ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 when sewing character or decorative stitches.
- Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. Use ball point needle 75/11 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters when the thread trimming function is turned on.
- It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavyweight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example, denim, puffy foam, etc.). A 75/11 needle may bend or break, which could result in injury.
- Size 75/11 machine needle is installed into your sewing machine.

## Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations

The following table provides information concerning the appropriate thread and needle for various fabrics. Please refer to this table when selecting a thread and needle for the fabric you wish to use.

Fabric type/Application		Thread	Size of needle	
		Туре	Size	Size of needle
Medium weight fabrics	Broadcloth	Cotton thread	60 - 90	
	Taffeta	Synthetic thread		75/11 - 90/14
	Flannel, Gabardine	Silk thread	50	_
Thin fabrics	Lawn	Cotton thread	60 - 90	
	Georgette	Synthetic thread	- 60 - 90	65/9 - 75/11
	Challis, Satin	Silk thread	50	-
Thick fabrics	Denim	Cotton thread	30	
			50	90/14 - 100/16
	Corduroy	Synthetic thread	50 - 60	90/14 - 100/16
	Tweed	Silk thread	- 50 - 60	
Stretch fabrics	Jersey	Thread for knits		Ball point needle (gold colored) 75/11 - 90/14
	Tricot	-	50 - 60	
Easily frayed fabrics	I	Cotton thread	50.00	
		Synthetic thread		65/9 - 90/14
		Silk thread	50	
		Synthetic thread	50	00/14 100/10
		Silk thread	50	90/14 - 100/16

• For transparent monofilament nylon thread, always use needle sizes 90/14 or 100/16. The same thread is usually used for the bobbin thread and upper thread.

# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to follow the needle, thread, and fabric combinations listed in the table. Using an improper combination, especially a heavyweight fabric (i.e., denim) with a small needle (i.e., 65/9 - 75/11), may cause the needle to bend or break, and lead to injury. Also, the seam may be uneven, the fabric may pucker, or the machine may skip stitches.

# NEEDLE CALIBRATION USING THE BUILT IN CAMERA

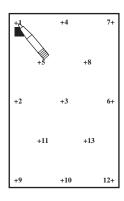
Setting the camera needle position is essential when you use camera function. It is not necessary to perform this operation each time, but we recommend performing it when the needle is changed. Use the white stickers (solid) included with the machine.

Hold your finger firmly on the LCD screen, and then turn on the machine.

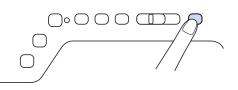


#### V Note

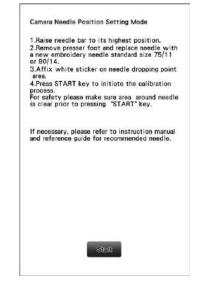
- Be careful not to touch the LCD screen prior to Step 2 below.
- This function can be performed with or without embroidery unit attached to machine. If attached, message screens will appear regarding movement of embroidery unit.
- $\rightarrow$  The following screen appears.



**2** Press the "Automatic Threading" button.



 $\rightarrow$  Camera needle position setting screen appears.

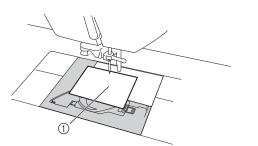


- **3** Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the procedure.
  - 1. Raise needle bar to its highest position.

#### Ly Note

- The "Needle Position" button cannot be used while setting the camera needle position. Turn the handwheel counterclockwise to move the needle bar.
- 2. Remove presser foot and replace needle with a new embroidery needle standard size 75/11 or 90/14.

3. Affix white sticker on needle dropping point area.

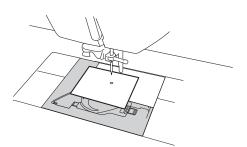


① White sticker

#### Note

- Use a new sticker. The camera needle position cannot be set correctly if there is a hole in sticker or if it is dirty. If you have no new stickers, contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.
- 4. Press to initiate the calibration process. For safety please make sure area around needle is clear prior to pressing
- $\rightarrow$  Setting the needle drop point begins.

The operation is finished when "OK" appears. If "NG" appears, remove the sticker, and then follow the on-screen instructions to repeat steps 3 and 4 of step 3. If multiple attempts to set the position are not successful, contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.



Camera Needle F	Position Setting Mode
2.Remove press	er to its highest position. er foot and replace needle with ry needle standard size 75/11
	ticker on needle dropping point
	key to initiate the calibration
	e make sure area around needle
is clear prior to	pressing "START" key.
	OK.
1	
0	
100 million (100 million)	
States and in case	
a second	
1000	
THE R. L. LEWIS CO.	
COLUMN STREET,	
	Start

5

Remove the sticker, and then turn off the machine.



SEW/INC

SEWING 82
Sewing a Stitch82
<ul> <li>Using the Multi-Function Foot Controller (Only for supplied models)</li></ul>
Specifying the Multi-Function Foot Controller
(Only for supplied models)
Functions That Can Be Specified
Specifying the Functions
Sewing Reinforcement Stitches85
Automatic Reinforcement Stitching85
Sewing Curves87
Changing Sewing Direction87
Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less
Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics87
■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot
■ If the Fabric does not Feed
Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener Tape
Sewing Lightweight Fabrics
Sewing Stretch Fabrics89
STITCH SETTINGS
Setting the Stitch Width90
Setting the Stitch Length91
Setting the "L/R Shift"91
Setting the Thread Tension92
Proper Thread Tension
Upper Thread is Too Tight
Upper Thread is Too Loose
USEFUL FUNCTIONS
Automatic Thread Cutting93
Adjusting the Needle Drop Position with the Guideline Marker94
Adjusting the Guideline Marker Position
Adjusting the Brightness of the Guideline Marker
Pivoting95
Using the Knee Lifter96
Automatic Fabric Sensor System
(Automatic Presser Foot Pressure)97
Needle Position - Stitch Placement98
Checking the Needle Location in the Screen98
Using the Camera View Window
USING SENSOR FUNCTIONS
WITH SEWING STITCH 100
Sensor Function Area100
Specifying the Guideline Marker Position With the Sensor Pen100
Specifying the Needle Drop Position With the Sensor Pen102
Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Stitching Width and Stitch
Position
Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Sewing End Point
Reusing the Previous Setting
5 5

# SEWING

# **A** CAUTION

- To avoid injury, pay special attention to the needle while the machine is in operation. Keep your hands away from moving parts while the machine is in operation.
- Do not stretch or pull the fabric during sewing. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not use bent or broken needles. Doing so may lead to injury.
- Do not attempt to sew over basting pins or other objects during sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.
- If stitches become bunched, lengthen the stitch length setting before continuing sewing. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

## Sewing a Stitch

- Turn the main power to ON and press to display the utility stitches, and push the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.
  - Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.



→ The symbol of the correct presser foot will be displayed in the upper left corner of the LCD screen.

Install the presser foot ("CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 70).

# **CAUTION**

 Always use the correct presser foot. If the wrong presser foot is used, the needle may strike the presser foot and bend or break, possibly resulting in injury. Refer to page 414 for presser foot recommendations. **4** Set the fabric under the presser foot. Hold the fabric and thread in your left hand, and rotate the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position.



#### Memo

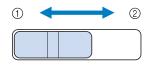
• The black button on the left side of presser foot "J" should be pressed only if the fabric does not feed or when sewing thick seams (see page 88). Normally, you can sew without pressing the black button.

**5** Lower the presser foot.

\* You do not have to pull up the bobbin thread.

# Adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide.

\* You can use this slide to adjust sewing speed during sewing.

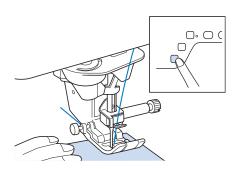


- ① Slow
- ② Fast



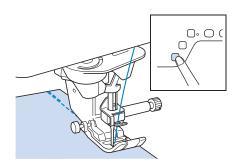
# Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.

\* Guide the fabric lightly by hand.



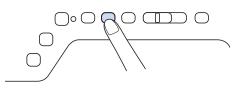
#### 🦙 Memo

- When the foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the "Start/ Stop" button.
- Press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop sewing.





# Press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the upper and lower threads.



 $\rightarrow$  The needle will return to the up position automatically.

# **A** CAUTION

- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button after the threads have been cut. Doing so could tangle the thread or break the needle and damage the machine.
- Do not press the "Thread Cutter" button when there is no fabric set in the machine or during machine operation. The thread may tangle, possibly resulting in damage.

# • When cutting thread thicker than #30, nylon monofilament thread, or other decorative threads, use the thread cutter on the side of the machine.



When the needle has stopped moving, raise the presser foot and remove the fabric.

#### Memo

 This machine is equipped with a bobbin thread sensor that warns you when the bobbin thread is almost empty. When the bobbin thread is nearly empty, the machine automatically stops. However, if the "Start/ Stop" button is pressed, a few stitches can be sewn. When the warning displays, rethread the machine immediately.

#### Using the Multi-Function Foot Controller (Only for supplied models)

You can also use the foot controller to start and stop sewing.

# **A** CAUTION

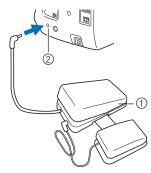
Do not allow fabric pieces and dust to collect in the foot controller. Doing so could cause a fire or an electric shock.

#### 🔊 Memo

- When the multi-function foot controller is being used, you cannot start sewing by pressing the "Start/Stop" button.
- The multi-function foot controller cannot be used when embroidering.
- The multi-function foot controller can be used for sewing utility and decorative stitches when the embroidery unit is attached.

# Insert the multi-function foot controller plug into its jack on the machine.

\* Before connecting the multi-function foot controller, be sure to assemble the controller. Refer to "Assembling the Controller" on page 26.



- ① Multi-function foot controller
- ② Foot controller jack

# Slowly depress the multi-function foot controller to start sewing.

Pressing down on the multi-function foot controller increases the sewing speed; releasing the pressure on the multi-function foot controller decreases the sewing speed.



#### א Memo

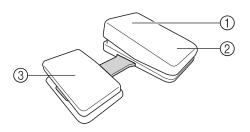
• The speed that is set using the sewing speed controller is the multi-function foot controller's maximum sewing speed.

Release the multi-function foot controller to stop the machine.

## Specifying the Multi-Function Foot Controller (Only for supplied models)

With the multi-function foot controller, various sewing machine operations in addition to starting/ stopping sewing, such as thread cutting and reverse stitching, can be specified to be performed.

## ■ Functions That Can Be Specified



	Controller	Functions that can be specified
1	Main foot controller	Start/Stop
2	Heel switch	Select any of the following: • Thread Cutting • Needle Position UP/DOWN
3	Side pedal	<ul> <li>Single Stitch</li> <li>Reverse Stitch (Reinforcement Stitch) *</li> </ul>

- \* If you set the "Reverse Stitch" function on the heel switch, machine operates the same as pressing the "Reverse Button" on the machine.
- \* Reinforcement stitching may be applied depending on the selected stitch pattern. For the details, refer to "Automatic Reinforcement Stitching" on page 85.

#### Memo

 If you set "Reverse Stitch" on the side pedal, you can create a darning stitch effect using zigzag stitches. With both feet, keep pressing the main foot controller, and repeat pressing and releasing the side pedal to sew forward and reverse in turn. Machine will reverse at the speed you press the main foot controller.

## Specifying the Functions

The functions performed by the multi-function foot controller can be specified in the settings screen.

#### 🟒 Note

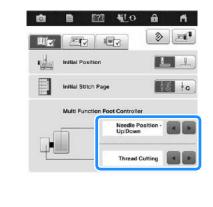
- Before specifying the functions, connect the multi-function foot controller to the sewing machine. The settings screen is activated the first time that the sewing machine detects the multi-function foot controller.
  - After the multi-function foot controller is connected to the sewing machine and the functions are specified, the "Start/Stop" button cannot be used. All buttons other than the "Start/Stop" button can continue to be used.





**Display page 2 of the Sewing Settings** screen.

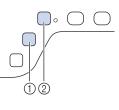
Select the functions to be performed by the multi-function foot controller.





# **Sewing Reinforcement Stitches**

Reverse/reinforcement stitches are generally necessary at the beginning and end of sewing. You can use the "Reverse Stitch" button to sew reverse/ reinforcement stitches. When you keep pressing "Reinforcement Stitch" button, the machine will sew reinforcement stitch at that point 3 to 5 stitches, and then stop. (see page 17)



- (1) "Reverse Stitch" button
- ② "Reinforcement Stitch" button

If the automatic reinforcement stitch is selected on the screen, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) automatically at the end of sewing (Refer to the next procedure "Automatic Reinforcement Stitching".).



- Reverse stitch
- ② Reinforcement stitch

The operation performed when the button is pressed differs depending on the selected pattern. (Refer to "STITCH SETTING CHART" on page 414.)

#### Memo

- When you press the "Reinforcement Stitch" button while sewing character/decorative stitch pattern, you can end sewing with a full stitch instead of at a mid-point.
- The green light on the right of the "Reinforcement Stitch" button lights up while the machine is sewing a full motif, and it automatically turns off when the sewing is stopped.

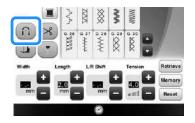
## **Automatic Reinforcement** Stitching

After selecting a stitch motif, turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch motif) at the beginning and end of sewing.



- Select a stitch pattern.

**Press** (A) to set the automatic reinforcement stitching function.



 $\rightarrow$  The key will display as

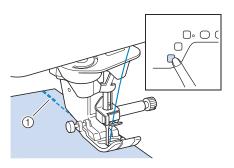
SC SC

#### 🏹 Memo

 Some stitches, such as buttonholes and bar tacks, require reinforcement stitches at the beginning of sewing. If you select one of these stitches, the machine will automatically turn on this function (the key

appears as n when the stitch is selected).

Set the fabric in the start position and begin sewing.

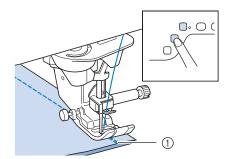


- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

If you press the Start/Stop button to pause sewing, press it again to continue. The machine will not sew reverse/reinforcement stitches again.



Press "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button).



- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and stop.

#### 🦙 Memo

• To turn off the automatic reinforcement stitching function, press (1) again, so it appears as (1).

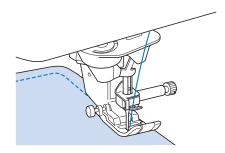
The operation performed when the button is pressed differs depending on the selected pattern. Refer to the following table for details on the operation that is performed when the button is pressed.

	"Reverse Stitch"	"Reinforcement
	button 다	Stitch" button
Utility Stitch +	Machine starts sewing the stitches and only sews reverse stitches while holding the "Reverse Stitch" button.	Machine starts sewing the stitches and sews 3 – 5 reinforcement stitches while holding the "Reinforcement Stitch" button.
Utility Stitch +	Machine starts sewing the stitches and only sews reverse stitches while holding the "Reverse Stitch" button.*	Machine starts sewing the stitches and sews 3 – 5 reinforcement stitches while holding the "Reinforcement Stitch" button.
Utility Stitch +	Machine sews reverse stitches at the beginning and end of sewing.	Machine sews reverse stitches at the beginning and reinforcement stitches at the end of sewing.
$ \begin{bmatrix} Utility \\ Stitch \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \cdot 04 \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \cdot 10 \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ $	Machine sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and reverse stitches at the end of sewing.*	Machine sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing.
Character Decorative Stitch	Machine starts sewing and then sews reinforcement stitches while holding the "Reverse Stitch" button.	Machine starts sewing at the beginning, then completes the pattern and sews reinforcement stitches at the end of sewing.
Character Decorative Stitch + 1	Machine sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and sews reinforcement stitches when the "Reverse Stitch" button is pressed.	Machine sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning, then completes the pattern and sews reinforcement stitches at the end of sewing.

\* If "Reinforcement Priority" of the settings screen is set to "ON" (see page 33), reinforcement stitches are sewn instead of reverse stitches.

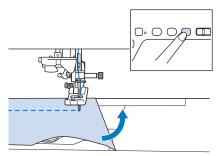
## **Sewing Curves**

Sew slowly while keeping the seam parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.



# **Changing Sewing Direction**

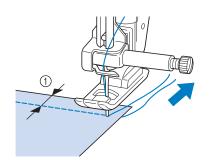
Stop the machine. Leave the needle in the fabric, and press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot. Using the needle as a pivot, turn the fabric so that you can sew in the new direction. Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.



The pivot setting is useful when changing the sewing direction. When the machine is stopped at the corner of the fabric, the machine stops with the needle in the fabric and the presser foot is automatically raised so the fabric can easily be rotated ("Pivoting" on page 95).

## Sewing a Seam Allowance of 0.5 cm or Less

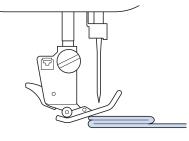
Baste the corner before sewing, and then, after changing the sewing direction at the corner, pull the basting thread toward the back while sewing.



① 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

# Sewing Heavyweight Fabrics

The sewing machine can sew fabrics up to 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick. If the thickness of a seam causes sewing to occur at an angle, help guide the fabric by hand and sew on the downward slope.

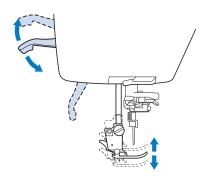


# **CAUTION**

- Do not forcefully push fabrics more than 6 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) thick through the sewing machine. This may cause the needle to break and cause injury.
- Thicker fabrics require a larger needle (See page 77).

#### ■ If the Fabric does not Fit under the Presser Foot

If the presser foot is in the up position, and you are sewing heavyweight or multiple layers of fabric which do not fit easily under the presser foot, use the presser foot lever to raise the presser foot to its highest position. The fabric will now fit under the presser foot.



#### 🔊 Memo

 You cannot use the presser foot lever after the presser foot has been raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.

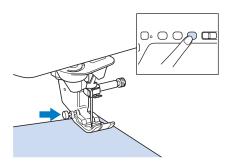
## ■ If the Fabric does not Feed

If the fabric does not feed when starting to sew or when sewing thick seams, press the black button on the left side of presser foot "J".



#### Raise the presser foot.

While keeping the black button on the left side of presser foot "J" pressed in, press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.



Release the black button.



→ The presser foot remains level, enabling the fabric to be fed.

#### Memo

- Once the trouble spot has been passed, the foot will return to its normal position.
- When "Automatic Fabric Sensor System" (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure) in the machine settings screen is set to "ON", the thickness of the fabric is automatically detected by the internal sensor so the fabric can be fed smoothly for best sewing results. (see page 97 for details.)

## Sewing Hook-and-Loop Fastener Tape

# **CAUTION**

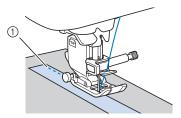
- Do not use adhesive backed hook-and-loop fastener tape designed for sewing. When glue adheres to the needle or the bobbin hook race, it may cause malfunction.
- If the hook-and-loop fastener tape is sewn with a fine needle (65/9-75/11), the needle may bend or break.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

• Before starting to sew, baste the fabric and hook-and-loop fastener tape together.

Make sure that the needle passes through the hook-and-loop fastener tape by rotating the handwheel and lower the needle into the hookand-loop fastener tape before sewing. Sew the edge of the hook-and-loop fastener tape at a slow speed.

If the needle does not pass through the hook-andloop fastener tape, replace the needle size with the needle for thick fabrics (page 77).



① Edge of the hook-and-loop fastener tape

# Sewing Lightweight Fabrics

Place thin paper or tear away embroidery stabilizer under thin fabrics to make sewing easier. Gently tear off the paper or the stabilizer after sewing.

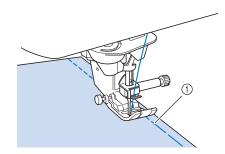
① Thin paper

# Sewing Stretch Fabrics

First, baste together the pieces of fabric, and then sew without stretching the fabric. In addition, a better result can be achieved by using thread for knits or a stretch stitch.

#### Memo

• For best results when sewing stretch fabrics, decrease the pressure of the presser foot ("Using the Machine Setting Mode Key" on page 33).



① Basting stitching

# **STITCH SETTINGS**

When you select a stitch, your machine automatically selects the appropriate stitch width, stitch length, and upper thread tension. However, if needed, you can change any of the individual settings.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

- Settings for some stitches cannot be changed (refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual).
  - If you turn off the machine or select another stitch without saving stitch setting changes ("Saving Your Stitch Settings" on page 115), the stitch settings will return to their default settings.

# Setting the Stitch Width

Follow the steps below when you want to change the zigzag stitch pattern width.

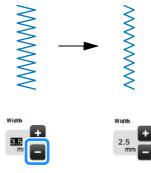


## Memo

• For an alternate method of changing the stitch width using the speed controller, see page 133.

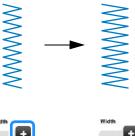
#### **Example:**

Press **e** to narrow the zigzag stitch pattern width.



 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets smaller.

Press **F** to widen the zigzag stitch pattern width.





 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets bigger.

#### Memo

- Press Memory to save the stitch settings.
- Press III to check changes made to the stitch.
- Press Reset to return the stitch width to the original setting.

#### Vote

• After adjusting the stitch width, slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break.

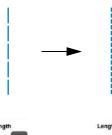
## Setting the Stitch Length

Follow the steps below when you want to change the stitch pattern length.

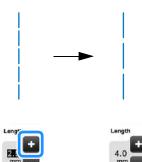


#### **Example:**





→ The value in the display gets smaller.
 Press → to lengthen the stitch length.



 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display gets bigger.

#### 🔊 Memo

- Press Memory to save the stitch settings.
- Press 🔟 to check changes made to the stitch.
- Press Reset to return the stitch length to the original setting.

# A CAUTION

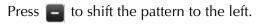
• If the stitches get bunched together, lengthen the stitch length and continue sewing. Do not continue sewing without lengthening the stitch length. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury.

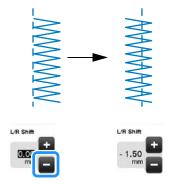
## Setting the "L/R Shift"

Follow the steps below when you want to change the placement of the zigzag stitch pattern by moving it left and right.



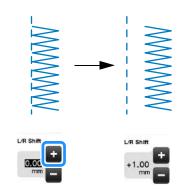
#### Example:





 $\rightarrow$  The value in the display appears with a minus sign.

Press 💽 to shift the pattern to the right side of the left needle position.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The value in the display appears with a plus sign.

#### Memo

- Press Memory to save the stitch settings.
- Press in to check changes made to the stitch.
- Press Reset to return to the original setting.

#### ✓ Note

• After adjusting the "L/R Shift", slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) and check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may bend or break. SE

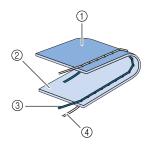
## Setting the Thread Tension

You may need to change the thread tension, depending on the fabric and thread being used. Follow the steps below to make any necessary changes.



## Proper Thread Tension

The upper thread and the bobbin thread should cross near the center of the fabric. Only the upper thread should be visible from the right side of the fabric, and only the bobbin thread should be visible from the wrong side of the fabric.



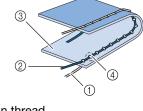
- ① Wrong side
- ② Surface
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Bobbin thread

## ■ Upper Thread is Too Tight

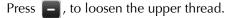
If the bobbin thread is visible from the right side of the fabric, the upper thread is too tight.

#### 🗸 Note

 If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too tight. In this case, refer to "Setting the Bobbin" (page 59) and rethread the bobbin thread.

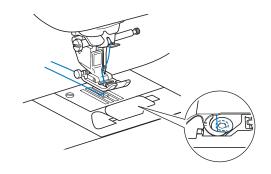


- Bobbin thread
- ② Upper thread
- ③ Surface
- ④ Locks appear on surface of fabric



#### Memo

• When you finish sewing, remove the bobbin cover and then make sure that the thread is shown as below. If the thread is not shown as below, the thread is not inserted through the tension-adjusting spring of the bobbin case correctly. Reinsert the thread correctly. For details, refer to page 59.

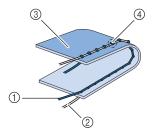


## ■ Upper Thread is Too Loose

If the upper thread is visible from the wrong side of the fabric, the upper thread is too loose.

#### Viv Note

 If the upper thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too loose. In this case, refer to "Upper Threading" (page 62) and rethread the upper thread.



- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- ③ Wrong side
- ④ Locks appear on wrong side of fabric

Press 💽 , to tighten the upper thread.

#### 🏹 Memo

 Press Reset to return the thread tension to the original setting.

# **USEFUL FUNCTIONS**

# Automatic Thread Cutting

After selecting a stitch pattern, turn on the automatic thread cutting function before sewing, and the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches (or reverse stitches, depending on the stitch pattern) at the beginning and end of sewing, and trim the threads at the end of sewing. This function is useful when sewing buttonholes and bar tacks.



#### Select a stitch pattern.

Press 😹 to set the automatic thread cutting function.



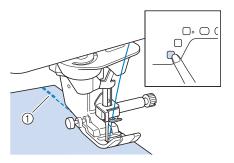
→ You get A whether a

#### Memo

- To turn off the automatic thread cutting function, press again, so it appears as
   .
- This function is set automatically when sewing embroidery.

3

# Set the fabric in the start position and start sewing.



- Sewing Basics
- ① Reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches)
- → The machine will automatically sew reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) and then continue sewing.

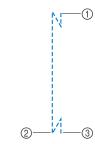
#### 🦙 Memo

 If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press the same button again to continue. The beginning reverse/ reinforcement stitches will not be sewn again.

# 4

# Once you have reached the end of the stitching, press "Reverse Stitch" button or "Reinforcement Stitch" button once.

If stitching, such as buttonholes and bar tacking, that includes reinforcement stitching has been selected, this operation is unnecessary.



- ① The point where the "Start/Stop" button was pressed.
- ② The point where the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button was pressed.
- ③ The thread is cut here.

#### Memo

 The automatic thread cutting function will not be performed if the "Start/Stop" button is pressed while sewing. Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button at the end of the stitching.

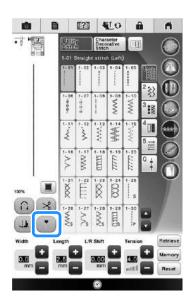
## Adjusting the Needle Drop Position with the Guideline Marker

The red guideline marker indicates the sewing position on the fabric. You can adjust the sewing position by moving the guideline marker while checking the guideline marker on the fabric.

# **CAUTION**

- The guideline marker is a laser; therefore, do not stare at the laser light directly. Otherwise it may cause blindness.

Press 💽 to display the guideline marker.



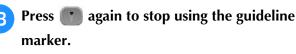
- $\rightarrow$  The guideline marker scale appears.
- \* Depending on the setting of "Initial Position" in the settings screen, the initial needle drop position is scaled as either 0.0 mm or 3.5 mm.



→ Adjust the position from 15.5 mm (5/8 inch) to the right of the left needle to -3.5 mm (-1/8 inch) to the left of the left needle.



 Press to flip the guideline marker position on the center needle position.



## Adjusting the Guideline Marker Position

If the guideline marker indicates the position incorrectly in the center needle position, adjust the initial position in the settings screen.

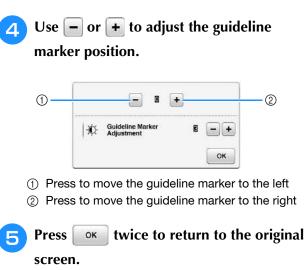


# Press **Description** to display "Guideline Marker Adjustment" in the settings screen.

- Display settings screen.
- 3 Press Start
  - $\rightarrow$  The "Guideline Marker Adjustment" screen appears.







### Adjusting the Brightness of the Guideline Marker



## Pivoting

If the pivot function is selected, the machine stops with the needle lowered (in the fabric) and the presser foot is automatically raised to an appropriate height when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. When the "Start/Stop" button is pressed again, the presser foot is automatically lowered and sewing continues. This function is useful for stopping the machine to rotate the fabric.

# **A** CAUTION

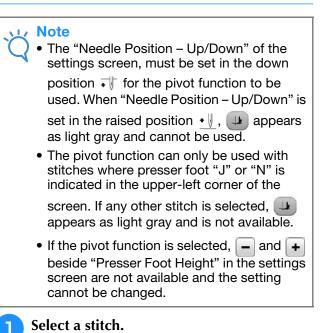
• When the pivot setting is selected, the machine starts when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed or the foot controller is pressed down even if the presser foot has been raised. Be sure to keep your hands and other items away from the needle, otherwise injuries may occur.

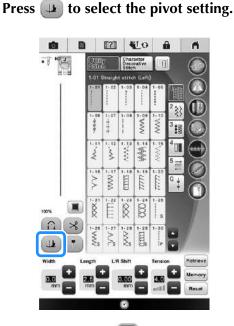
#### Memo

When the pivot setting is selected, the height of the presser foot when sewing is stopped can be changed according to the type of fabric being sewn. Press to display "Pivoting Height" of the settings screen. Press or to select one of the three heights (3.2 mm, 5.0 mm or 7.5 mm). To raise the presser foot further, increase the setting. (Normally, 3.2 mm is set.)

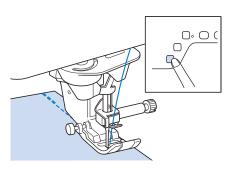








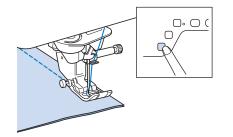
- $\rightarrow$  The key appears as  $\square$ .
- Place the fabric under the presser foot with the needle at the starting point of the stitching, and then press the "Start/Stop" button. The machine will begin sewing.



#### Memo

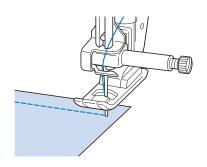
• If you press the "Start/Stop" button to pause sewing, press it again to continue, reverse stitches (or reinforcement stitches) will not be sewn.

Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop the machine at the point where the sewing direction changes.



→ The machine stops with the needle in the fabric, and the presser foot is raised.

5 Rotate the fabric, and then press the "Start/ Stop" button.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The presser foot is automatically lowered, and sewing continues.

## Using the Knee Lifter

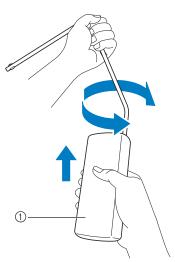
1

Using the knee lifter, you can raise and lower the presser foot with your knee, leaving both hands free to handle the fabric.

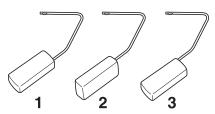
Change the operating position of the knee lifter handle before inserting into the machine. Slide up the knee lifter handle slightly and

rotate it while releasing pressure so handle will click into position.

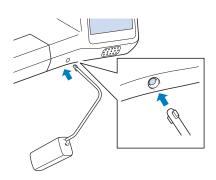
\* The knee lifter can be adjusted to three different angles.



- (1) Knee lifter handle
- → Rotate knee lifter handle till it clicks into the selected position that is most comfortable for you.



Align the tabs on the knee lifter with the notches in the knee lifter slot on the front of the machine. Insert the knee lifter bar as far as possible.



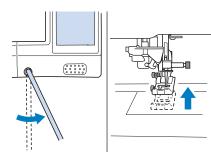
# **A** CAUTION

• Only change position of the knee lifter handle when knee lifter is not on the machine, otherwise the knee lifter may damage the mounting slot on front of the machine.

#### 🟒 Note

• If the knee lifter bar is not pushed into the mounting slot as far as possible, it may come out during use.

Use your knee to move the knee lifter bar to the right in order to raise the presser foot. Release the knee lifter to lower the presser foot.



# **A** CAUTION

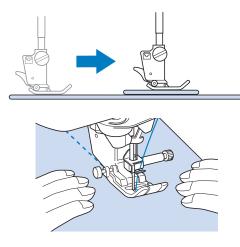
 Be sure to keep your knee away from the knee lifter during sewing. If the knee lifter is pushed during machine operation, the needle may break or the thread tension may loosen.

#### 🔊 Memo

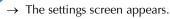
• When the presser foot is in the up position, move the knee lifter to the far right and then release to return the presser foot to the down position.

## Automatic Fabric Sensor System (Automatic Presser Foot Pressure)

The thickness of the fabric is automatically detected and the presser foot pressure is automatically adjusted with an internal sensor while sewing, to insure that your fabric is fed smoothly. The fabric sensor system works continuously while sewing. This function is useful for sewing over thick seams (see page 87), or quilting (see page 131).



🌓 Press 🔳



Set "Automatic Fabric Sensor System" to "ON".







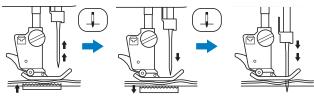
OK

to return to the original screen.

## Needle Position - Stitch Placement

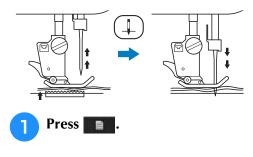
When the "Needle Position - Stitch Placement" is "ON", the needle will be partially lowered for precise stitch placement and then press the "Needle Position" button to lower the needle completely. Each press of the "Needle Position" button changes the needle to the next position. When the "Needle Position - Stitch Placement" is "OFF", each press of the "Needle Position" button simply raises and then lowers the needle.

"Needle Position - Stitch Placement" is "ON"



\* When the needle is nearly lowered by pressing the "Needle Position" button, the feed dogs are lowered. At this time, the fabric can be shifted to finely adjust the needle drop position.

"Needle Position - Stitch Placement" is "OFF"



Set "Needle Position - Stitch Placement" to "ON" or "OFF".

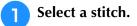




ok to return to the original screen.

# Checking the Needle Location in the Screen

You can check the stitch image with actual fabric image on the screen.



## 2 Press 📷

→ An image of the selected stitch and the actual fabric image are displayed.

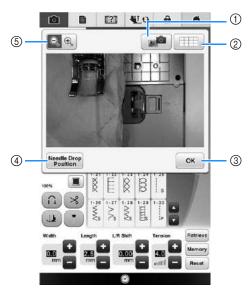


\* Press in to change the thread color displayed on the screen. You can select from four different colors.

# 3 Press on the fabric image or ⊕ on the screen.

- $\rightarrow$  The camera view window appears.
- $\rightarrow$  Press again to turn off the camera view.

## ■ Using the Camera View Window



- $\rightarrow$  The camera view window appears.
- ① CAMERA IMAGE
- ② GRID VIEW
- 3 OK
- ④ NEEDLE DROP POSITION
- 5 ZOOM

#### **CAMERA IMAGE**

Press this key to save a camera image to the USB media.

Insert the USB media to the machine to save a camera image (Refer to "Saving a Settings Screen Image to USB Media" on page 36). The files for camera images are saved with the name "C\*\*.BMP". A maximum of 100 camera images can be saved in one USB media.

\* "\*\*" in the name "C\*\*.BMP" will automatically be replaced with a number between 00 and 99.

#### **GRID VIEW**

Press this key to display a grid.



#### OK

Press this key to close the screen.

#### NEEDLE DROP POSITION

Press **Needle Drop** to show the needle drop position in

the screen as " - ".

Lower the presser foot before pressing <u>Pestion</u>. Once the needle drop position appears on the screen, you can raise the presser foot and change the needle drop position by moving the fabric.



① Needle drop position

#### ZOOM

Press 🔍 to enlarge the image in the screen.

Press again to return the image to its original display size.

#### <sub>ン</sub>Note

- The camera view window disappears when you start sewing.
- When sewing thick fabrics, the needle drop position indicated in the screen may differ from the actual position.

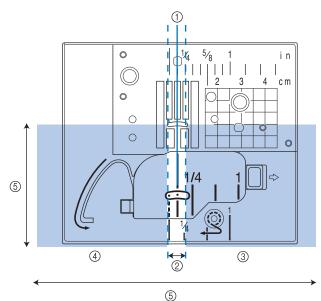
# USING SENSOR FUNCTIONS WITH SEWING STITCH

Before using the sensor functions, carefully read "Utility Stitches" chapter to familiarize yourself with the machine operations.

The sensor functions are performed using the sensor pen.

## **Sensor Function Area**

When using the sensor pen with utility stitches, the operations may differ depending on the area to be touched.



1	Center needle	Sewing position for stitch patterns sewn
	position	with the center needle position
2	Setting area	Area 3.5 mm to the left and right of ①. Touch this area with the sensor pen to specify a position. Area 7 mm to the left and 12 mm to the right of ①, when positioning the guideline marker.
3	Adjustment area (right)	Touch: With each touch, the setting increases by 0.5 mm. This allows fine adjustments to be made after touching within ② to specify a position. Long touch: After touching ② to specify a position or adjusting the position by touching within ③ or ④, long touch to apply the setting.
4	Adjustment area (left)	Touch: With each touch, the setting decreases by 0.5 mm. This allows fine adjustments to be made after touching within (2) to specify a position. Long touch: Apply the setting in the same way as a long touch within (3).
5	(7-7/8 inches) towa	ch range extends approximately 200 mm rd you from the needle drop point and 130 les) to either side of the middle (center)

#### Memo

- There are borderline areas between setting area and adjustment areas, which allow you to set quickly to the most decreased/ increased value.
- The borderline areas are respectively 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) wide when positioning the guideline marker, and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) wide in other cases.

# Specifying the Guideline Marker Position With the Sensor Pen

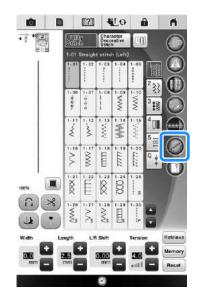
The sewing position will be indicated by a red guideline marker.

The position of the guideline marker can be adjusted to your desired location.



Select a stitch pattern.

# Press Ø







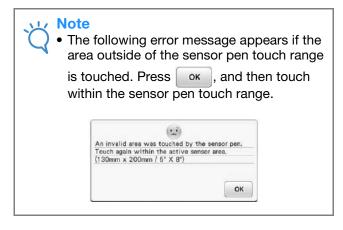
→ The guideline marker position setting screen appears and the guideline marker flashes.

#### With the sensor pen, touch the location to be specified as the guideline marker position.

- → The machine's guideline marker moves to the touched position and flashes.
- → The distance from the left reference line to the touched position appears in the guideline marker position setting screen.
- → The stitch preview on the upper left side of the screen is updated according to the specified setting.

ensor (		deline m	arker p	osition us	ing the
		6.0 m	n		
	and the second	Ter Line	e des	HILI	Hill
++++			and all		

→ Press Cancel to stop specifying a setting with the sensor pen.



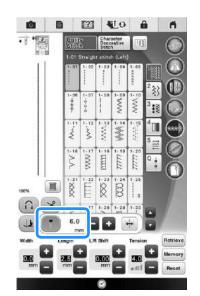
#### Memo

- The position can be precisely adjusted by touching the adjustment areas with the sensor pen.
- When using the sensor pen to specify the guideline marker position, it may not be possible to exactly specify the desired location. In this case, use either of the following operations to make fine adjustments.
  - Touch an adjustment area with the sensor pen to adjust the position in 0.5 mm increments.
  - Adjust the position with the guideline marker scale shown in step 5.

#### Fress or to apply the guideline marker

#### position setting.

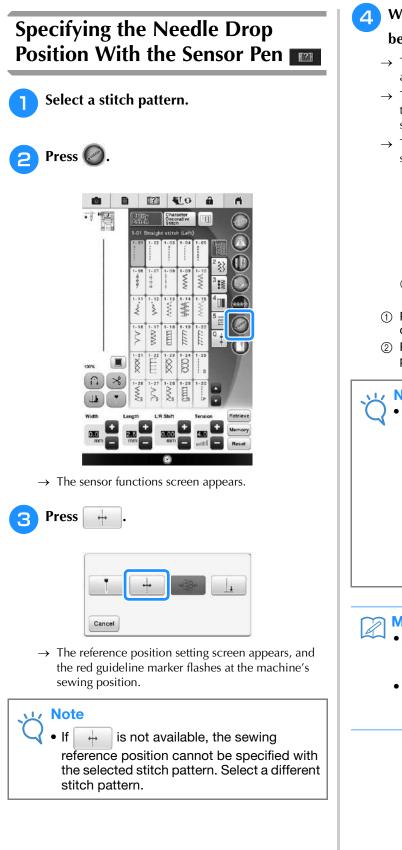
\* The setting can also be applied by a long touch of the sensor pen within the adjustment area.



- → The stitch selection screen appears again, and the setting in the guideline marker scale changes to the setting specified with the sensor pen.
- $\rightarrow$  The guideline marker stops flashing.

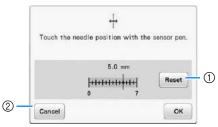
#### ر Note

• If you set the needle drop position, the stitch width or stitch position after specifying the guideline marker position, the guideline marker may move while setting. The guideline marker moves back to the specified position after the needle drop position, stitch width or stitch position is set and the original screen appears.



#### With the sensor pen, touch the location to be specified as the needle drop position.

- $\rightarrow$  The guideline marker moves to the touched position and flashes.
- $\rightarrow$  The distance from the left reference line to the touched position appears in the reference position setting screen.
- $\rightarrow$  The stitch preview on the upper left side of the screen is updated according to the specified setting.



- ① Press to return the needle drop position to its default setting.
- ② Press to stop specifying a setting with the sensor pen.

#### Note

is touched. Press	ок	, and	then	touch
within the sensor p	oen to	uch ra	ange.	

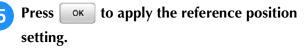
ок

(...) An invalid area was touched by the sensor pen Touch again within the active sensor area. (130mm x 200mm / 5" X 8")

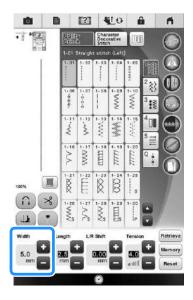
## Memo

- The position can be precisely adjusted by touching the adjustment areas with the sensor pen.
- To change the setting, use the sensor pen to touch the desired location for the reference position.

The following error message appears if the area outside of the sensor pen touch range

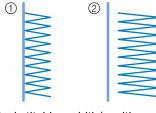


- \* The setting can also be applied by extended touch in the adjustment area with the sensor pen.
- → The needle moves to the specified position to start sewing.
- → The stitch selection screen appears again, and the stitch width changes to the setting specified with the sensor pen.
- $\rightarrow$  The guideline marker stops flashing.

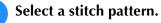


## Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Stitching Width and Stitch Position

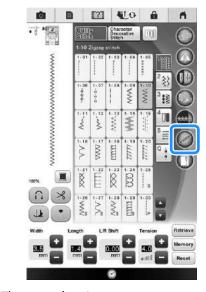
The zigzag width and "L/R Shift" value can be specified.



- ① Original stitching width/position
- ② Adjusted stitching width/position



2 Press 🖉.



 $\rightarrow$  The sensor functions screen appears.



→ The stitching width setting screen appears, and the guideline marker flashes at the present left side of the stitch width.

#### Vie Note

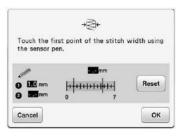
Press

+2+

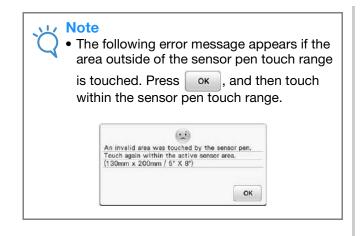
- If is not available, the stitching width cannot be specified with the selected stitch pattern. Select a different stitch pattern.
- 4 With the sensor pen, touch the first point

#### for the stitching width.

→ The distance from the left reference line to the touched position appears in the stitching width setting screen.



→ The guideline marker moves to the touched position and flashes.



#### Memo

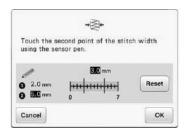
 The position can be precisely adjusted by touching the adjustment areas with the sensor pen.

# Press or to apply the first point of the stitching width.

\* The setting can also be applied by applying an extended touch in the adjustment area with the sensor pen.

With the sensor pen, touch the second point for the stitching width.

- → The distance from the left reference line to the touched position appears in the stitching width setting screen.
- → The stitch preview on the upper left side of the screen is updated according to the specified setting.
- → The guideline marker moves to the touched position and flashes.

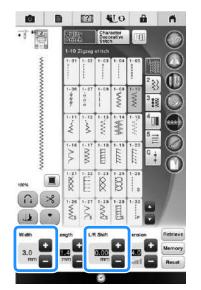


#### Vie Note

- If the distance between the specified first and second points is wider than the maximum stitch width for the selected stitch pattern, the second point cannot be specified. Specify a location closer to the first point.
- If the distance between the specified first and second points is narrower than the minimum stitch width for the selected stitch pattern, the second point cannot be specified. Specify a location further away from the first point.

# **7** Press **I** to apply the second point of the stitching width.

- \* The setting can also be applied by long touching an adjustment area with the sensor pen.
- → The needle moves to the specified position to start sewing.
- → The stitch selection screen appears again, and the stitch width and "L/R Shift" change according to the settings specified with the sensor pen.



#### Vie Note

- With multiple patterns that have been combined, the specified stitching width is applied to the pattern with the largest stitch width. With patterns other than combined patterns, the stitch width is adjusted to the stitching width specified for the pattern with the largest stitch width.
- With multiple patterns that have been combined, the settings specified for the stitch width and "L/R Shift" in the stitch selection screen are for the first pattern to be sewn. The value may differ from the stitch width setting.
- With twin needle sewing, the stitching width is specified with the left needle as the reference.

# Using the Sensor Pen to Specify the Sewing End Point

#### <sub>ヒ</sub> Note

- In order to specify the end point of a longer piece of fabric more accurately, use the sensor pen to touch the end point twice. Be sure to touch the same point.
- Before starting to sew, mark the end point of this longer piece of fabric.

Before start sewing, test the pattern first from steps to 3 to see if the stitch can be used with this function. Before starting to sew, mark the end point.

Start sewing after a stitch has been selected, and then stop the machine when the desired sewing end point enters the sensor pen touch range.

#### 🗸 Note

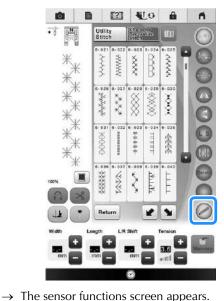
1

If the needle drop point is being specified with the sensor pen within 70 mm (approx. 2-3/4 inches) from the sewing end point, the machine will not require the second touch. After completing step 4, continue with step 6. However, the actual sewing end point may be slightly different than the specified location. In order to specify the location accurately, stop the machine at a location more than

70 mm (approx. 2-3/4 inches) away from the sewing end point before specifying it for the first time.

#### ן Memo

• If the needle drop point is greater than 100 mm (approx. 4 inches) from the selected ending point using the sensor pen, a more accurate position can be specified the second time that the point is touched. Press Ø.







 $\rightarrow\,$  The sewing end point setting screen appears.

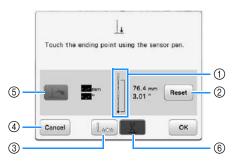
Note

Press

If is not available, the sewing end point cannot be specified with the selected stitch pattern. Select a different stitch pattern.

# With the sensor pen, touch the location to be specified as the sewing end point.

→ The distance from the current needle position to the touched location appears.



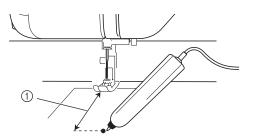
① It shows how many times you need to touch the sewing end point, once or twice.



- ② Press to erase the specified sewing end point.
- ③ Press to begin sewing at the beginning of the pattern.
- ④ Press to stop specifying a setting with the sensor pen.
- ⑤ Press when sewing the same distance as the previous time to recall the previous setting.
- $\rightarrow\,$  See "Reusing the Previous Setting" on page 108.
- (6) Press to select whether or not sewing is ended with a complete pattern.
- $\rightarrow$  See "Stitch End Mode Key" on page 106.

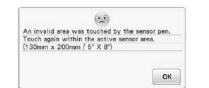
#### V Note

 The displayed distance is not the length of a straight line connecting the current needle position and the location touched with the sensor pen. It is the length of a perpendicular intersection for the location touched with the sensor pen and the sewing line.



- ① Displayed distance
  - The following error message appears if the area outside of the sensor pen touch range

is touched. Press or , and then touch within the sensor pen touch range.



- When sewing with this setting, be sure to gently hold the fabric and feed it straight.
- When using the sensor pen to specify the sewing end point, be sure to hold the pen in the same way as when it was calibrated, otherwise the actual end point may be different from the point that you specified.
- For best results, sew test stitching using the same material and stitch pattern as those in the actual project.

#### Stitch End Mode Key

	The end of stitching is not adjusted. When the end point is reached, sewing stops immediately, even if the stitch pattern is not complete.	m M
S C	The length of the stitch pattern is adjusted so that sewing will stop at the specified end point with a complete pattern.	

#### Note

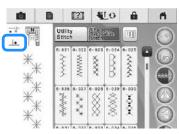
- The stitch end mode key is not available with the following situations.
  - When only is shown. The adjustment of the stitch end is not available with the selected stitch, and only one icon will be shown.
  - When the stitch end mode key is grayed out.
  - When specifying the sewing end point at the point that needs adjustment more than 20% of the length of a pattern, to finish a pattern completely.
- In order to end sewing with a complete pattern, we recommend reducing the size of the pattern. Sewing with a long pattern may not end with a complete pattern.



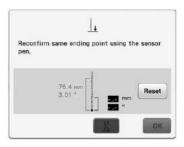
Press

#### ok , and then continue sewing.

- <sup>6</sup> The setting can also be applied by extending the touching with the sensor pen in the adjustment area with the sensor pen.
- → When a sewing end point setting is specified, <u>→</u> appears in the upper-left corner of the screen.

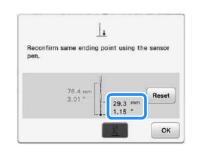


→ The machine automatically stops with the needle in the fabric, at about half the distance to the specified sewing end point, and the sewing end point setting screen appears.



# 6 With the sensor pen, touch again the location to be specified as the sewing end point.

→ The distance from the current needle position to the touched location appears.



### Vie Note

- By using the sensor pen to touch the sewing end point twice, the distance will be accurately specified. Be sure to touch the same point.
- The following error message appears if the location touched the second time is different than the location touched the first time. Touch the correct location.

	on is too far from the original
selection point.	
Touch the same end	ling point using the sensor pen.

• The stitch end mode key cannot be used when specifying the sewing end point for the second time.

to apply the sewing end point

#### **Press**

8

#### setting.

\* The setting can also be applied by extending the touching with the sensor pen in the adjustment area with the sensor pen.

### Start sewing again.

OK

\* The machine stops at the specified end point automatically.

### **Reusing the Previous Setting**

When using the same fabric and pattern to sew the same length, the previous setting can be used again, instead of using the sensor pen to specify the sewing end point each time.

To use the previous setting, repeat steps 1 through

3 then press in step 4, instead of using the

sensor pen.

- \* If was pressed, it is unnecessary to specify the sewing end point for the second time. Continue with step <sup>(B)</sup> to continue sewing until the machine automatically stops at the sewing end point.
- \* Be sure to press  $\downarrow_{\pm \heartsuit}$  to begin sewing at the beginning of the stitch pattern.

	1.		
Touch the ending p	oint using t	he sensor	pen.
76,4 mm	17 .		Repet
3.01 "			neser
	•		

Ϋ́	<ul> <li>Note</li> <li>This resume function will only repeat the sewing distance that has been assigned within the 200 mm (approx. 8 inches) distance from the needle point to the sewing end point. If you are already sewing and you stop the machine to specify the ending point, when pressing to duplicate the previous</li> </ul>
	setting the machine will only repeat the distance from where you stop the machine to the ending point. You can change the sewing end point after
	pressing 📃 📥 by touching the new end
	point with the sensor pen. For a more accurate result, however, it is
	recommended to specify the end point again from the beginning.
	• The sewing end point cannot be recalled in the following situations. (The key is not available.)
	<ul> <li>When the machine has been turned off.</li> <li>When a pattern is changed, added or deleted.</li> </ul>
	- When the stitch length is changed.
	- When a pattern is flipped vertically.
	<ul> <li>When the dual feed foot is attached/ detached.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>When the feed position lever of the dual feed foot is raised/lowered.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To cancel the previous setting, press</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Continue the procedure from step</li> <li>.</li> </ul>
	• The sewing end point can be recalled; however, if the sewing conditions have changed, for example, a different fabric is used, the sewing end point must be specified again from the beginning.



#### SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES...... 110

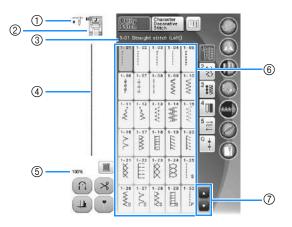
Utility Stitch LCD Screen 110
Key Functions
Stitch Selection Screens
Selecting a Stitch113
Using the Mirror Image Key
<ul> <li>Returning to the Beginning of the Stitch114</li> <li>Sewing Continuous/Single Stitch Sewing114</li> </ul>
■ Jusing the Image Key
Saving Your Stitch Settings
Saving Settings
Retrieving Saved Settings
SEWING THE STITCHES 116
Straight Stitches116
Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position
Stitches Only)118
■ Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or
Bobbin Cover (with Mark)118 Aligning the Fabric with the Vertical Stitch
Alignment "V" Foot
<ul> <li>Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot</li></ul>
Basting
Dart Seam
Gathering121
Flat Fell Seam122
Pintuck
Zigzag Stitches124
<ul> <li>Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)</li></ul>
Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt) 124
Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)
Elastic Zigzag Stitches
<ul> <li>Tape Attaching</li></ul>
Overcasting
<ul> <li>Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"</li></ul>
Overcasting Using the Side Cutter (Sold Separately)
When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using
the Side Cutter (Sold Separately)129
Quilting129
Piecing
Quilting
Quilting with Satin Stitches
■ Free Motion Quilting
■ Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E" 137
Blind Hem Stitches138
<ul> <li>If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold</li></ul>
Appliqué141
Appliqué Sharp Curves141
Appliqué Corners 141
Shelltuck Stitches142
Scallop Stitches142
Crazy Quilting143
Smocking Stitches143
Fagoting144
Tape or Elastic Attaching145

Heirloom
Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)146
Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))146
Hemstitching (3) (Drawn Work (2))147
Zigzag Couching 147
Prepare for the Zigzag Couching147
Sewing Zigzag Couching148
One-step Buttonholes149
Sewing Stretch Fabrics152
Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button
Holder Plate152
Four-step Buttonholes 153
Darning154
Bar Tacks
Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics156
Button Sewing156
Attaching 4 Hole Buttons157
Attaching a Shank to the Button157
Eyelet
Multi-directional Sewing (Straight Stitch and Zigzag Stitch) 158
Zipper Insertion
Centered Zipper159
Inserting a Side Zipper160
Edge Sewing

# **SELECTING UTILITY STITCHES**

### ■ Utility Stitch LCD Screen

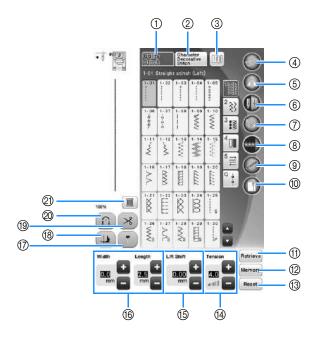
Press a key with your finger to select the stitch pattern, to select a machine function, or to select an operation indicated on the key.



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1	<u>▲ U</u>	Needle position setting display	Shows single or twin needle mode setting, and the needle stop position.         ▼       Single needle/down position         •       ↓         Single needle/up position         •       ↓         Twin needle/down position	65, 95
2	i and a state of the state of t	Presser foot display	Twin needle/up position Shows the presser foot code. Attach the presser foot indicated in this	70
		Selected stitch	display before sewing. Shows the name and code number of the selected stitch.	113
3	1-01 Straight stitch (Left)	display		
4	100%	Stitch preview	Shows a preview of the selected stitch. When shown at 100%, the stitch appears in the screen at nearly its actual size. Press to display the stitch preview and the camera view together to check how the stitch will be sewn on the actual fabric.	98, 113
6	100%	Pattern display size	<ul> <li>Shows the approximate size of the pattern selected.</li> <li>100%: Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern</li> <li>50%: 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern</li> <li>25%: 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern</li> <li>* The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of fabric and thread that is used.</li> </ul>	113
6		Stitch selection screen	Press the key for the pattern you want to sew. Use 11 2 3 3 1 4 1	113
7		Page key	Press or , to move the pages of stitch selection screen, one page at a time. You can scroll up and down the pages faster by touching the screen.	112

\* All key functions of the LCD are explained in the "Key Functions" table on the following page.

# ■ Key Functions



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page		
1	Utility Stitch	Utility stitch key	Press this key to select a straight stitch, zigzag stitch, buttonhole, blind hem stitch, or other stitches commonly used in garment construction.	113		
2	Character Decorative Stitch	Character/Decorative stitch key	Press this key to select character or decorative stitch patterns.	170		
3		Image key	Press this key to display an enlarged image of the selected stitch pattern.	114		
4	$\bigcirc$	Free motion mode key	Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode. The presser foot is raised to an appropriate height and the feed dog is lowered for free motion quilting.			
5	Image: Second		Press this key to create a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern. If the key display is light gray, a mirror image of the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn.			
6	(D)	selection key (single/	Press this key to select twin needle sewing mode. The sewing mode changes between single needle mode and twin needle mode each time you press the key. If the key display is light gray, the selected stitch pattern cannot be sewn in the twin needle mode.	65		
1	Back to beginning key		When sewing is stopped, press this key to return to the beginning of the stitch.			
8	anab	Single/Repeat sewing key	Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches.			
9	0	Sensor function key	Press this key to use the sensor function.			
10	Image key		Using the built-in camera, press this key to measure the width of the area from the edge of the fabric to the stitch and set the camera for edge sewing.			
1	Retrieve	Retrieve key	Press this key to retrieve a saved pattern.			
12	Memory	Manual memory key	Change the stitch pattern settings (zigzag width and stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting or automatic reinforcement stitching, etc.), then save them by pressing this key. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch pattern.	115		
13	Reset	Reset key	Press this key to return the selected stitch pattern saved settings to the default settings.	90-92		
14	4.0 +	Thread tension key	Shows the automatic thread tension setting of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to change the thread tension settings.	92		
15	L/R Shift	"L/R Shift" key	Press 🛃 to shift the stitch pattern to the right or press 📑 to shift the pattern to the left. This feature is not available for all patterns. Only those applicable will be shifted. The machine default setting is highlighted.	91		

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
16	Width Length	Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the zigzag width and stitch length settings of the currently selected stitch pattern. You can use the plus and minus keys to adjust the zigzag width and stitch length settings.	90
1		Guideline marker key	Press this key to display the guideline marker along the sewing line. The guideline marker makes it easier to align stitches with the fabric edge or other marker on the fabric.	94
(8)		Pivot key	<ul> <li>Press this key to select the pivot function. When the pivot function is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered.</li> <li>If this key appears as , the pivot function cannot be used.</li> </ul>	95
(19)	*	Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to set the automatic thread cutting function. Set the automatic thread cutting function before sewing to have the machine automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches) and trim the threads after sewing.	93
20	A	Automatic reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to use the automatic reinforcement stitching (reverse stitching) setting. If you select this setting before sewing, the machine will automatically sew reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of sewing (depending on the pattern, the machine may sew reverse stitches).	85
2)		Thread color change key	Press this key to change the thread color displayed on the screen.	114

# ■ Stitch Selection Screens

There are 6 categories of Utility Stitches.

#### Straight/Overcasting

1	1-05	1-04	1-03	1 - 0Z	1-01
~ 谷 3 # B	1-10 1-10	1-99	1-08   	1-07	1-06
4 4 5	V 15 VARV	V 1 WW	- 13 VVV	* 1.12 .~~	W
°	1-20	11117 to 1	18 KKKKS	1.17	1- 16
	1-25     	1-24	1-23	1.22	1-21 XXX
	1-30	1-28 KKKK	1-28 S	1.27 \$\S	1- 26

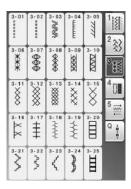
### Buttonholes/Bar tacks

4- 01 0	4- 02	4-03 0	4- 04 0	4- 05	
4- 06	4- 07	4-08	4- 09	4-10 10000	3¥₿
4-11	4-12	4-13 J	4-14 <b>J</b>	4- 15 J	<sup>4</sup> 5
4-16	4-17	4-18	4-19	4-20	Q #
4-21	4-22	4-23 ©	4-24 O	4-25	

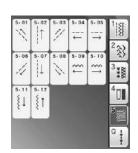
#### **Decorative Stitches**



#### **Heirloom Stitches**



#### Multi-directional Sewing



#### **Quilting Stitches**

	Q- 05	Q- 04 -#-#- #-	Q-03	Q- 02	01 Р
3 ***	0 VVVV	0.09	₩.ºe	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	444
<sup>4</sup> Ū∎ <sup>5</sup> →	4 28550	0-14	0-13 0-1.1.1.1	Q- 12	0 11 0 11
	d 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	4 19 4 ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	0-18 5	17 AAA	0-16
	d NWW	0- 24 M	0-23	0-22 10/22	
	9- 30 X	0-29	22 YHY	0,27	* NNN

# Selecting a Stitch

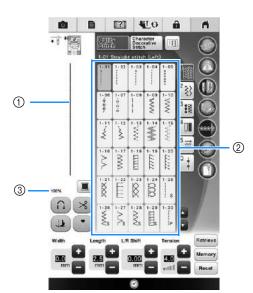
# 0

Turn the main power to ON and press to display the utility stitches.

→ Either "1-01 Straight stitch (Left)" or "1-03 Straight stitch (Middle)" is selected, depending on the setting selected in the settings screen.



- 8 / /
- \* Press representation to view the next page.
- \* Press 🚺 to view previous page.



- ① Preview of the selected stitch
- ② Stitch selection screen
- ③ Percentage size of view

З

### Memo

 For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Press the key of the stitch you want to sew.

### Using the Mirror Image Key

Depending on the type of utility stitch you select, you may be able to sew a horizontal mirror image of the stitch.

If () is lit when you select a stitch, it will be possible to make a mirror image of the stitch.

# 

 If is light gray after you select a stitch, you cannot create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch due to the type of stitch or type of presser foot recommended (this is true of buttonholes, multi-directional sewing, and others).

Press (n) to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected stitch.

The key will display as 🕼



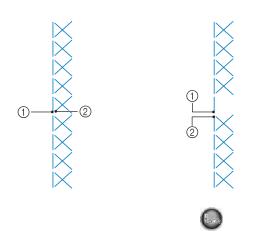


# Returning to the Beginning of the Stitch

Even if you stopped stitching while sewing, you can return to the beginning of the stitch pattern. This function is useful after trial sewing or when the stitching is sewn incorrectly.

Press before start sewing, to return to the beginning of the stitch.

- ① Stop stitching
- ② Re-start stitching



### Sewing Continuous/Single Stitch Sewing

Press with the several terms of term



You can display an image of the selected stitch. You can check and change the colors of the image of the screen.

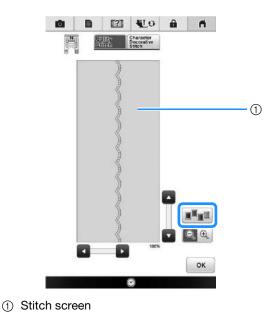
### 🍸 Press 🔟.

 $\rightarrow$  An image of the selected stitch is displayed.

# Press **I** to change the thread color of the stitch on the screen.

You can select from 4 colors: blue, red, black or yellow.

\* Press 🖾 🕄 to display an enlarged image of the stitch.



### Memo

The color changes every time you press

### 🗸 Note

screen.

• If stitches are wider or larger than display, press darkened arrows to move the stitch pattern for better visibility.

### **B** Press

ok to go back to the original

# **Saving Your Stitch Settings**

The settings for the zigzag stitch width, stitch length, thread tension, automatic thread cutting, automatic reinforcement stitching, etc., are preset in the machine for each stitch. However, if you have specific settings that you wish to reuse later for a stitch, you can change the settings so that they can be saved for that stitch. Five sets of settings can be saved for a single stitch.

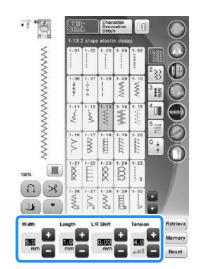
### ■ Saving Settings



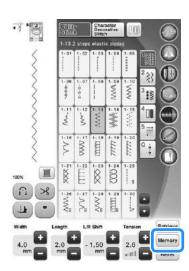
Select a stitch. (Example: 💈)



Specify your preferred settings.







 $\rightarrow\,$  The settings are saved and the original screen automatically appears.



• If you try to save settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, the message "The pockets are full. Delete a pattern" will appear. Close the message and delete a setting referring to page 115.

# Retrieving Saved Settings

### **1** Select a stitch.

### Memo

 When a stitch is selected, the last settings retrieved are displayed. The last settings retrieved are retained even if the machine was turned off or a different stitch was selected.

Press Retrieve.

# Press the numbered key of the settings to be retrieved.

\* Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without retrieving settings.

				Width	Length	L/R Shift	Tension
	1	ł		0.0 mm	2.5 mm	0.00 mm	5.4
	2	ł	44	2.0 mm	5.0 mm	0.00 mm	5.4
D —	3	ł	<u> </u>	0.0 mm	4.5 mm	0.00	5.4
	4						
	5						
	Can		i	-	lete	Il Delete	Retrieve

① Numbered keys

### Press Retrieve.

→ The selected settings are retrieved, and the original screen automatically appears.

### Memo

• To save new settings when there are already 5 sets of settings saved for a stitch, press Retrieve. Press the numbered key of the

setting to be deleted. Press Delete, press

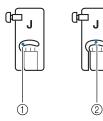
ok and then Memory. The new setting will be saved in place of the recently deleted setting.

• You can delete all the saved settings by pressing All Delete.

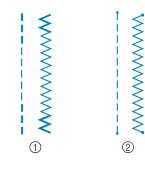
# **SEWING THE STITCHES**

# **Straight Stitches**

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
1-01	Straight stitch (Left)	
1-02	Straight stitch (Left)	
1-03    	Straight stitch (Middle)	
1-04	Straight stitch (Middle)	i J
1-05 	Triple stretch stitch	
1-08	Stem stitch	
1-07 #	Decorative stitch	<b>N</b> Se
1-08   	Basting stitch	



- ① Left needle position
- ② Middle needle position



- ① Reverse stitch
- Reinforcement stitch

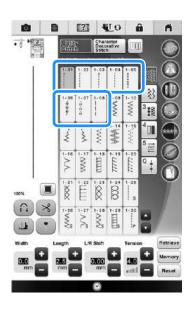
### Memo

- If the selected stitch has a double mark " " at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches holding the "Reverse Stitch" button (see page 85).
- If the selected stitch has a dot mark " · " at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches holding the "Reinforcement Stitch" button.

### Select a stitch.

1

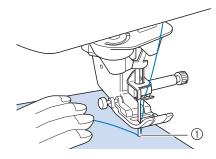
2



### Attach presser foot "J".

\* Attach presser foot "N" when you select

Hold the thread tail and fabric with your left hand, and rotate the handwheel with your right hand to insert the needle into the fabric.

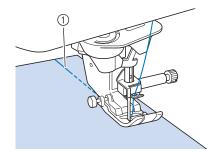


- Sewing start position
- Lower the presser foot, and hold the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 stitches.
- → The machine sews reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches.



3

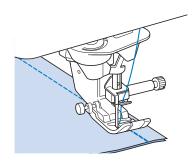
Press the "Start/Stop" button to sew forward.



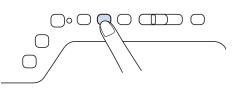
- ① Reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches
- $\rightarrow$  The machine will begin sewing slowly.

# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure the needle does not strike a basting pin, or any other objects, during sewing. The thread could tangle or the needle could break, causing injury. 6 When sewing is completed, hold the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 3-4 reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches at the end of the seam.



After sewing, press the "Thread Cutter" button to trim the threads.



### 🏹 Memo

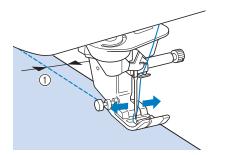
 When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitch keys on the screen are selected, reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed. Press the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew reverse stitches or reinforcement stitches and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing. M Utility Stitches

### ■ Changing the Needle Position (Left or Middle Needle Position Stitches Only)

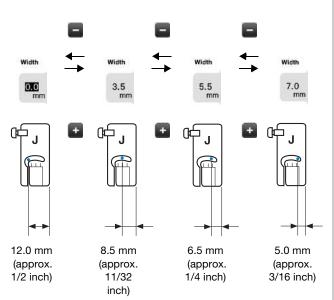
When you select left or middle needle position

stitches, you can use 📰 and 🛐 in the stitch

width display to change the position of the needle. Match the distance from the right edge of the presser foot to the needle with the stitch width, then align the edge of the presser foot with the edge of the fabric during sewing for an attractive finish.



(1) Stitch width

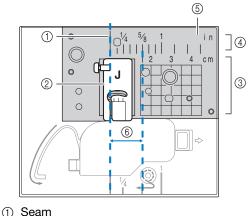


**Example:** Left/Middle needle position stitches

### Aligning the Fabric with a Mark on the Needle Plate or Bobbin Cover (with Mark)

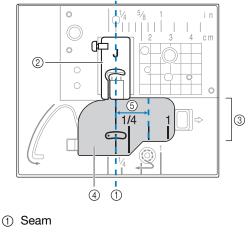
While sewing, align the edge of the fabric with the 16 mm (approx. 5/8 inch) mark on the needle plate or bobbin cover (with mark) depending on the needle position (left or middle (center) needle position stitches only).

### For stitches with a left needle position (Stitch width: 0.0 mm)



- Presser foot (2)
- ③ Centimeters
- (4) Inches
- (5) Needle plate
- (6) 16 mm (5/8 inch)

### For stitches with a middle (center) needle position (Stitch width: 3.5 mm)

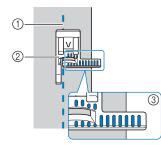


- ② Presser foot
- ③ Inches
- ④ Bobbin cover (with mark)
- (5) 16 mm (5/8 inch)

### Aligning the Fabric with the Vertical Stitch Alignment "V" Foot

Sew while keeping the right edge of the fabric aligned with a desired position of markings on the vertical stitch alignment "V" foot.

You can also use the vertical stitch alignment "V" foot for setting a stitch width using the built-in camera (see page 162).

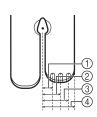


- ① Seam
- ② Vertical stitch alignment "V" foot
- ③ Markings

### ■ Using the Straight Stitch Needle Plate and the Straight Stitch Foot

The straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot can only be used for straight stitches (middle needle position stitches). Use the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot when sewing thin fabrics or when sewing small pieces which tend to sink into the hole of the regular needle plate during sewing. The straight stitch foot is perfect to reduce puckering on lightweight fabrics. The small opening on the foot provides support for the fabric as the needle travels through the fabric.







- 2.25 mm (1/8 inch)
   4.25 mm (3/16 inch)
   6.25 mm (1/4 inch)
- (4) 8.5 mm (5/16 inch)

# CAUTION

• Always use the straight stitch foot in combination with the straight stitch needle plate.

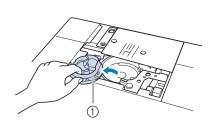
Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle and turn the main power to OFF or press **10** to lock all keys and buttons.

- Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see page 71 through 75).
  - Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either are attached.
  - Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.



① Needle plate cover

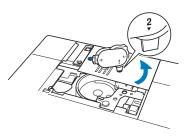
### Grasp the bobbin case, and then pull it out.



① Bobbin case

**6** Use the multi-purpose screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the regular needle plate.

\* Use the multi-purpose screw driver setting the position to "2". (see page 24)



7

(1) Round hole

Set the straight stitch needle plate in place and use the multi-purpose screwdriver to tighten the plate.



#### Viv Note

• Align the two screw holes on the needle plate with the two holes on the machine. Use the multi-purpose screw driver included with the machine to secure the screws in the needle plate.

Insert the bobbin case in its original position, and then attach the needle plate cover.

After reinstalling the needle plate cover, select any of the straight stitches.

Note

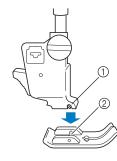
• Selecting other stitches will cause an error message to be displayed.

### Memo

- When using the straight stitch needle plate, many straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. If a straight stitch is selected that is not applicable for use when the straight stitch needle plate is attached, an error message will be displayed to prevent the use of this stitch. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.
- Always secure the needle plate before inserting the bobbin case into its original position.

# ▲ CAUTION

- Slowly rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before sewing and make sure that the needle is not contacting the straight stitch foot and straight stitch needle plate.
- Insert needle and attach the straight stitch foot.



Notch

2 Pin

# Press **1** to unlock all keys and buttons, and then start sewing.

\* After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and the straight stitch foot, and reinstall the regular needle plate, the needle plate cover and the presser foot "J".

### 🦙 Memo

 To prevent puckering on fine fabrics, use a fine needle, size 75/11, and a short stitch length. For heavier fabrics, use a heavier needle, size 90/14, and longer stitches.

### Basting

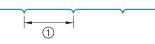


and attach presser foot "J".

Keep pressing the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 4 stitches of reinforcement stitches, then press "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.

### Memo

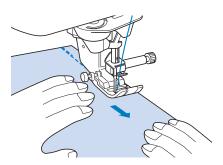
- When you use the basting stitch for gathering, do not use a reinforcement stitch at the beginning; you should lift the presser foot, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise), pull up the bobbin thread and pull a length of top and bobbin thread out from the rear of the machine.
- You can set the stitch length between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)



① Between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 30 mm (approx. 1-3/16 inches)



Sew while keeping the fabric straight.



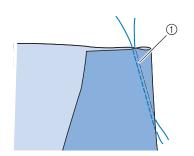
**4** End the basting with reinforcement stitches.

# **Dart Seam**

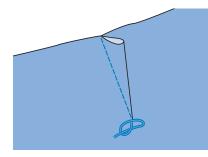


Select and attach presser foot "J".

Sew a reverse stitch at the beginning of the dart and then sew from the wide end to the other end without stretching the fabric.

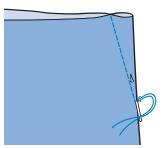


- ① Basting
- Cut the thread at the end leaving 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches), and then tie both ends together.
  - \* Do not sew a reverse stitch at the end.



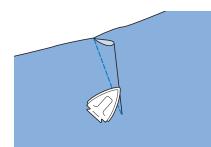


Insert the ends of the thread into the dart with a hand sewing needle.





Iron the dart to one side so that it is flat.

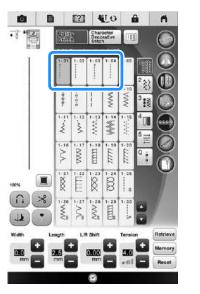


# Gathering

Use on waists of skirts, sleeves of shirts, etc.



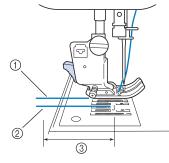
Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".



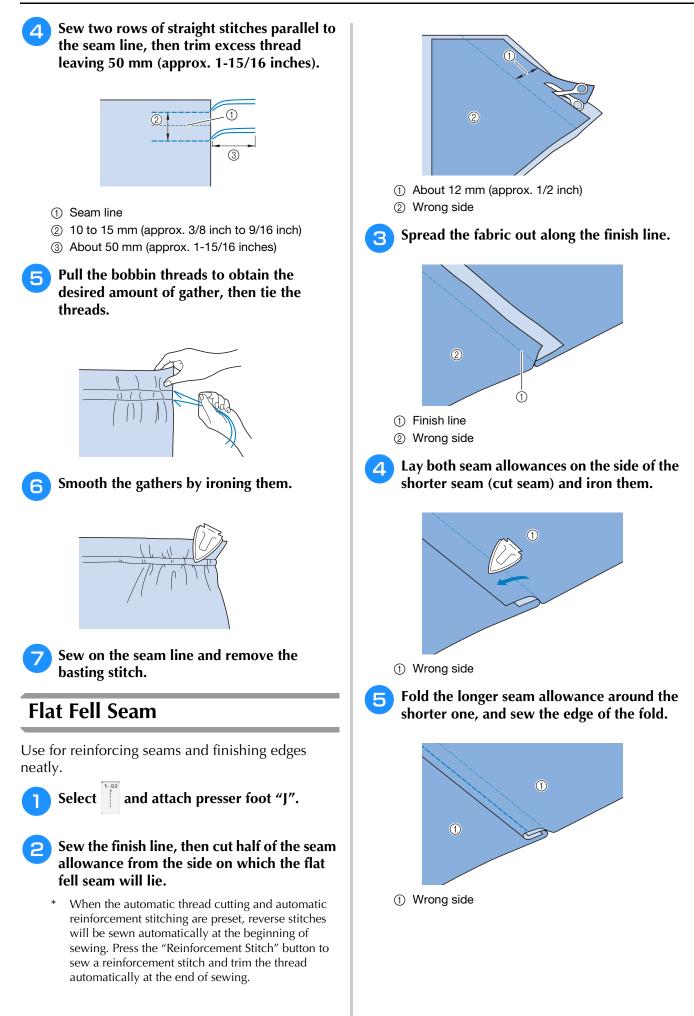
- Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension to approximately 2.0 (weaker tension).
- \* If you press GATHERING after pressing 22 and

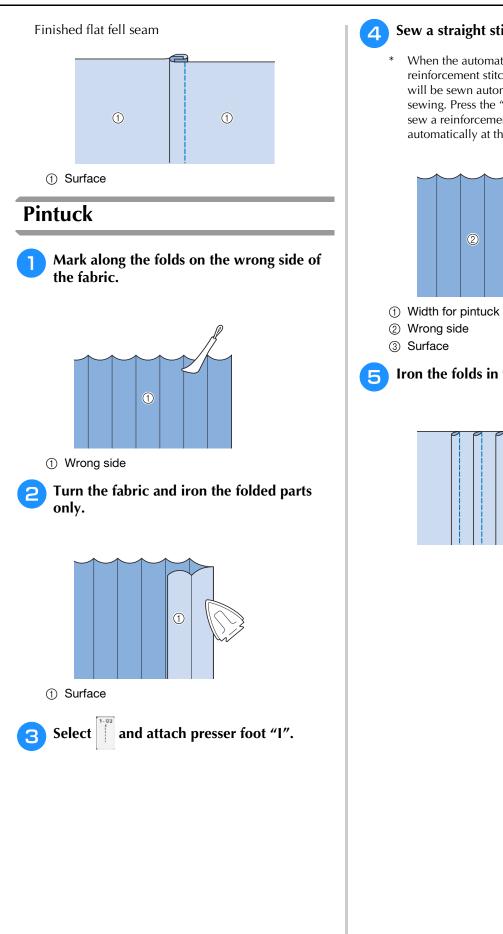
then **Sewing Guide**, the stitch length will be set automatically to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and the thread tension will be automatically set to 2.0.

Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches) (see page 61).

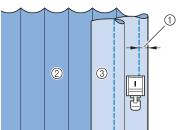


- ① Upper thread
- ② Bobbin thread
- ③ About 50 mm (approx. 1-15/16 inches)

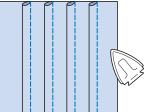




When the automatic thread cutting and automatic reinforcement stitching are preset, reverse stitches will be sewn automatically at the beginning of sewing. Press the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew a reinforcement stitch and trim the thread automatically at the end of sewing.



Iron the folds in the same direction.



# Zigzag Stitches 🔳

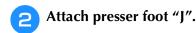
Zigzag stitches are useful for overcasting, appliqué, patchwork, and many other applications.

Select a stitch, and attach presser foot "J". If the stitch which you select has a double mark " " " at the top of the key display, you can sew reverse stitches by holding the "Reverse Stitch" button. (see page 85)

If the stitch which you select has a dot mark "•" at the top of the key display, you can sew reinforcement stitches by holding the "Reinforcement Stitch" button (see page 85).

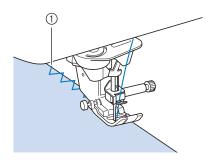
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
1-09	Zigzag stitch	
1-10	Zigzag stitch	
1.11	Zigzag stitch (Right)	
1-12 >>	Zigzag stitch (Left)	

Select a stitch.



# Overcasting (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.

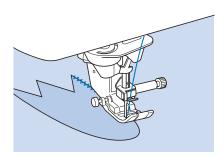


① Needle drop position

# Appliqué (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

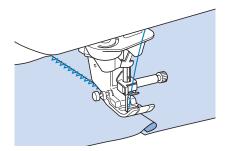
Attach the appliqué material using a temporary spray adhesive or basting, and then sew it.

\* Sew a zigzag stitch while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



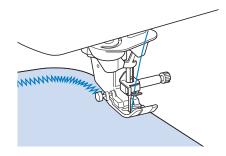
# ■ Patchwork (for Crazy Quilt)

Turn back the desired width of fabric and position it over the lower fabric, then sew so that the stitch bridges both pieces of fabric.



# Sewing Curves (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

Shorten the stitch length setting to obtain a fine stitch. Sew slowly, keeping the seams parallel with the fabric edge as you guide the fabric around the curve.

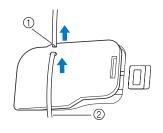


# ■ Cord Guide Bobbin Cover (Using a Zigzag Stitch)

1

Remove the bobbin cover from the machine (see page 59).

Thread the gimp thread through the hole in the cord guide bobbin cover from top to bottom. Position the thread in the notch at the back of the cord guide bobbin cover.



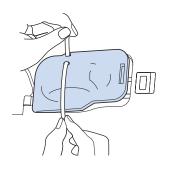
① Notch

3

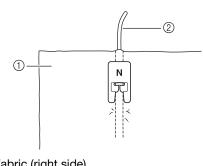
② Gimp thread

Snap the cord guide bobbin cover into place, making sure that the gimp thread can be fed freely.

\* Make sure there are no restrictions when feeding the thread.



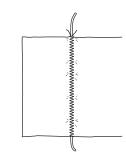
- Set the zigzag width from 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 3/32 inch).
  - Attach presser foot "N".
  - Position the fabric right side up on top of the cord and place the cord to the rear of the machine under the presser foot.



① Fabric (right side)

Gimp thread

Lower the presser foot and start sewing to make a decorative finish.



# **Elastic Zigzag Stitches**

Use elastic zigzag stitches for tape attaching, overcasting, darning, or a wide variety of other uses.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
1-13	2 steps elastic zigzag	
1.14	2 steps elastic zigzag	
1-15 WW	3 steps elastic zigzag	

Select a stitch.

Attach presser foot "J".

# ■ Tape Attaching

While stretching the tape flat, sew it to the fabric.



① Tape

### Overcasting

Use this stitch to sew overcasting on the edge of stretch fabrics. Sew the overcasting along the edge of the fabric while positioning the right-hand side needle drop point just outside the edge of the fabric.



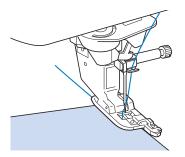
# Overcasting

Use for the edge of seams in skirts or trousers, and the edge of all cuttings. Use presser foot "G", presser foot "J", or the side cutter attachment depending on the kind of overcasting stitch you select.

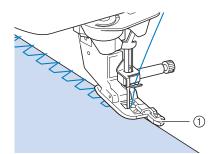
# ■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "G"

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
	Overcasting stitch	G
1.17 MM	Overcasting stitch	G
1-18	Overcasting stitch	G

- Select a stitch and attach presser foot "G".
- Lower the presser foot so that the presser foot guide is set flush against the edge of the fabric.



**3** Sew along the presser foot guide.



① Guide

# ▲ CAUTION

• After the stitch width is adjusted, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise). Check that the needle does not touch the presser foot. If the needle hits the presser foot, the needle may break and cause injury.



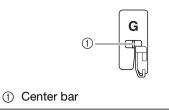
The needle should not touch the center bar

If the presser foot is raised to its highest level, the needle may strike the presser foot.

Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing when you are finished, and raise the presser foot and needle to remove the fabric by pulling it back.

# **CAUTION**

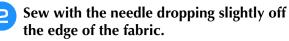
• Pull the fabric to the back of the machine after finished sewing. By pulling the fabric to the front or side, the center bar of the presser foot "G" may break.

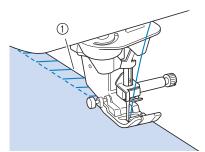


## ■ Overcasting Using Presser Foot "J"

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
1-19	Overcasting stitch	
1-20	Overcasting stitch	
1-21	Overcasting stitch	
1-22 E=	Overcasting stitch	
1-23	Single diamond overcast	
1-24	Single diamond overcast	

Select a stitch and attach presser foot "J".





① Needle drop position

### بر Note

 Fine adjustment of the stitching on the fabric can be done with "L/R Shift". Before sewing your project, be sure to sew trial stitches using the same conditions as in the actual project.

### Memo

• For best results when sewing stretch fabrics, decrease the pressure of the presser foot.

### Overcasting Using the Side Cutter (Sold Separately)

By using the side cutter, you can do overcasting while cutting the fabric.

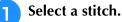
# **CAUTION**

Recommended stitches are noted "S" in the lower right corner, therefore sure to only select one of these stitches listed below. Using another stitch may cause the needle to hit the presser foot and break, possibly causing injury.

### レ Note

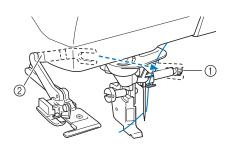
• Thread the needle manually when using the side cutter, or only attach the side cutter after threading the needle using the "Automatic Threading" button.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
1-25	With side cutter	<b>U</b> SI
1-26 ×S	With side cutter	ÚS.
1-27 >S	With side cutter	ÚS.
1-28 \$	With side cutter	US S
1-29	With side cutter	<b>S</b>



- Follow the steps on page 70 to remove the presser foot.
- **3** Thread the needle (see page 62).

Position the fork on the side cutter's operating lever onto the needle clamp screw.

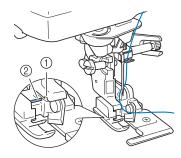


- ① Needle clamp screw
- ② Operating lever

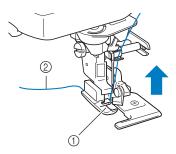
### 河 Memo

• Make sure that the fork of the operating lever is set onto the needle screw firmly.

Position the side cutter so that the side cutter pin is aligned with the notch in the presser foot holder, and then lower the presser foot.

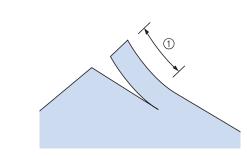


- ① Notch in presser foot holder
- 2 Pin
- $\rightarrow$  The side cutter is attached.
- 6 Raise the presser foot and pull out a long section of the upper thread. Pass it below the presser foot and pull it out in the fabric feed direction.

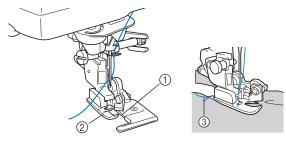


- ① Presser foot
- Upper thread

7 Make a cut of approximately 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch) in the fabric.



- ① 20 mm (approx. 3/4 inch)
- Position the fabric so that the right side of the cut is on top of the guide plate and the left side of the cut is underneath the presser foot.



- ① Guide plate (lower knife)
- 2 Presser foot
- ③ Upper thread

#### Memo

9

- If the fabric is not positioned correctly, the fabric will not be cut.
- Lower the presser foot and start.
- $\rightarrow$  A seam allowance is cut while the stitching is sewn.

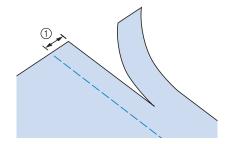
When using the side cutter, sew between low and mid-speed and do not touch the knives or operation lever of the side cutter while sewing to avoid equipment damage or injury.
 Image: The second s

### <sub>と</sub>Note

• If the width has been adjusted, rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise). Check that the needle does not touch the side cutter. If the needle touches the side cutter, it might cause the needle to break.

### When Sewing Straight Stitches While Using the Side Cutter (Sold Separately)

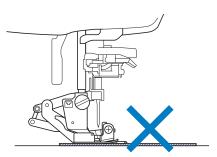
The seam margin should be approximately 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).



① Seam margin

### Memo

 The fabric will not be cut if the whole fabric is simply spread out underneath the presser foot guide plate. Set the fabric as explained in step <sup>8</sup> from the previous section, and then start sewing.



- One layer of 13 oz. denim can be cut.
- Clean the side cutter after use to avoid having dust and scraps of thread build up in the cutter area.
- Add a small amount of oil as required to the cutting edge of the cutter.

# Quilting

You can make beautiful quilts quickly and easily with this machine. When making a quilt, you will find it convenient to use the knee lifter and foot controller to free your hands for other tasks ("Using the Multi-Function Foot Controller (Only for supplied models)" on page 83 and /or "Using the Knee Lifter" on page 96).

The 30 quilting stitches Q-01 through Q-30 and the utility stitches with "P" or "Q" indicated on their key are useful for quilting.

The "P" or "Q" at the bottom of the key display indicates that these stitches are intended for ("Q") quilting and ("P") piecing.

		Presser foot	
Stitch	Stitch name	0	60
Q-01	Piecing stitch (Middle)	-1)[c	c
Q- 02	Piecing stitch (Right)		ĥ
G- 03	Piecing stitch (Left)	<b>F</b>	Ś
Q- 04	Hand-look quilting (Middle)		Ś
Q- 05	Basting stitch	L L	ĥ

		Press	er foot
Stitch	Stitch name	0	<b>5</b> 0
0-06 47.47	Stem stitch	<b>H</b>	Ś
0- 07	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch	L L	ŝ
0-08	Zigzag stitch (Right)	H C	Ś
Q-09	Zigzag stitch (Left)	L)[L	Ś
Q-10	2 steps elastic zigzag	L)[L	ŝ
Q-11	3 steps elastic zigzag		Ś
0-12         	Quilting appliqué stitch	L)[L	Ś
0-13 111	Shell tuck edge		Ś
	Blanket stitch		Ś
0-16 2852	Quilting stippling		Ś
Q-16	Overcasting stitch	L)[L	Ś
0-17 0-17 0-17 0-17 0-17	Tape attaching	L L	ŝ
5	Serpentine stitch	N	Ś
0-19	Feather stitch	L)[L	Ś
0-20	Fagoting cross stitch		Ś
0-21 0-71	Couching stitch		Ś
0-22	Patchwork double overlock stitch		Ś
<sup>0-23</sup> ⊗	Smocking stitch		Ś
0-24	Rick-rack stitch		Ś

		Presser foot	er foot
Stitch	Stitch name	0	<b>6</b> 0
0-25 NWW	Decorative stitch		Ś
d 26 JANA	Decorative stitch		Ś
0.27	Hemstitching		Ś
0.28	Hemstitching		Š
0-29	Single diamond overcast		Ś
Q- 36	Overcasting stitch		Ś
1-30    P	Piecing stitch (Right)		Ś
1-31	Piecing stitch (Middle)	L)[L	c
1-32     P	Piecing stitch (Left)		ĥ
1-33 	Hand-look quilting		ć
1-34	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch		Ś
1-35 }	Quilting appliqué stitch		Ś
1 - 36 - 755 - 755 - 76 - 76 - 76 - 76 - 76 - 76 - 76 - 76	Quilting stippling		ŝ

# Memo

 When a stitch pattern in the Quilting Stitches category (Q-02 through Q-30) is selected, a finer stitch width can be set than is available with stitch patterns in other categories.
 For example: Stitch Q-03 has 57 needle

For example: Stitch Q-03 has 57 needle positions and stitch Q-19 has 29 width selections.

#### L/ Note

• The width range of stitch setting is only available in the Quilting stitch "Q" quilting category.

### Piecing

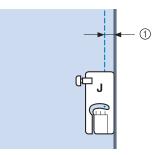
Sewing two pieces of fabric together is called piecing. When cutting pieces for quilt blocks, make sure the seam allowance is 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch).

Select  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0^2 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$  or  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0^2 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$  and attach presser foot "J".

### Align the edge of the fabric with the edge of the presser foot, and start sewing.

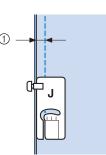
- To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance
  - along the left edge of the presser foot with

selected, the width should be set to 5.50 mm (approx. 7/32 inch).



- ① 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- To sew a 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) seam allowance

along the left edge of the presser foot with selected, the width should be set to 1.50 mm (approx. 1/32 inch).



- (1) 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- To change the needle position, use in or the width display.



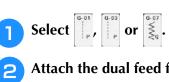
### Memo

- Using a straight stitch (middle needle position) makes it easier to sew smoothly (see page 116).
- In the case Q-01(center, at width 3.5 mm) is selected, if the guideline marker is set at 10.0 mm (3.5 mm plus 6.5 mm, close to 1/4 inch), you can sew piecing by referring to the guideline marker.

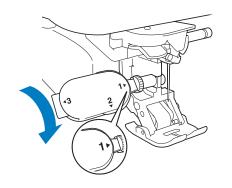
# Quilting

Sewing the quilt top, batting, and backing together is called quilting. You can sew the quilt with the dual feed foot to keep the quilt top, batting, and backing from sliding. The dual feed foot has a motorized belt that moves together with the feed dogs in the needle plate during sewing.

For straight line quilting, use the dual feed foot and the straight stitch needle plate. Always select a straight stitch (middle needle position) when using the straight stitch needle plate.

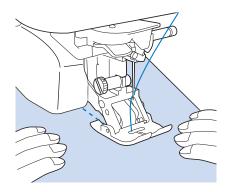


Attach the dual feed foot (see page 72).





Place one hand on each side of the presser foot to hold the fabric secure while sewing.

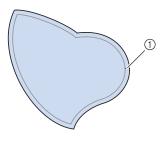




- Sew at slow to medium speed.
- Always check to be sure that your guilting surface is securely basted before beginning to sew. Specialized machine guilt needles and threads are also available for machine quilting.

### Appliqué

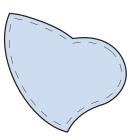
Trace the pattern onto the appliqué fabric and then cut around it, leaving a 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch) seam allowance.



- 1) Seam allowance: 3 to 5 mm (approx. 1/8 to 3/16 inch)
- Place a piece of stabilizer cut to the finished size of the appliqué design onto the fabric, and then fold over the seam margin using an iron. Clip curves when necessary.



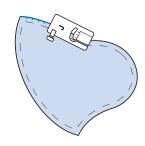
Turn the appliqué over, and attach the stabilizer with basting pins or a basting stitch.

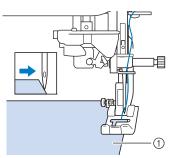




A Select 🗒 and attach presser foot "J".

Use the quilting appliqué stitch to attach 5 the appliqué. Sew around the edge while dropping the needle as close to the edge as possible.





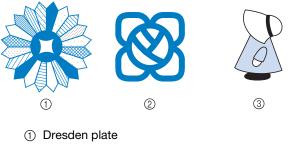


1 Appliqué ② Needle drop position

# CAUTION

Be careful that the needle does not strike a basting pin during sewing. Striking a pin can cause the needle to break, resulting in injury.

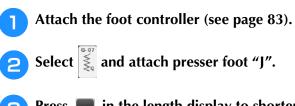
You can use the appliqué technique to attach appliqué designs like the three pictured below.



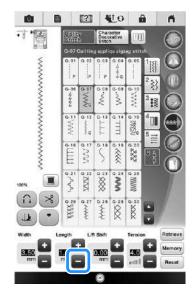
- ② Stained glass
- ③ Sunbonnet sue

### Quilting with Satin Stitches

For better fabric control, use the foot controller to sew with satin stitches. Set the speed control slide to control the stitch width to make subtle changes in the stitch width during sewing.



Press **m** in the length display to shorten the stitch length.



### 🦙 Memo

• The setting will vary according to the kind of fabric and the thickness of the thread, but a length of 0.3 to 0.5 mm (approx. 1/64 to 1/32 inch) is best for satin stitches.

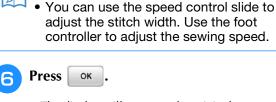
Press **T** to use the speed control slide to

control the stitch width.

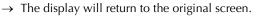


Set the "Width Control" to "ON".



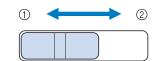


Memo



### Start sewing.

You can adjust the stitch width during sewing by moving the sewing speed controller. Slide the lever to the left, and the stitch width becomes narrower. Slide it to the right, the stitch width becomes wider. The size of the width changes equally on both sides of the middle needle position.



narrower
 wider

**Example:** Changing the width



When you are finished sewing, set the "Width Control" back to "OFF".

# Free Motion Quilting

With free motion quilting, the feed dogs can be

lowered by pressing 💿 , so that the fabric can be

moved freely in any direction.

For free motion quilting, use free motion quilting foot "C" or free motion open toe quilting foot "O" depending on the stitch that is selected, and set the machine to free motion sewing mode. In this mode, the presser foot is raised to the necessary height for free motion sewing.

We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed. You can adjust the sewing speed with the speed control slide on the machine.

### Using Free motion Quilting Foot "C"

Use the free motion quilting foot "C" with straight stitch needle plate for free motion sewing.



Free motion quilting foot "C"

# **A** CAUTION

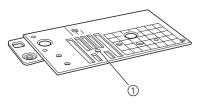
- With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.
- When using free motion quilting foot "C", be sure to use the straight stitch needle plate and sew with the needle in middle (center) needle position. If the needle is moved to any position other than the middle (center) needle position, the needle may break, which may result in injuries.

### ሻ Memo

When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press to display "Free Motion Foot Height" of the settings screen. Press or + to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing very stretchy fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



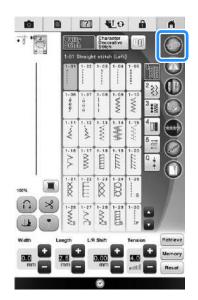
 In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension. Test with a sample piece of fabric that is similar to your chosen fabric. Attach the straight stitch needle plate (see page 119).



① Round hole

#### 🦙 Memo

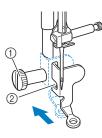
- Notice this needle plate has a round hole for the needle.
- **2** Select  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 01 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$  or  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 21 \\ 0 & p \end{bmatrix}$ .
- Press to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.



→ The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.



- ① Free motion quilting foot "C"
- → When stitch Q-01 or 1-31 is selected, free motion quilting foot "C" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen.
- Remove the presser foot holder (see page 71).
- 5 Attach free motion quilting foot "C" at the front with the presser foot holder screw aligned with the notch in the quilting foot.

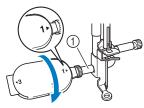


- ① Presser foot holder screw
- ② Notch

#### Note

• Make sure that the quilting foot is attached properly and not slanted.

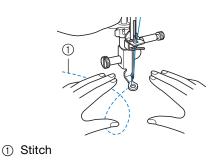
Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the multi-purpose screwdriver with your left hand.



① Presser foot holder screw

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included multi-purpose screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.
- **7** Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 - 3/32 inch) in length.



# Press 💿 to cancel the free motion sewing mode.

- → Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.
- 9 After sewing, make sure to remove the straight stitch needle plate and presser foot "C", and reinstall the regular needle plate and the needle plate cover.

### <sub>い</sub>Note

- Free motion open toe quilting foot "O" can also be used with the straight stitch needle plate. We recommend using free motion open toe quilting foot "O" with free motion sewing of fabrics of uneven thicknesses.
  - When using the straight stitch needle plate, all straight stitches become middle needle position stitches. You cannot change the needle position using the width display.

### 🔊 Memo

- Normally, the feed dogs are raised for regular sewing.
- Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

### Using free motion Open Toe Quilting Foot "O"

The free motion open toe quilting foot "O" is used for free motion quilting with zigzag or decorative stitches or for free motion quilting of straight lines on fabric with an uneven thickness. Various stitches can be sewn using free motion open toe quilting foot "O". For details on the stitches that can be used, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.



Free motion open toe quilting foot "O"

#### 🏹 Memo

• In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 92). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.

Press ot to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.

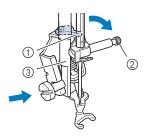
- → The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, and then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.
- Select a stitch.

#### 🔊 Memo

 When stitch Q-01 or 1-31 is selected, free motion quilting foot "C" is indicated in the upper-left corner of the screen. When the other stitches are selected, free motion open toe quilting foot "O" is indicated in the screen.

Remove the presser foot holder (see page 71).

4 Attach free motion open toe quilting foot "O" by positioning the pin of the quilting foot above the needle clamp screw and aligning the lower-left of the quilting foot and the presser bar.



- ① Pin
- ② Needle clamp screw
- ③ Presser bar

#### 🖌 Note

• Make sure that the quilting foot is not slanted.

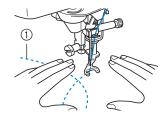
- 5 Hold the quilting foot in place with your right hand, and tighten the presser foot holder screw using the multi-purpose screwdriver with your left hand.
  - \* Use the multi-purpose screw driver setting the position to "1". (see page 24)



① Presser foot holder screw

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included multi-purpose screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.
- **6** Use both hands to stretch the fabric taut, and then move the fabric at a consistent pace in order to sew uniform stitches roughly 2.0-2.5 mm (approx. 1/16 3/32 inch) in length.





# Press 💿 to cancel the free motion sewing mode.

→ Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

### 🔊 Memo

• Do not be discouraged with your initial results. The technique requires practice.

### ■ Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"

Sewing quilting lines at equal distances around a motif is called echo quilting. The quilting lines, which appear as ripples echoing away from the motif, are the distinguishing characteristic of this quilting style. Use the free motion echo quilting foot "E" for echo quilting. Using the measurement on the presser foot as a guide, sew around the motif at a fixed interval. We recommend attaching the foot controller and sewing at a consistent speed.



Free motion echo quilting foot "E" measurement

# 

- ① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ② 9.5 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)

# **A** CAUTION

• With free motion quilting, control the feeding speed of the fabric to match the sewing speed. If the fabric is moved faster than the sewing speed, the needle may break or other damage may result.

### Memo

 When starting to sew, the internal sensor detects the thickness of the fabric, and the quilting foot is raised to the height specified in the machine settings screen. Press to display "Free Motion Foot Height" of the settings screen (see page 33). Press - or

+ to select the height that the quilting foot is raised above the fabric. Increase the setting by pressing +, for example, when sewing very soft fabric, so that it is easier to sew.



• In order to sew with a balanced tension, it may be necessary to adjust the upper thread tension (see page 92). Test with a sample piece of quilting fabric.

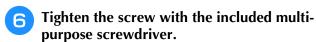


Press of to set the machine to free motion sewing mode.

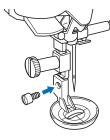
- → The key appears as , the quilting foot is raised to the necessary height, then the feed dogs are lowered for free motion sewing.
- Follow the steps on page 70 "Removing the Presser Foot" to remove the presser foot.
- Remove the presser foot holder (see page 71) and the screw.
- **5** Position the free motion echo quilting foot "E" on the left side of the presser bar with the holes in the quilting foot and presser bar aligned.



🖓 Utility Stitches



\* Use the multi-purpose screw driver setting the position to "1". (see page 24)

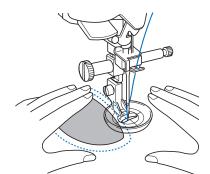


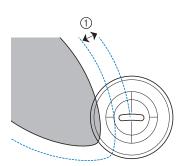


# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to securely tighten the screws with the included multi-purpose screwdriver. Otherwise, the needle may touch the quilting foot, causing it to bend or break.

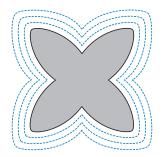
Using the measurement on the quilting foot as a guide, sew around the motif.

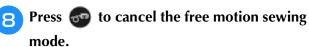




① 6.4 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)

### Finished project





→ Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

# **Blind Hem Stitches**

Secure the bottoms of skirts and pants with a blind hem. Two stitches are available for blind hem stitching.

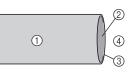
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
2-01	Blind hem stitch	
2-02	Blind hem stitch stretch	

### Memo

• When the size of cylindrical pieces is too small to slide onto the arm or the length is too short, the fabric will not feed and desired results may not be achieved.

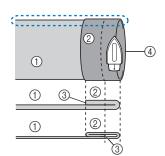


Turn the skirt or pants wrong side out.



- 1 Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Bottom side

#### Fold the fabric along the desired edge of the 2 hem, and press.



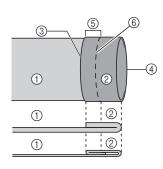
- (1) Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of Fabric ③ Edge of fabric
- (4) Desired edge of hem

<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen () from the side>

Use a chalk to mark on the fabric about 5 mm (3/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric, and then baste it.

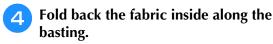


- (1) Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- (5) 5 mm (3/16 inch)
- (6) Basting

<Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

<Seen from the side>



- (1) Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- (5) 5 mm (3/16 inch)
- 6 Basting
- (7) Basting point

<Thick fabric>

<Seen from the side>

3

4

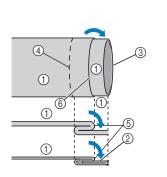
1

1

1

<Normal fabric>

Unfold the edge of fabric, and position the 5 fabric with the wrong side facing up.

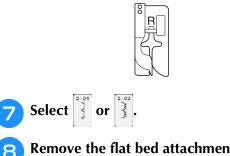


- (1) Wrong side of fabric
- ② Right side of fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Desired edge of hem
- ⑤ Basting point
- 6 Basting
- <Thick fabric>

<Normal fabric>

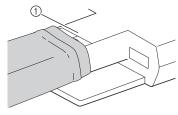
<Seen from the side>

### Attach blind hem foot "R".



Remove the flat bed attachment to use the free-arm.

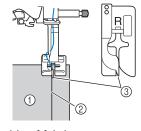
Slide the item that you wish to sew onto the 9 free arm, make sure that the fabric feeds correctly, and then start sewing.



(1) Free arm

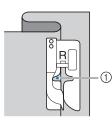
10

Position the fabric with the edge of the folded hem against the guide of the presser foot, and then lower the presser foot lever.



- ① Wrong side of fabric
- ② Fold of hem
- ③ Guide

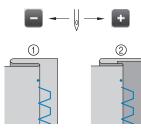
# Adjust the stitch width until the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



#### ① Needle drop point

When you change the needle drop point, raise the needle, and then change the stitch width.

### <Stitch Width>



- ① Thick fabric
- Normal fabric

### Memo

 Blind hem stitches cannot be sewn if the left needle drop point does not catch the fold. If the needle catches too much of the fold, the fabric cannot be unfolded and the seam appearing on the right side of the fabric will be very large, leaving an unattractive finish. If you experience either of these cases, follow the instructions below to solve the problem.

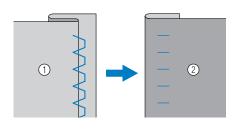
# ■ If the Needle Catches Too Much of the Hem Fold

The needle is too far to the left.

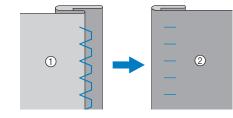
Press **•** to decrease the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



#### <Thick fabric>



### <Normal fabric>



Wrong side of fabric
 Right side of fabric

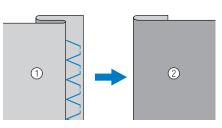
### ■ If the Needle does not Catch the Hem Fold

The needle is too far to the right.

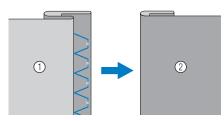
Press **e** to increase the stitch width so that the needle slightly catches the fold of the hem.



### <Thick fabric>

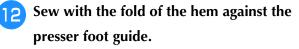


<Normal fabric>



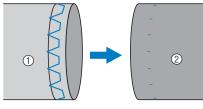
① Wrong side of fabric

② Right side of fabric





Remove the basting stitching and reverse the fabric.

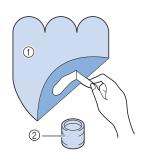


Wrong side of fabric
 Right side of fabric

# Appliqué

Use a temporary spray adhesive, fabric glue or a basting stitch to attach the appliqué to the fabric.

\* This will keep the fabric from moving during sewing.



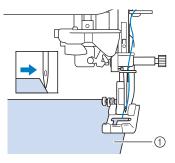
- 1 Appliqué
- ② Fabric glue



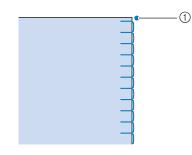
\* Adjust the stitch length and width to correspond to the appliqué shape, size, and quality of material (see page 90).

🔊 Memo

- For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.
- Attach presser foot "J". Check that the needle drops slightly off the edge of the appliqué, then start sewing.



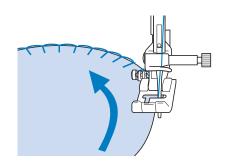
① Appliqué material



① Needle drop position

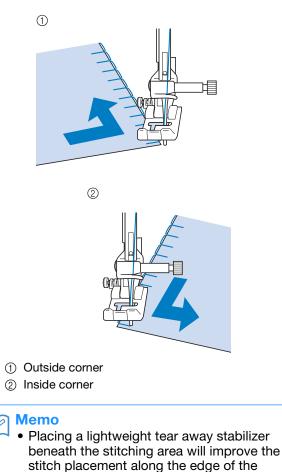
### Appliqué Sharp Curves

Stop the machine with the needle in the fabric outside the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and turn the fabric a little bit at a time while sewing for an attractive finish to the seam.

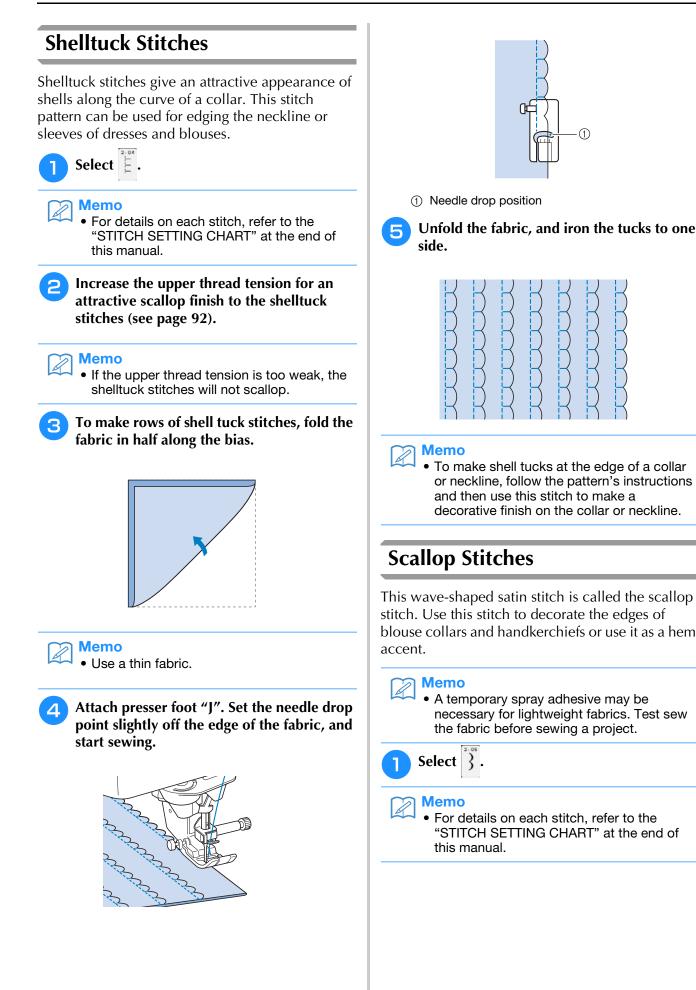


# ■ Appliqué Corners

Stop the machine with the needle in the right position of the outside (or inside) corner of the appliqué. Raise the presser foot and pivot the fabric to align the fabric edge. Lower the presser foot and continue stitching.

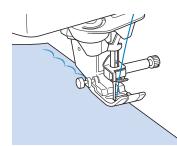


appliqué fabric.



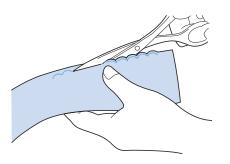
# Attach presser foot "N". Sew scallop stitches along the edge of the fabric.

\* Do not sew directly on the edge of the fabric.





Trim along the seam, making sure not to cut the stitches.



#### Memo

 Use a seam sealant to secure the edges of the scallop stitches.

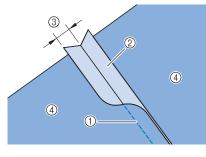
# **Crazy Quilting**

For a decorative look called "Crazy Quilting", the following stitches can be sewn on top of a pressed seam allowance.



Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".

With the right sides facing each other, sew two pieces of fabric together, and then press open the seam allowance.



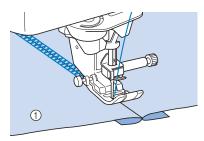
- ① Straight stitch
- ② Seam margins
- ③ 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ④ Wrong side

**3** Select a stitch for top stitching.



4

Place the fabric right side up in the machine, and center the presser foot over the seam when sewing.



① Right side of fabric

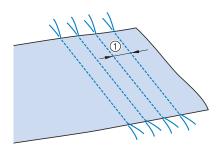
# **Smocking Stitches**

Use smocking stitches for decorative sewing on clothes, etc.

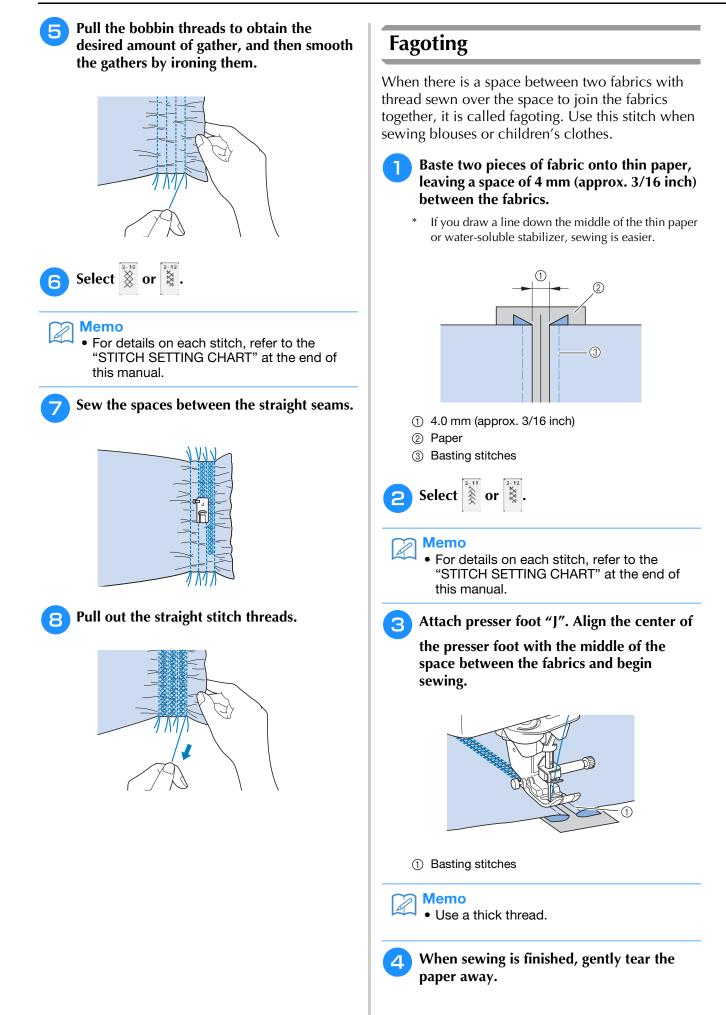


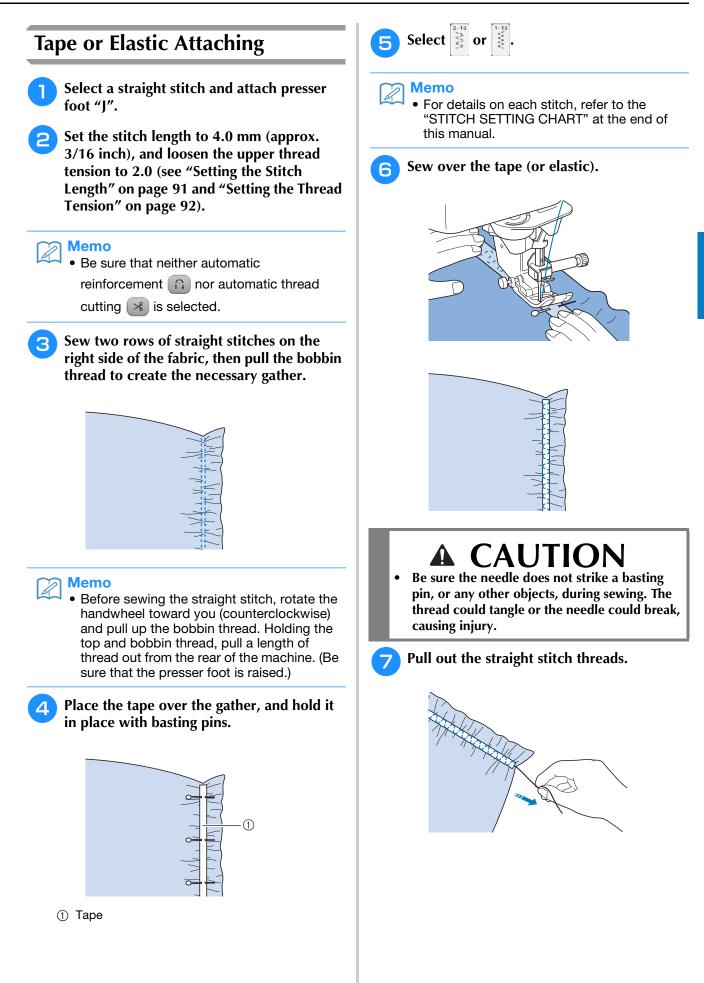
Select a straight stitch and attach presser foot "J".

- 2 Set the stitch length to 4.0 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and loosen the upper thread tension to approximately 2.0 (see "Setting the Stitch Length" on page 91 and "Setting the Thread Tension" on page 92).
- **3** Pull the bobbin and upper threads out by 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).
- **4** Sew the seams, leaving approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch) between the seams, then trim excess thread, leaving 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).



① Approximately 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)





- Utility Stitches

## Heirloom

## ■ Hemstitching (1) (Daisy Stitch)

Use for sewing tablecloths, decorative hems, and decorative stitching on shirt fronts.

#### 🦙 Memo

• Use a light to medium weight homespun fabric with a little stiffness.

# Insert a type 130/705H, size 100/16 Wing needle.

\* This specialty sewing needle is not furnished with your machine. Must be purchased separately.

### 

- The "Automatic Threading" button cannot be used. Thread the wing needle by hand, from front to back. Using the "Automatic Threading" button may result in damage to the machine.
- A more attractive finish can be obtained if you use a "130/705H Wing" needle when sewing these patterns. If using a wing needle and the stitch width has been set manually, check that the needle will not touch the presser foot by carefully rotating the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) before starting to sew.

#### Select a stitch and attach presser foot "N".

Select any stitch between 3-01 and 3-25.

#### ן <mark>Memo</mark>

• For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

**3** Start sewing.

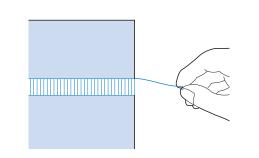
**Example:** Illustration of finished product

### ■ Hemstitching (2) (Drawn Work (1))



# Pull out several threads from one area on a piece of fabric to open the area.

\* Pull out 5 or 6 threads to leave a 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) area open.

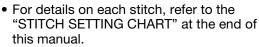




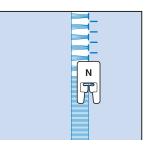
Loosely woven fabrics work best for this.



#### Memo

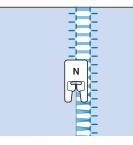


3 Attach presser foot "N". With the right side of the fabric facing up, sew one edge of the open area.



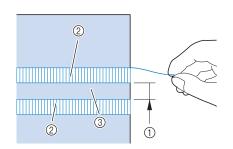
Press 🔘 to create a mirror image of the stitch.

Match beginning needle drop points on the opposite edge of the open area to keep the stitching symmetrical.



### ■ Hemstitching (3) (Drawn Work (2))

- Pull out several threads from both sides of the 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) area which are not yet open.
  - \* Pull out four threads, leave five threads, and then pull out four threads. The width of five threads is approximately 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less.



- ① Approx. 4 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) or less
- ② Four threads (pull out)
- ③ Five threads (leave)

Select 3.

#### 🏹 Memo

• For details on each stitch, refer to the "STITCH SETTING CHART" at the end of this manual.

Sew the decorative stitch in the center of the five threads created above.

N
R

🏹 Memo

 A wing needle can be used for Hemstitching (3).

# Zigzag Couching 📷

You can easily sew decorative stitching using yarn, etc.

## A CAUTION When using yarn, we recommend selecting

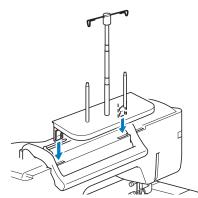
yarn of weight 4 (MEDIUM (4)). If the yarn is extremely thin or thick, has an unusual shape (flat or furry), or more than 2 yarns, the best finishing results may not be achieved, or injuries or damage may result.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

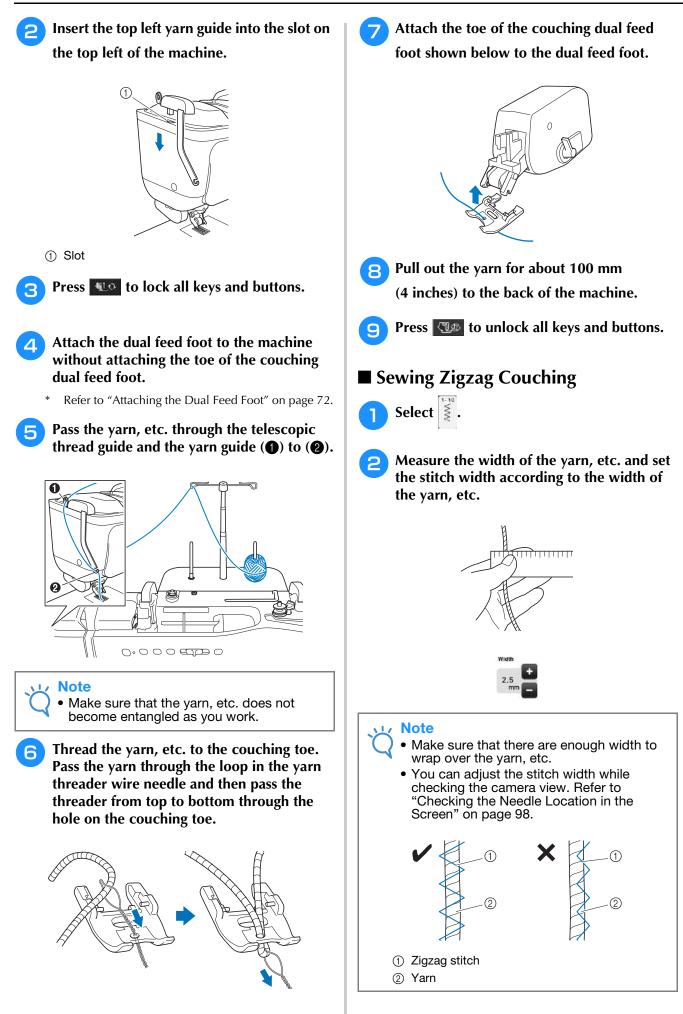
- Sew test stitches on the fabric before sewing on your project.
- We recommend using a stabilizer material when sewing stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics which cause fabric shrinkage.

# Prepare for the Zigzag Couching

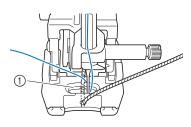
Attach the spool stand to the machine.



<sup>c</sup> Refer to "Using the Spool Stand" on page 58.



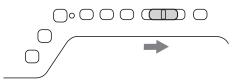
- 3 Rotate the handwheel to set the needle in the sewing start position. Start sewing on the right side of the yarn.
- 4 Make sure that the yarn, etc. passes straight through the slit in the back of the toe of the couching dual feed foot, and then lower the presser foot.



① Slit

5

Set the sewing speed to the medium speed.





Press "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.

\* While lightly holding down the fabric with both hands, adjust the sewing direction.

#### 

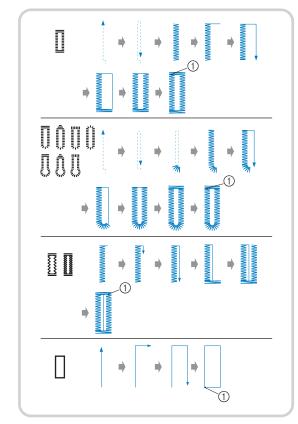
- The multi-function foot controller can also be very useful for sharp angle sewing when set to single stitch sewing. For details on the multi-function foot controller, refer to page 84.
- Pivoting is also useful when rotating fabric with both hands.
- When guideline marker is set to on, it is easy to sew zigzag couching straight.

# **One-step Buttonholes**

With one-step buttonholes, you can make buttonholes appropriate to the size of your button.

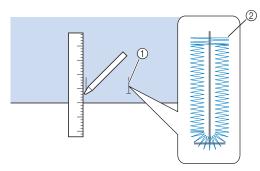
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
4- 01 0	Narrow rounded buttonhole	
4- 02 0	Wide round ended buttonhole	
<b>1</b> -03	Tapered round ended buttonhole	
<b>4</b> - 04	Round ended buttonhole	
4- 05	Round ended buttonhole	
4-06 0	Round double ended buttonhole	
4- 97	Narrow squared buttonhole	Ĩ
4- 08	Wide squared buttonhole	Ī
4- 09	Squared buttonhole	Ī
4-10	Stretch buttonhole	
4-11	Heirloom buttonhole	
4-12	Bound buttonhole	
J. 13	Keyhole buttonhole	
<b>1</b>	Tapered keyhole buttonhole	
<b>J</b>	Keyhole buttonhole	

One-step buttonholes are sewn from the front of the presser foot to the back, as shown below.



① Reinforcement stitching

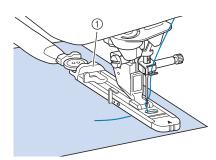
- Select a buttonhole stitch, and attach buttonhole foot "A".
- Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



- ① Marks on fabric
- ② Buttonhole sewing

#### 🦙 Memo

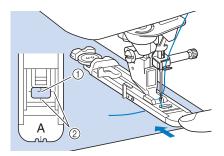
 The maximum buttonhole length is about 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches) (diameter + thickness of the button). **3** Pull out the button holder plate on the presser foot, and insert the button that will be put through the buttonhole. Then tighten the button holder plate around the button.



① Button holder plate

#### Memo

- The size of the buttonhole is determined by the size of the button in the button holder plate.
- 4
- Align the presser foot with the mark on the fabric, and lower the presser foot.



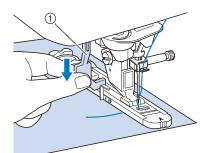
- ① Mark on the fabric
- ② Marks on the presser foot

#### Vote

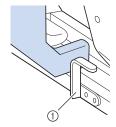
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as far as possible, the buttonhole will not be sewn at the correct size.



#### Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



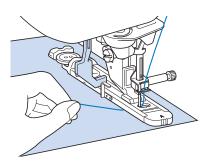
Buttonhole lever



Metal bracket

# 6

- Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then start sewing.
- Feed the fabric carefully by hand while the buttonhole is sewn.

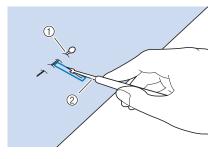


 $\rightarrow$  Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops.

### **Memo**

 If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

Insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, and then insert the seam ripper into the center of the buttonhole and cut towards the pin.



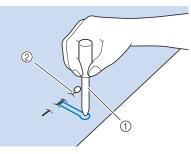
- ① Basting pin
- ② Seam ripper

# CAUTION

When using the seam ripper to open the buttonhole, do not put your hand or finger in the path of the ripper. The ripper may slip and cause injury. Do not use the seam ripper in any other way than how it is intended.

#### Memo

· For keyhole buttonholes, use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the rounded end of the buttonhole. Then insert a pin along the inside of one of the bar tacks, insert a seam ripper into the hole made with the eyelet punch, and cut towards the pin.

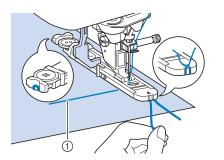


- ① Eyelet punch
- 2 Basting pin

### **Sewing Stretch Fabrics**

When sewing on stretch fabric with  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$  or  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ , sew the buttonhole stitches over a gimp thread.

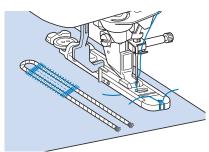
Hook the gimp thread onto the back of presser foot "A". Insert the ends into the grooves at the front of the presser foot, and then temporarily tie them there.



① Upper thread

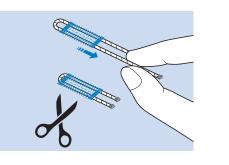


Lower the presser foot and start sewing.



#### ך Memo

- Set the width of the satin stitches to the width of the gimp thread, and set the buttonhole width to be 2-3 times the width of the gimp thread.
- Once sewing is completed, gently pull the gimp thread to remove any slack, and trim off any excess.



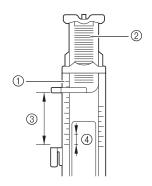
#### Memo

 After using the seam ripper to cut open the threads over the buttonhole, trim off the threads.

### Odd Shaped Buttons/Buttons that do Not Fit into the Button Holder Plate

Use the markings on the presser foot scale to set the size of the buttonhole. One mark on the presser foot scale equals 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch).

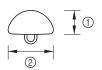
Add the button diameter and thickness together, and then set the plate at the calculated value.



- 1 Presser foot scale
- ② Button holder plate
- ③ Completed measurement of diameter + thickness
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

#### Memo

• For example, for a button with a diameter of 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch) and a thickness of 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch), the scale should be set at 25 mm (approx. 1 inch).



- ① 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch)
- ② 15 mm (approx. 9/16 inch)

# **Four-step Buttonholes**

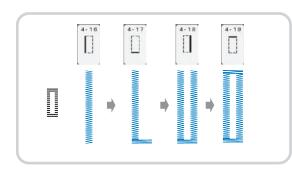
You can sew 4-step buttonholes using the following 4 stitches together. You can sew any desired length for the buttonhole when using 4step buttonholes. 4-step buttonholes are a good option when attaching oversize buttons.

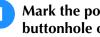
#### Note

• When changing the stitch settings, make sure that all stitch settings are changed to match.

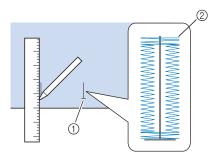
Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
4-16 []	4 steps buttonhole 1	
4-17	4 steps buttonhole 2	
4-18 []	4 steps buttonhole 3	
4-19	4 steps buttonhole 4	<b>P</b>

Four-step buttonholes are sewn as shown below.



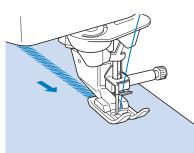


Mark the position and length of the buttonhole on the fabric.



- Marks on fabric
- ② Buttonhole sewing

- Attach monogramming foot "N", and select 2
  - stitch [] to sew the left side of the buttonhole.
- Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.
- Sew the desired length for the buttonhole Δ and press the "Start/Stop" button again.



- Select stitch 📋 to sew the bar tack and press the "Start/Stop" button.
  - $\rightarrow$  The machine will automatically stop after sewing the bar tack.
- Select stitch 📋 to sew the right side of the 6 buttonhole, and press the "Start/Stop" button to begin sewing.





Sew the right side of the buttonhole and press the "Start/Stop" button again.

- Sew the right side of the buttonhole the same length as the left.
- Select stitch 📋 to sew the bar tack and then press the "Start/Stop" button.  $\rightarrow$  The machine will automatically sew off the bar tack tie and stop when the bar tack is complete.
- Raise the presser foot and remove the 9 fabric.
- Refer to page 151 to open the buttonhole. 10

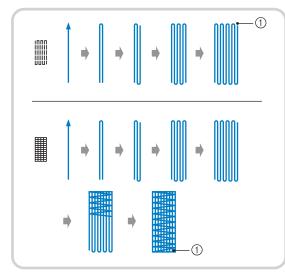
💥 Utility Stitches 🛞

### ■ Darning

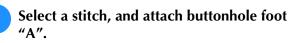
Use darning stitches for mending and other applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
4-20	Darning	
4-21	Darning	

Darning is performed by sewing from the front of the presser foot to the back as shown below.

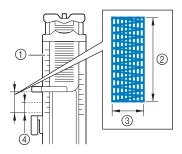


① Reinforcement stitches





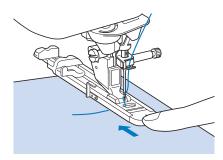
Set the scale to the desired length of the darning.



- ① Presser foot scale
- ② Completed length measurement
- ③ Width 7 mm (approx. 1/4 inch)
- ④ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

#### 🦙 Memo

 The maximum length for darning is 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). **3** Check that the needle drops at the desired position and lower the presser foot, making sure the upper thread passes underneath the buttonhole foot.

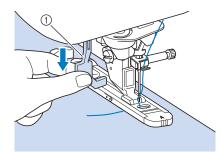


#### Ly Note

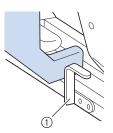
- Pass the thread underneath the presser foot.
- Set the presser foot so that there is no gap behind the section marked with an "A" (the shaded area in the illustration below). If there is a gap, the size of the darning will not be correct.



4 Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.



① Buttonhole lever



① Metal bracket

Gently hold the end of the upper thread, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to Memo Bar tacks can be between 5 mm (approx. start the machine. 3/16 inch) and 28 mm (approx. 1-1/16 inches). Bar tacks are usually between 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch) and 10 mm (approx. 3/8 inch). Set the fabric so that the pocket moves 3 toward you during sewing.  $\rightarrow$  Once sewing is completed, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches, and then stops. Memo · If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement Note stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed Pass the thread underneath the presser (for example, because it is too thick), foot. increase the stitch length setting. • Slide the outside frame of the buttonhole foot backward as far as possible as shown **Bar Tacks** in the illustration, making sure that there is no gap behind the part of the foot marked "A". If the buttonhole foot is not slid back as Use bar tacks to reinforce areas that will be subject far as possible, the bar tack will not be sewn to strain, such as pocket corners. to the correct size. Stitch name Stitch Presser foot Bar tack 4-22 10000000 A Select I. Check the first needle drop point and lower 4 the presser foot.

Attach buttonhole foot "A" and set the scale to the length of the bar tack you wish

2

₹

to sew.

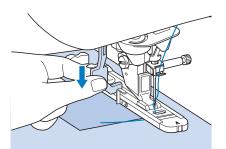
T

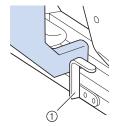
1) Presser foot scale

② Completed length measurement
③ 5 mm (approx. 3/16 inch)

- ① 2 mm (approx. 1/16 inch)

Lower the buttonhole lever so that it is positioned behind the metal bracket on the buttonhole foot.

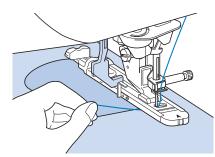




① Metal bracket



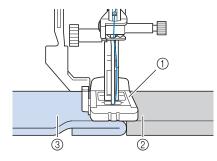
Gently hold the end of the upper thread and begin sewing.



→ When sewing is completed, the machine will sew reinforcement stitches and stop automatically.

### Bar Tacks on Thick Fabrics

Place a piece of folded fabric or cardboard beside the fabric being sewn to level the buttonhole foot and allow for easier and even feeding.



- Presser foot
- ② Thick paper
- ③ Fabric



 If automatic thread cutting is turned on before you start sewing, both threads are automatically cut after the reinforcement stitches are sewn. If the fabric does not feed (for example, because it is too thick), increase the stitch length setting.

### **Button Sewing**

Buttons with 2 or 4 holes can be attached, using the machine.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
4-23 ©	Button sewing	

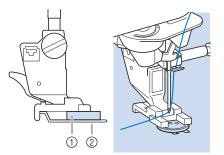
#### Vie Note

• Do not use the automatic thread cutting function when sewing buttons. Otherwise, you will lose the thread ends.

Select  $\Theta$ . 1

 $\rightarrow$  The feed dogs are lowered automatically.

- **2** Raise the presser foot.
- **3** Attach button sewing foot "M", slide the button along the metal plate and into the presser foot, and lower the presser foot.



- ① Button
- 2 Metal plate

Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to check that the needle goes into each hole correctly.

- <sup>4</sup> If the needle does not reach the holes on the left side, adjust the stitch width.
- \* To attach the button more securely, repeat the process.

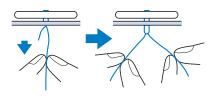
# 5

# Gently hold the end of the upper thread and start sewing.

→ The machine stops automatically when sewing is finished.

# **A** CAUTION

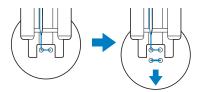
- Make sure the needle does not strike the button during sewing. The needle may break and cause injury.
- 6 From the wrong side of the fabric, pull the end of the bobbin thread to pull the upper thread through to the wrong side of the fabric. Tie the two thread ends together and cut the threads.



7 After the button is attached, select another stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

### Attaching 4 Hole Buttons

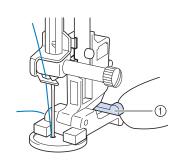
Sew the two holes closest to you. Then raise the presser foot and move the fabric so that the needle goes into the next two holes, and sew them in the same way.



### ■ Attaching a Shank to the Button

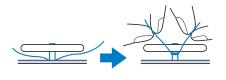


Pull the shank lever toward you before sewing.



① Shank lever

Pull the two ends of the upper thread between the button and the fabric, wind them around the shank, and then tie them firmly together.





3

Tie the ends of the bobbin thread from the beginning and end of sewing together on the wrong side of the fabric.

#### 🖌 Note

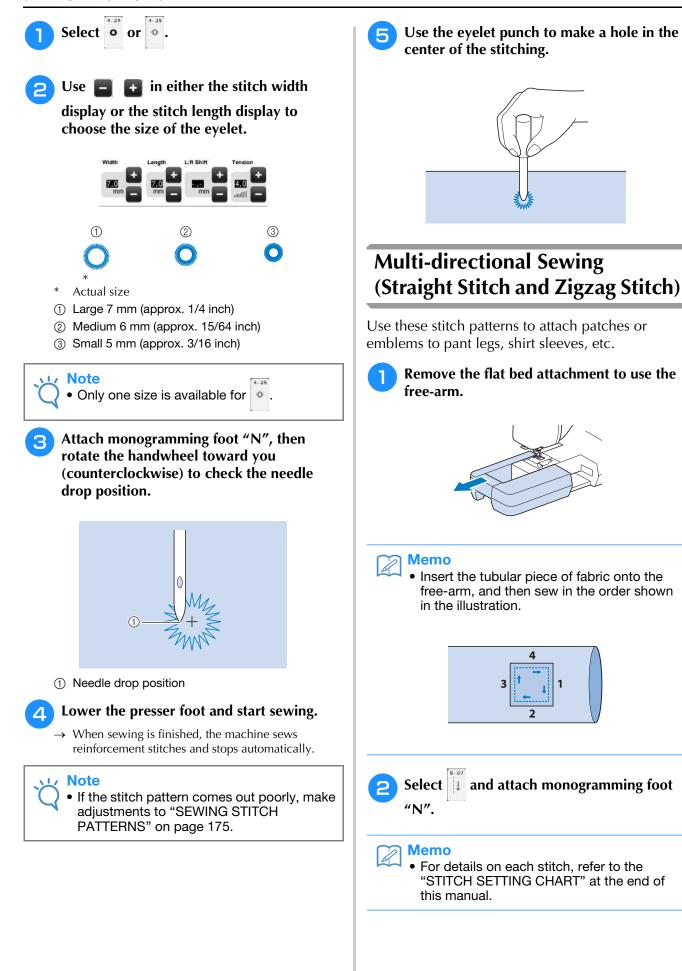
• When sewing is completed, be sure to select the other stitch and rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to raise the feed dogs.

**4** Cut off any excess thread.

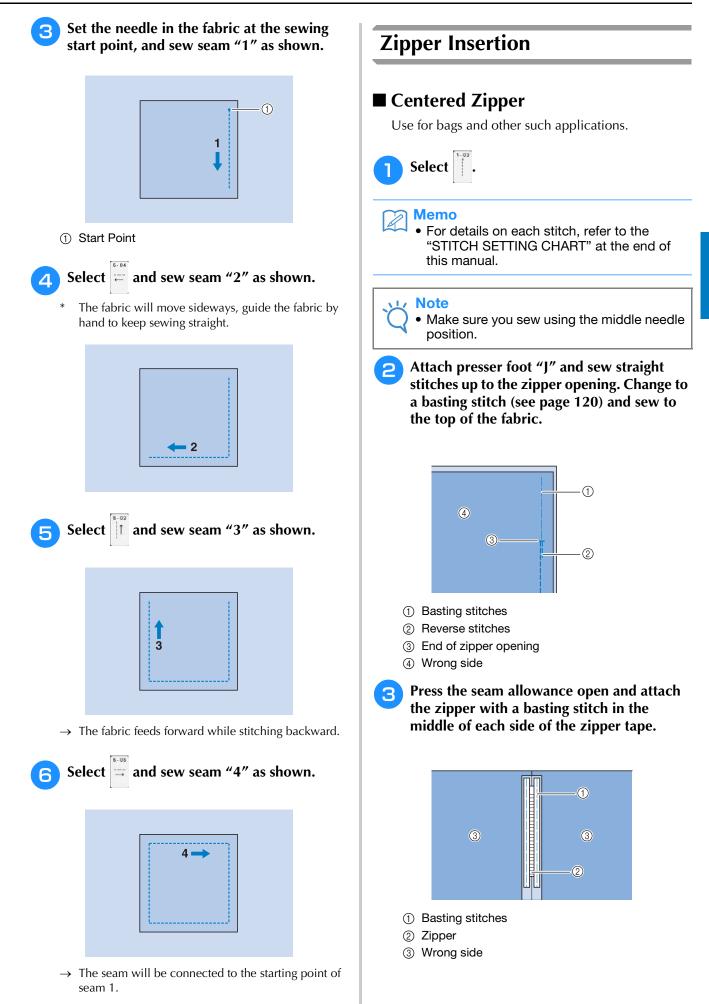
# Eyelet

Use this stitch for making belt holes and other similar applications.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot
4-24 O	Eyelet	<b>P</b>
4-25 ಕ್ರೆಕ್	Star eyelet	<b>N</b>

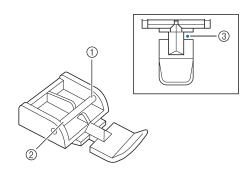


Use the eyelet punch to make a hole in the



M Utility Stitches

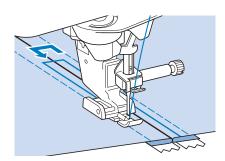
4 Remove presser foot "J". Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the zipper foot.



- 1 Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position

# 

- When using zipper foot "I", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Topstitch 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 to 3/8 inch) from the seamed edge of the fabric, then remove the basting.



# A CAUTION

• Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury.

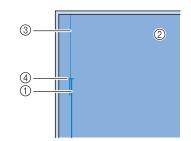
### ■ Inserting a Side Zipper

Use for side zippers in skirts or dresses.

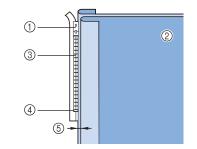
**Select Select** 

#### Vote

- Make sure you sew using the middle needle position.
- Attach presser foot "J" and sew straight stitches up to the zipper opening. Change to a basting stitch and sew to the top of the fabric.



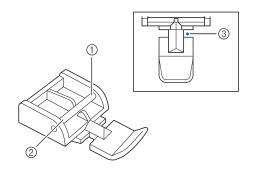
- ① Reverse stitches
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Basting stitches
- ④ End of zipper opening
- **3** Press the seam allowance open and align the folded hem along the teeth of the zipper, while maintaining 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) of sewing space.



- Zipper pull tab
- ② Wrong side of fabric
- ③ Zipper teeth
- ④ End of zipper opening
- (5) 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

Remove presser foot "J".

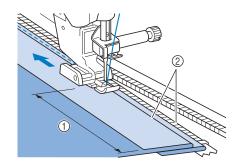
Align the right side of the pin in zipper foot "I" with the presser foot holder, and attach the presser foot.



- ① Right
- ② Left
- ③ Needle drop position

# 

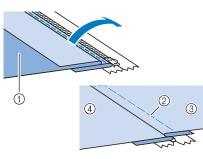
- When using zipper foot "1", make sure the straight stitch, middle needle position is selected. Rotate the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) to make sure the needle does not strike the presser foot. If another stitch is selected, the needle will strike the presser foot, causing the needle to break and possibly causing injury.
- Set the presser foot in the 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) margin.
- Starting from the end of the zipper opening, sew to a point about 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, then stop the machine.
- Pull down the zipper slider, then continue sewing to the edge of the fabric.



- ① 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)
- ② 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch)

# **A** CAUTION

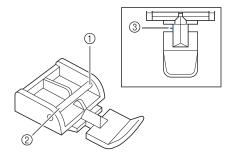
 Make sure the needle does not strike the zipper during sewing. If the needle strikes the zipper, the needle may break, leading to injury. **9** Close the zipper, turn the fabric over, and sew a basting stitch.



- ① Front of the skirt (wrong side of fabric)
- ② Basting stitches
- ③ Front of the skirt (right side of fabric)
- ④ Back of the skirt (right side of fabric)

# 10 Remove the presser foot, and reattach it so that the left side of the pin is attached to the presser foot holder.

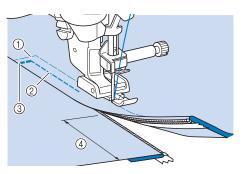
\* When sewing the left side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the right side of the presser foot. When sewing the right side of the zipper, the needle should drop on the left side of the presser foot.



- ① Right
- Left
- ③ Needle drop position
- 11 Set the fabric so that the left edge of the presser foot touches the edge of the zipper teeth.
- Sew reverse stitches at the top of the zipper, then continue sewing.
- Stop sewing about 50 mm (approx.
   2 inches) from the edge of the fabric, leave the needle in the fabric, and remove the basting stitches.



#### Open the zipper and sew the rest of the seam.



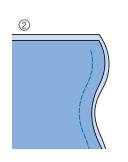
- Basting stitches
- ② 7 to 10 mm (approx. 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch)
- ③ Reverse stitches
- (4) 50 mm (approx. 2 inches)

### Edge Sewing

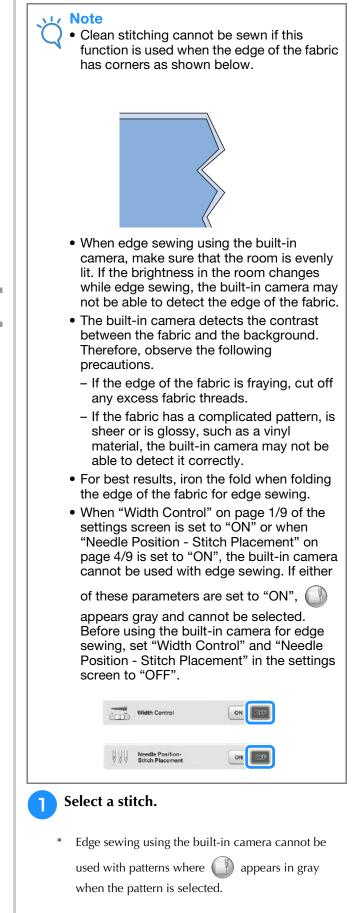
Using the built-in camera, the width of the area from the edge of the fabric to the stitching line can be measured and set for edge sewing. This function can be used when the edge of the

fabric is straight or a gentle curve.





 Straight ② Curved





Attach the vertical stitch alignment foot "V".



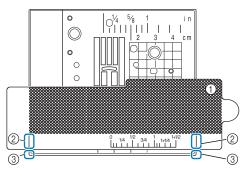
# **A** CAUTION

- When edge sewing with the built-in camera, be sure to use the vertical stitch alignment foot "V". In order to maintain a fixed distance from the edge of the fabric, the needle will slightly move to either side, even when sewing with a straight stitch. If a different presser foot is used, it may be hit by the needle, causing the needle to break or resulting in injuries.
- Peel off the transparent sheet of the edge sewing sheet.

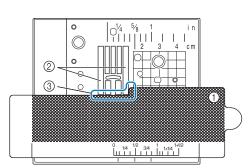


# Place the edge sewing sheet on top of the needle plate cover.

Align the guides on the edge sewing sheet with the sides of the needle plate cover, and then adjust the position of the edge sewing sheet so that its cutout aligns with the edges of the opening for the feed dogs. Position the edge sewing sheet so that there is no gap between it and the edges of the opening for the feed dogs.



- ① Edge sewing sheet
- ② Guides on edge sewing sheet
- ③ Sides of needle plate cover



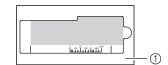
- ① Edge sewing sheet
- ② Feed dogs
- ③ Between the feed dogs and the edge sewing sheet

#### 🗸 Note

• If the metal needle plate is visible between the feed dogs and the edge sewing sheet, the fabric may be incorrectly detected by the built-in camera.

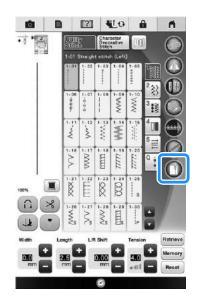
#### Memo

• Before using the edge sewing sheet, peel off the transparent sheet. After use, affix the edge sewing sheet to the transparent sheet to prevent it from collecting dust.

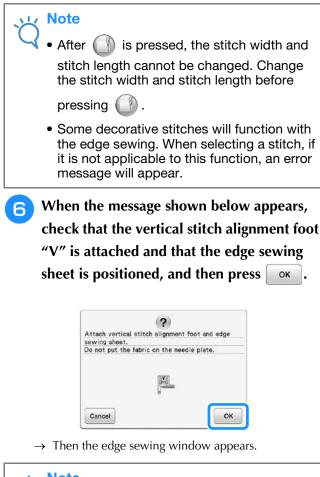


- ① Transparent sheet
- Be sure to install a fully wound bobbin before starting to use the edge sewing feature and built-in camera. If you need to change the bobbin while edge sewing, remove the edge sewing sheet carefully and place it again after changing the bobbin.





- → Depending on the stitch, the straight stitch with the middle (center) needle position is selected, regardless of the preset stitch width.
- Regardless of the setting selected in the machine settings screen, the brightness of the light changes to "5".

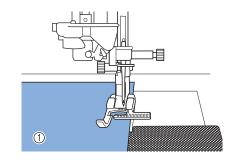


### بن Note

- Before pressing or , install the vertical stitch alignment foot "V" and position the edge sewing sheet; otherwise, the built-in camera cannot detect the fabric.
  - If or is pressed before the edge sewing sheet is positioned, the message shown in step 6 appears again.
  - After pressing ok, do not place your hands or any other object near the needle plate until the message "Recognizing..." disappears.

Place the fabric under the presser foot.

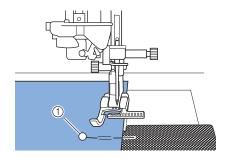
8 Move the fabric to the desired position for edge sewing. Position the fabric so that its edge is as straight as possible.



① Fabric

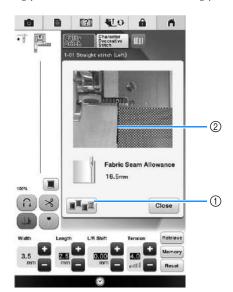
#### V Note

 When pinning the fabric, insert the pins as shown below. If the head of the pin extends off the edge of the fabric, the fabric may not be correctly detected.



- ① Basting pin
- **9** Check that the built-in camera is correctly detecting the fabric.
  - \* Press **I** to change the colors of the fabric edge indicator line and starting point according to the color of the fabric. Each press of this key changes the color of the fabric edge indicator line to red

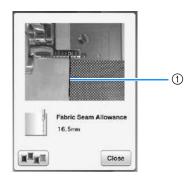
(with a blue starting point), blue (with a black starting point) or black (with a red starting point).



- Key for changing the color of the fabric edge indicator line
- ② Fabric edge indicator line

# When the Built-In Camera Can Detect the Edge of the Fabric

The fabric edge indicator line appears correctly following the edge of the fabric.



① Fabric edge indicator line

# When the Fabric Edge Indicator Line Does Not Appear

The built-in camera cannot detect the edge of the fabric.



Press **Close**, and then perform the procedure again starting with step **1**.

#### When the Fabric Edge Indicator Line Is Not Aligned With the Edge of the Fabric

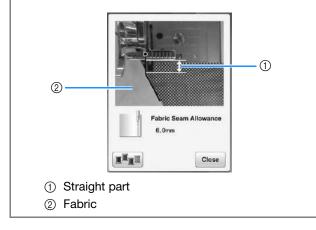
The fabric edge indicator line that appears is not aligned with the edge of the fabric. The fabric at the beginning of sewing is not straight.



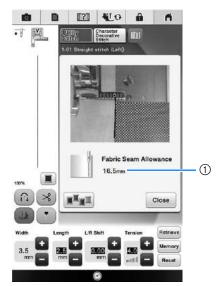
Try to straighten the edge of the fabric at the beginning of sewing (so it is parallel with the edge of the presser foot).

• If a

 If a straight part of fabric edge indicator line (shown below) does not follow the edge of the fabric, edge sewing cannot be sewn correctly.



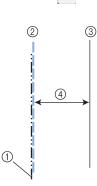
- While checking the screen for the distance from the fabric edge to the edge sewing position, move the fabric to the desired position.
  - \* The starting point of the fabric edge indicator line shows the position for the start of sewing. The actual position for the start of sewing is directly below the needle and parallel to the starting point.



① Distance from edge of fabric

(example:

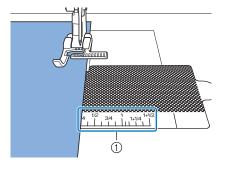




- ① Middle needle position
- ② Stitching
- ③ Edge of fabric
- ④ Width of edge sewing

#### Note

- Distances between 1.5 mm (about 1/16 inch) and 38.5 mm (about 1-1/2 inches) can be measured. The distance is displayed in the screen in 0.5 mm (about 1/64 inch) increments.
  - The distance is displayed in millimeters. However, depending on the measurement setting, it can also be displayed in inches.
- If "-\_- mm" appears as the distance and no inch measurement is displayed, the built-in camera is not able to detect the edge of the fabric.
- When a straight stitch is selected, use the scale on the edge sewing sheet as a guide for positioning the fabric for edge sewing.



① Scale on the edge sewing sheet

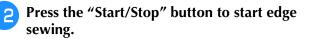
### Lower the presser foot.

 $\rightarrow\,$  The distance from the edge of the fabric to the seam is set.

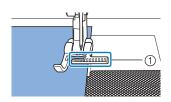
#### 🔊 Memo

• If the knee lifter is used to lower the presser foot, the fabric can be held in place with both hands so the fabric does not move when the presser foot is lowered.





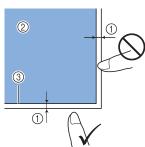
- → Sewing starts with the set distance to the edge of the fabric maintained.
- \* While sewing, use the red scale marks on the vertical stitch alignment foot "V" as a guide to keep a fixed distance from the edge of the fabric.



- ① Red scale marks
- \* When sewing starts, a still image from the built-in camera is displayed.



 While sewing, do not place anything, including your hands, within 2 mm (about 1/ 16 inch) from the edge of the fabric, otherwise the edge of the fabric cannot be detected correctly. When guiding the fabric with your hands, place them outside of the object-free area and more than 2 mm (about 1/16 inch) from the edge of the fabric.



- ① Approximately 2 mm (about 1/16 inch)
- ② Fabric
- ③ Edge of fabric

When sewing is between 10 and 20 mm (about 3/8 and 3/4 inch) from the edge of the fabric, sewing stops automatically and the following message appears. To stop sewing, press **Cose**.

\* When this message appears, edge sewing (with the seam wizard function) is canceled.



### <sub>ヒ</sub> Note

• To continue sewing to the edge of the

fabric, do not press **Cose** when the message shown above appears. With the above message displayed, press the "Start/Stop" button to sew.

### Memo

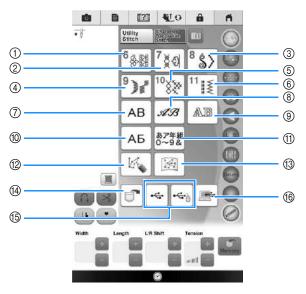
• When edge sewing is finished, store the edge sewing sheet affixed to the transparent sheet in order to prevent it from collecting dust.

# Chapter 4 Character/Decorative Stitches

SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS 170
■ Stitch Selection Screens
Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns
Alphabet Characters/Japanese characters172
Deleting Characters
Adjusting the Character Spacing
SEWING STITCH PATTERNS 175
Sewing Attractive Finishes175
Basic Sewing175
Making Adjustments176
EDITING STITCH PATTERNS 178
Key Functions
Changing the Size180
Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)180
Creating a Vertical Mirror Image180
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image
Sewing a Pattern Continuously
Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)181
Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern
Checking the Image182
COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS 183
Before Combining
Before Combining
Before Combining
Before Combining
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         More Examples       187
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         Image: More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used       189         B Connecting Your Machine to the PC       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Connecting Your Machine to the PC       189         Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data       189         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory       190
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         © Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         © Connecting Your Machine to the PC       189         © Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data       189
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used       189         Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data       189         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory       190         If the Memory is Full       190
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Propending Your Machine to the PC       189         Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data       189         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory       190         If the Memory is Full       190
Before Combining       183         Combining Various Stitch Patterns       183         Combining Large and Small Stitch Patterns       184         Combining Horizontal Mirror Image Stitch Patterns       185         Combining Stitch Patterns of Different Length       186         Making Step Stitch Patterns (for 7mm Satin Stitch       186         Patterns Only)       186         More Examples       187         USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION       189         Stitch Data Precautions       189         Types of Stitch Data that can be Used       189         Ponnecting Your Machine to the PC       189         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory       190         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer       190         Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer       190

# **SELECTING STITCH PATTERNS**

Press , then to display the screen below.



- ① Decorative stitch patterns
- ② 7mm decorative stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ③ Satin stitch patterns
- ④ 7mm satin stitch patterns. You can set stitch length and width.
- ⑤ Cross stitch
- 6 Utility decorative stitch patterns
- ⑦ Alphabet characters (gothic font)
- ⑧ Alphabet characters (handwriting font)
- ③ Alphabet characters (outline)
- 1 Cyrillic font
- ① Japanese character
- 1 Press this key to create your own stitches with the "MY CUSTOM STITCH" function (see page 200)
- ③ Patterns stored in "MY CUSTOM STITCH" (see page 206)
- (4) Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 192)
- (5) Patterns saved in USB media (see page 193)
- (6) Patterns saved on the computer (see page 194)

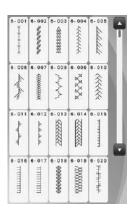
#### بر Note

• If the screen is locked ( ), unlock the screen by pressing . While the screen is locked, no other key can be operated.

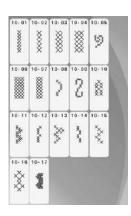
### ■ Stitch Selection Screens

There are 11 categories of Character/Decorative stitch patterns. If 🔽 🔽 appears, there is more than one stitch selection screen for that category.

#### **Decorative Stitch Patterns**



**Cross Stitch** 



Alphabet Characters (Outline)

ABO	D	Ø	B	A
abo	H	œ.	F	E
0-9,	L	R	J	1
&?!	P	0	N	M
ÅÄà	T	8	R	ନ୍ତ
ŇŇi	ж	w	V	U
		0	Z	¥

**7mm Decorative Stitch** Patterns

> SANA. 人人人人人

STATES IN

01 02

/22//29/99/

XX

11-20

m/m

шц

абв

шu

0-9,

575

11-08 11-09 11-10

1111

11-18 11-19

**Cyrillic font** 

AVAVA

Street.

**Utility Decorative Stitch** 

Patterns

and a state 00000000

- 01 012 01 01 01

7-01

11-0 11-02 1-03

11-06 11-07

VVVV 1000 \* AAAAA 3

DVV KKKK 11111

E

A Б В Г AB

Д

3 И Й κ

Л Μ Н 0

П Ρ С т

11-16 11-17

8 B 

> Ε Ë ж

Φ y

X Ц

01

11111 THE O

Satin Stitch Patterns

3

3

} 3

8-18

₹

Alphabet Characters

(Gothic Font)

C В

D

P 0

abc

0-9,.

&?!

ÅÄà

ÑÑñ

}

...

i

I

#

3

2

8-1 .

ζ 3

8-16

3 3

A

Е F G н

I JΚ L

Μ Ν

Q R S Т

U V W X

Y

Ş

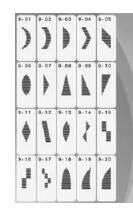
3

3

8-20

3

7mm Satin Stitch Patterns



**Alphabet Characters** (Handwriting Font)

ABC	D	С	Я	A
abc	Ħ	G	Ŧ	С
0-9,.	£	R	Ŧ	Ţ
&?!	P	0	s.	M
ÅÄà	$\sigma$	s	R	Q
ÑÑñ	X	Ħ	V	U
		,	Z	9

#### Japanese character

Ζ ,

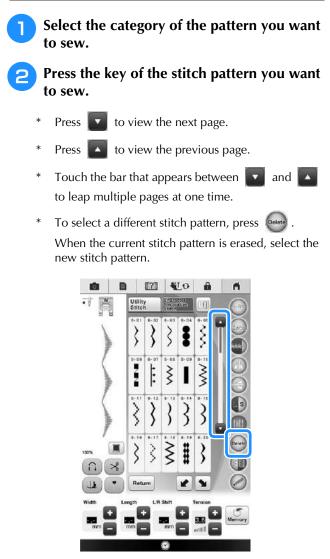
1 2 2	な行	た行	さ 行	か行	あ行
0.#	Ъ <sub>łī</sub>	5 <sub>行</sub>	や行	<b>इ</b> . ह	<b>は</b> 行
H	ъ	え	3	U)	あ
	37	4	4	0	æ
	3,	~		100	
	*	I	- -	F	7
	8) オ *	I	5 5 5	T T	7 7

	か行	さ 行	た	な行	305
精	<b>इ</b>	や行	ら <sub>行</sub>	わ <sub>打</sub>	0~九 年組
あ	10	3	え	お	HV
5	U.	3	ż	đ	

Character/Decorative Stitches

S.

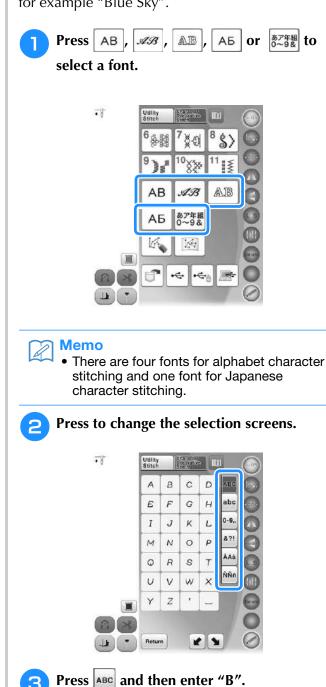
# Selecting Decorative Stitch Patterns/7mm Decorative Stitch Patterns/Satin Stitch Patterns/ 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns/ Cross Stitch/Utility Decorative Stitch Patterns



 $\rightarrow$  The selected pattern is displayed.

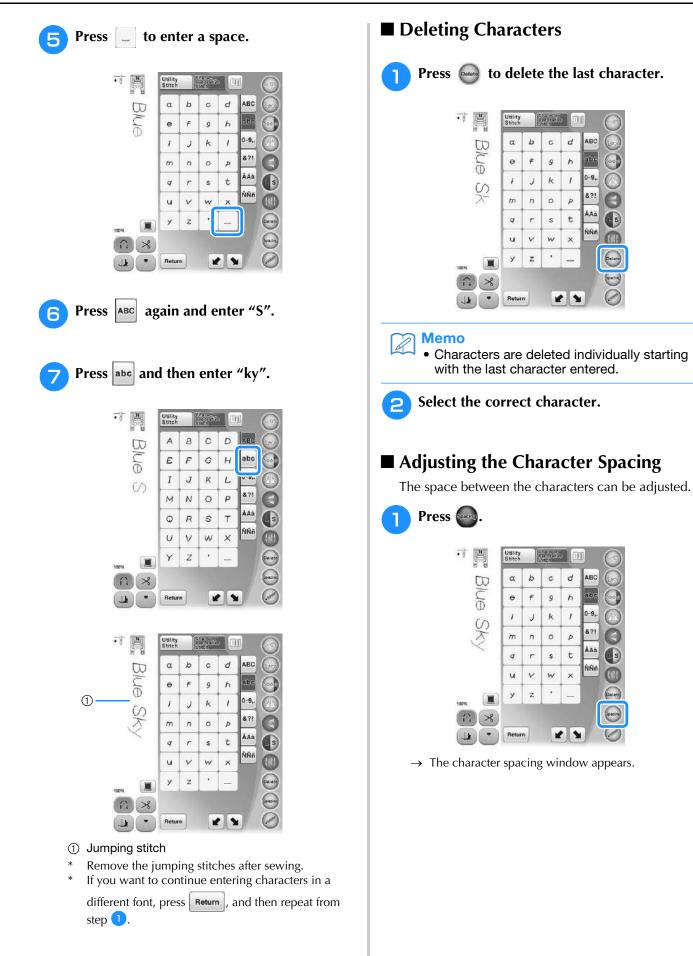
# Alphabet Characters/Japanese characters

Entering characters from the groups shown below, for example "Blue Sky".





Press abc and then enter "lue".





\* Press 💽 to increase the character spacing and

press 📃 to decrease the character spacing.

#### **Example:**

\* Each setting equals a specific distance between characters.

Value: 0

Blue Sky

Value: 10

Blue Sky

0	0
1	0.18
2	0.36
3	0.54
4	0.72
5	0.9
6	1.08
7	1.26
8	1.44
9	1.62
10	1.8

mm

Value

#### 

- The default setting is "0". No number less than "0" can be set.
- Changing character spacing by this method, pertains to all characters. Spacing changes are valid not only while entering characters but also before and after the entering of characters.

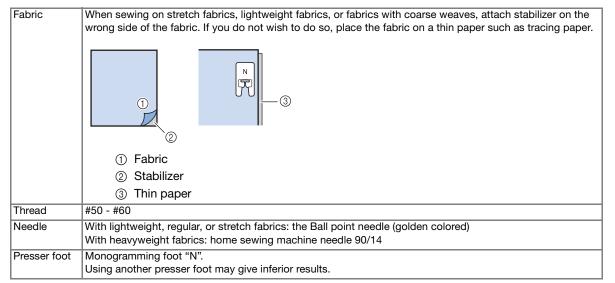
# **SEWING STITCH PATTERNS**

# Sewing Attractive Finishes

To achieve attractive results when sewing character/decorative stitches, check the table below for the proper fabric/needle/thread combinations.

#### Note

- Other factors, such as fabric thickness, stabilizer material, etc., also have an effect on the stitch, so you should always sew a few trial stitches before beginning your project.
- When sewing satin stitch patterns, there may be shrinking or bunching of stitches, so be sure to attach a stabilizer material.
- Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

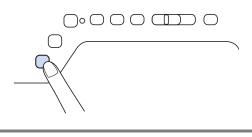


# **Basic Sewing**

- Select a stitch pattern.
  - Attach monogramming foot "N".
- **3** Place the fabric under the presser foot, pull the upper thread out to the side, and then lower the presser foot.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to start sewing.



# **A** CAUTION

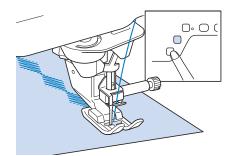
When sewing 7 mm satin stitch patterns and the stitches are bunched, lengthen the stitch length. If you continue sewing when the stitches are bunched, the needle may bend or break ("Setting the Stitch Length" on page 91). ŝ

#### Memo

If the fabric is pulled or pushed during sewing, the pattern may not turn out correctly. Also, depending on the pattern, there may be movement to the left and right as well as front and back. Guide the fabric with your hand to keep the fabric feeding straight and even during sewing.

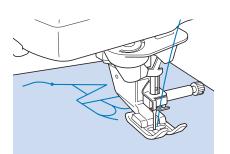
Press the "Start/Stop" button to stop sewing.

Keep pressing the "Reverse Stitch" button or the "Reinforcement Stitch" button to sew 4 stitches of reinforcement stitches.



#### Memo

 When sewing character stitches, the machine automatically sews reinforcement stitches at the beginning and end of each character.



 When sewing is completed, trim any excess thread between letters.



#### V Note

When sewing some patterns, the needle will temporarily pause in the raised position while the fabric is fed due to the operation of the needle bar separation mechanism which is used in this machine. At such times, a clicking sound different from the sound generated during sewing will be heard. This sound is normal and is not the sign of a machine malfunction.

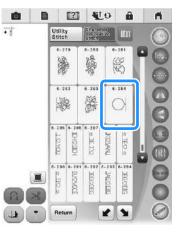
## **Making Adjustments**

Your stitch pattern may sometimes turn out poorly, depending on the type or thickness of fabric, the stabilizer material used, sewing speed, etc. If your sewing does not turn out well, sew trial stitches using the same conditions as the real sewing, and adjust the stitch pattern as explained below. If the pattern does not turn out well even after making

adjustments based on the O pattern, make

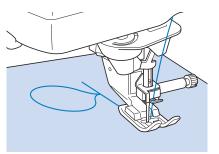
adjustments for each pattern individually.

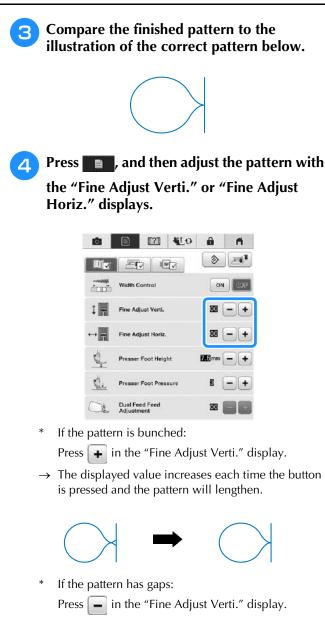






Attach monogramming foot "N" and sew the pattern.





→ The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will shorten.



\* If the pattern is skewed to the left:

Press + in the "Fine Adjust Horiz." display.

→ The displayed value increases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the right.



If the pattern is skewed to the right:
 Press - in the "Fine Adjust Horiz." display.

→ The displayed value decreases each time the button is pressed and the pattern will slide to the left.



#### **5** Sew the stitch pattern again.

If the stitch pattern still comes out poorly, make adjustments again. Adjust until the stitch pattern comes out correctly.

#### Memo

• You can sew with the setting screen on the display.

### B Press OK

to return to the original screen.

S.

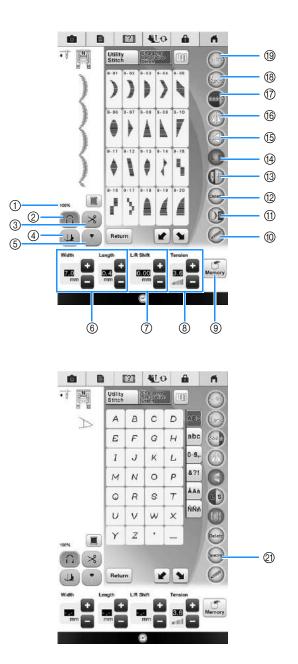
# **EDITING STITCH PATTERNS**

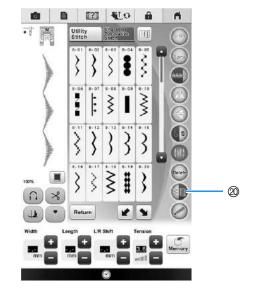
### **Key Functions**

You can create just the finish you want using the editing functions. Make patterns larger or smaller, make mirror images, etc.

Note

• Some editing functions cannot be used with certain stitch patterns. Only the functions for the displayed keys are available when a pattern is selected.





No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1	100%	Pattern display size	Show the approximate size of the pattern selected.	113
			100% : Nearly the same size as the sewn pattern	
			50% : 1/2 the size of the sewn pattern	
			25% : 1/4 the size of the sewn pattern	
			* The actual size of the sewn pattern may differ depending on the type of	
		Automatic	fabric and thread that is used.	05
2		reinforcement stitch key	Press this key to turn on the automatic reinforcement stitching mode.	85
3	*	Automatic thread cutting key	Press this key to turn on the automatic thread cutting mode.	93
4		Pivot key	<ul> <li>Press this key to select the pivot function. When the pivot function is selected, stopping the machine lowers the needle and slightly raises the presser foot automatically. In addition, when sewing is restarted, the presser foot is automatically lowered.</li> <li>If this key appears as , the pivot function cannot be used.</li> <li>Be sure the needle position on page 4 of Machine Settings is set to the distribution.</li> </ul>	95
5		Guideline marker key	down position. Press this key to display the guideline marker along the sewing line. The guideline marker makes it easier to align stitches with the fabric edge or other marker on the fabric.	94
6	Width Length	Stitch width and stitch length key	Shows the stitch width and stitch length of the selected stitch pattern. The machine default settings are highlighted.	90-92
7	L/R Shift 0.00 mm	"L/R Shift" key	Press + to shift the stitch pattern to the right or press - to shift the pattern to the left. This feature is not available on all patterns. Only those applicable will be shifted. The machine default setting is highlighted.	91
8	Tension 316	Thread tension key	Shows the thread tension setting for the selected stitch pattern. The machine default settings are highlighted	92
9	Memory	Memory key	Use this key to save stitch pattern combinations.	190
10	0	Sensor function key	Press this key to use the sensor function.	100
1		Elongation key	When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press this key to choose from 5 automatic length settings, without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.	180
12	Delete	Delete key	When you make a mistake selecting a stitch pattern, use this key to delete the mistake. When you make a mistake in combining stitch patterns, use this key to delete stitch patterns.	172, 173
13	D	Needle mode selection key (Single/Double)	Press this key to choose single needle sewing or twin needle sewing.	65
14		Size selection key	Use this key to select the size of the stitch pattern (large, small).	180
15		Vertical mirror image key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a vertical mirror image of the stitch pattern.	180
16		Horizontal mirror image key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to create a horizontal mirror image of the stitch pattern.	180
17	and the	Single/Repeat sewing key	Press this key to choose single stitches or continuous stitches.	180
18	0	Back to beginning key	When sewing is stopped, press this key to return to the beginning of the pattern.	181
19	٢	Free motion mode key	Press this key to enter free motion sewing mode. The feed dog is lowered and presser foot is raised to a height appropriate for free motion quilting.	133
0	20	Thread density key	After selecting the stitch pattern, use this key to change the thread density of the pattern.	181
2)	Spacing	Character spacing key	Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.	173

4

# Changing the Size

Select a stitch pattern, then press of to change

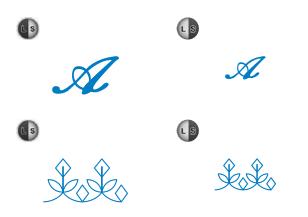
the size of the stitch pattern. The stitch pattern will be sewn in the size highlighted on the key.

#### 🏹 Memo

- If you continue entering stitch patterns after changing the size, those patterns will also be sewn in that size.
- You cannot change the size of combined stitch patterns once the stitch pattern is entered.

#### **Actual Stitch Pattern Size**

\* The size differs depending on the fabric and threads.



# Changing the Length (for 7mm Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

When 7mm satin stitch patterns are selected, press

() to choose from 5 automatic length settings,

without changing the stitch zigzag width or stitch length settings.



# **Creating a Vertical Mirror Image**

To create a vertical mirror image, select a stitch

pattern then press (



# Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

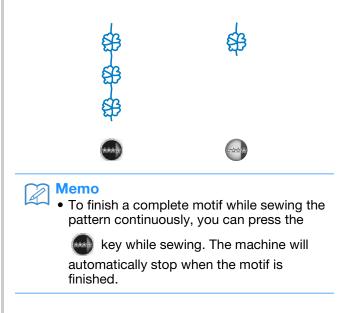
To create a horizontal mirror image, select a stitch

pattern then press 🔘 .



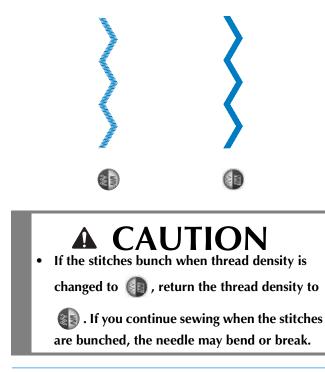
# Sewing a Pattern Continuously

Press of to select continuous sewing or single stitch sewing.



# Changing Thread Density (for Satin Stitch Patterns Only)

After selecting a satin stitch pattern, press () to select your preferred thread density.

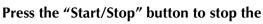


#### Memo

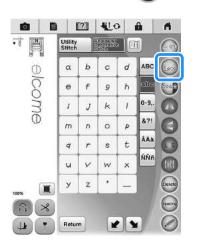
- Even if you select a new pattern after changing the thread density, the thread density remains the same until you change it.
- You cannot change thread density for a combined pattern after additional patterns are added.

# Returning to the Beginning of the Pattern

When sewing character/decorative stitches, you can return to the beginning of the pattern after trial sewing or when the stitching is sewn incorrectly.



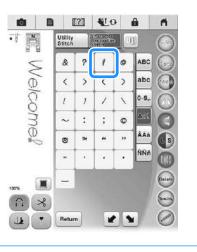
# machine, and then press 🔘 .



→ Sewing returns to the beginning of the selected pattern ("W") from the point where sewing was stopped.

#### Memo

 If this key is pressed while sewing is stopped, patterns can be added at the end of a combined stitch pattern. (In this example, "!" is added.)



Press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.

# Checking the Image

You can display an approximate size image of the selected stitch pattern. You can also check and change the colors of the image on the screen.



 $\rightarrow$  An image of the selected pattern is displayed.

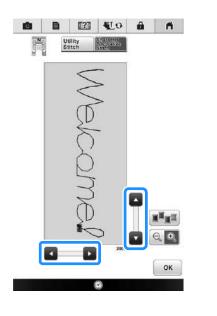
Press **T** to change the thread color in the image to red, blue, black or yellow.

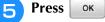


 $\rightarrow$  The color changes every time you press the button.



Use Use Image that extends out of the viewable display area.





to return to the original screen.

#### Memo

- You can also sew from this screen when the presser foot symbol is displayed.
- Image of some patterns will display in default size only.

# **COMBINING STITCH PATTERNS**

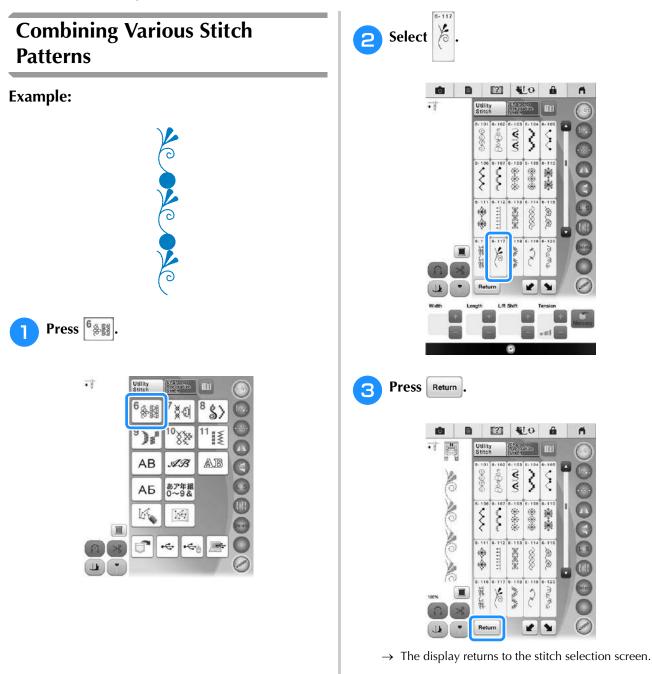
You can combine many varieties of stitch patterns, such as character stitches, cross stitches, satin stitches, or stitches you design with MY CUSTOM STITCH function (see chapter 5 for information about MY CUSTOM STITCH). You can also combine stitch patterns of different sizes, mirror image stitch patterns, and others.

# **Before Combining**

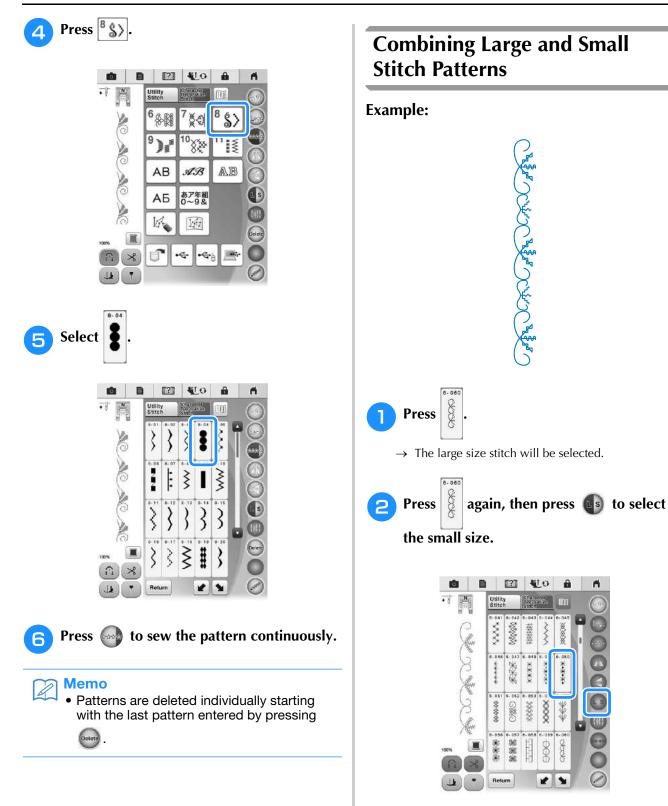
Single stitch sewing is automatically selected for sewing combined patterns. If you want to sew the

pattern continuously, press after finishing the stitch pattern combination.

When changing sizes, creating mirror images, or making other adjustments to a combined stitch pattern, be sure to edit the selected stitch pattern before selecting the next one. You cannot edit a stitch pattern once the next stitch pattern is selected.



4



 $\rightarrow$  The pattern is displayed in a smaller size.

.

III

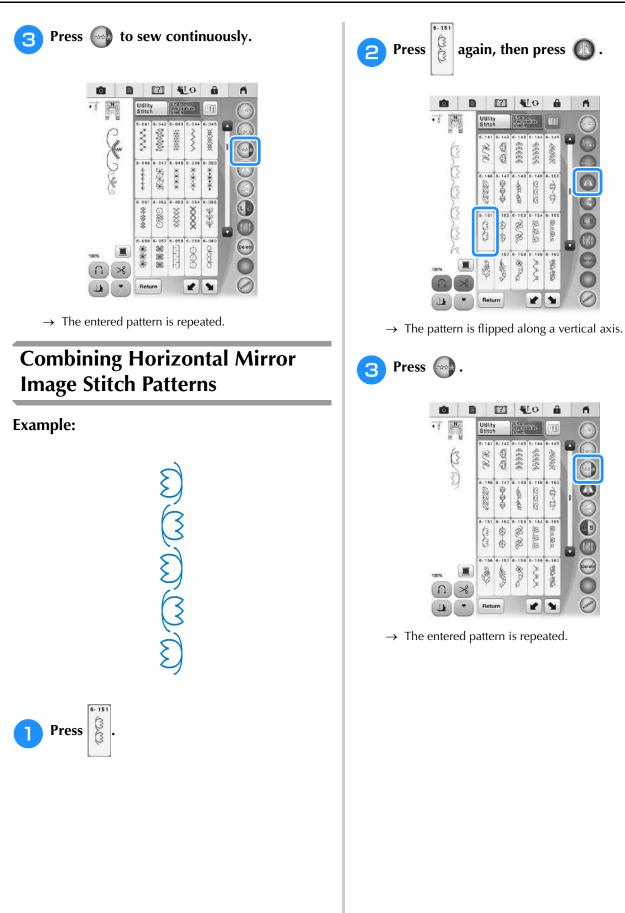
\*\*\*\* - Kok

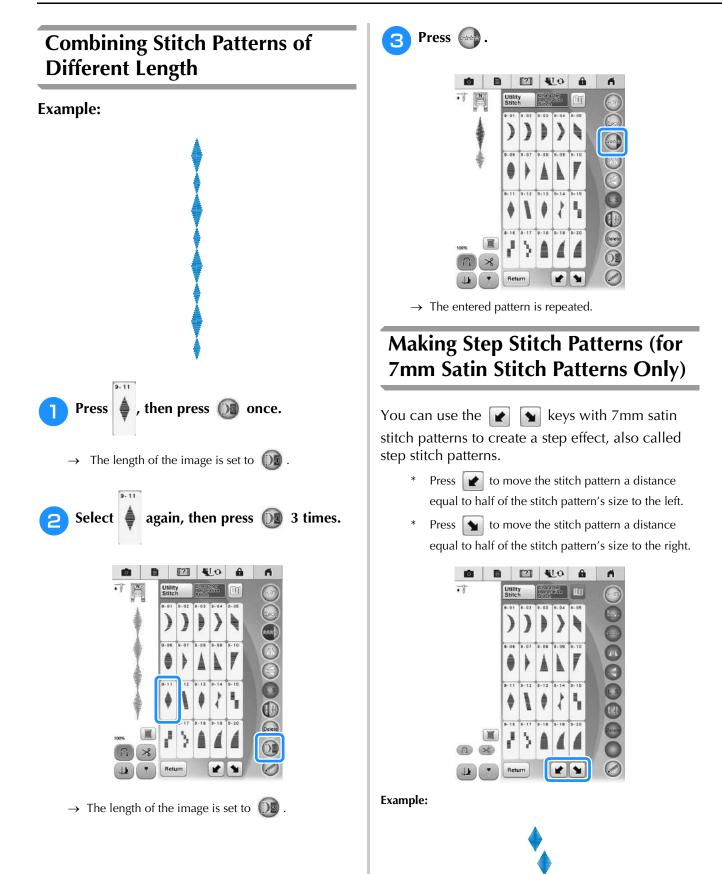
XXXX

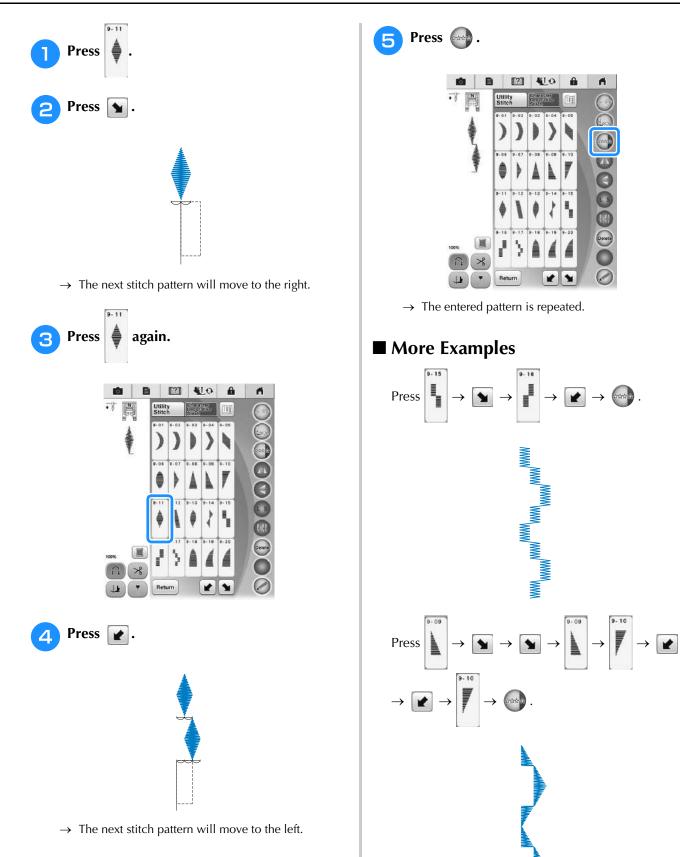
000 CROCK

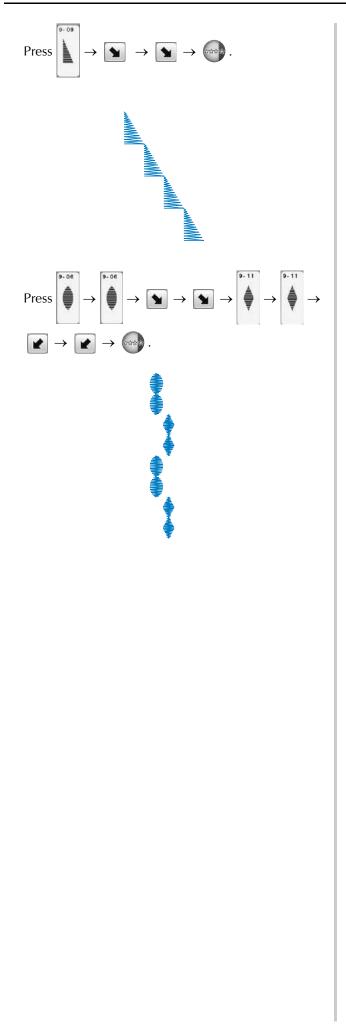
2 3

n









# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

# Stitch Data Precautions

Observe the following precautions when using stitch data other than that created and saved in this machine.

## ■ Types of Stitch Data that can be Used

- In the Character/Decorative Stitch memory, ".pmv", ".pmx" and ".pmu" stitch data files can be used with this machine. ".pmu" stitch data files can be retrieved; however, when the machine is used to save the file, it is saved as a ".pmv" stitch data file.
- Using data other than that created using this machine or the machine which create ".pmu" data file, may cause the machine to malfunction.

# 4

# Character/Decorative Stitches

## ■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB external media. Use external media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)
- USB Floppy disk drive

Stitch data can be recalled only from;

• USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the USB Memory Card Reader/USB card writer module.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- xD-Picture Card

#### <u>بر</u> Note

- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
  The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB Devices/Media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the Devices/Media. (Time will differ depending on the USB Device/Media).
- To create file folders, use a computer.

## Connecting Your Machine to the PC

- Compatible models: IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems: Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8

#### ■ Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the stitch data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9, "-", and "\_".
- Stitch data in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If stitch data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that stitch data cannot be retrieved by the machine.

# Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory

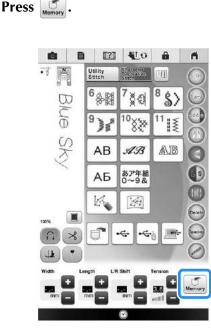
You can save often used stitch patterns in the machine's memory. A total of about 1 MB of stitch patterns can be saved in the machine's memory.

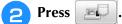
#### ير Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

#### 🥱 Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a stitch pattern.
- See page 192 for information on retrieving a saved stitch pattern.





<sup>c</sup> Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### ■ If the Memory is Full

If the following screen appears while you are trying to save a pattern on the machine's memory, the memory is too full to hold the currently selected stitch pattern. To save the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, you have to delete a previously

saved stitch pattern. Press ok, and then refer to "Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory" on page 192.

		(?)		
Not enough	availabl	le memory	to save	the pattern.
Delete anot	her patt	tern?		
				ОК
				- Crit

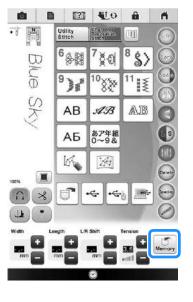
# Saving Stitch Patterns to USB Media

When sending stitch patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's top USB port.

#### Memo

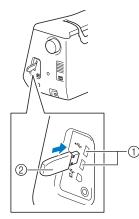
- USB media is commercially available, but some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
  - Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
  - The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.







#### Insert the USB media into either of the USB ports on the machine.



- USB port
- ② USB media



- Press €÷è when connecting the USB media to the USB port for mouse.
- Press Cancel to return to the original screen without saving.



 $\rightarrow$  The "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### Note

Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the pattern you are saving.

# Saving Stitch Patterns in the Computer

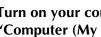
Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the stitch patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer. A total of about 3 MB of stitch patterns can be saved in the "Removable Disk", but the saved stitch patterns are deleted when the machine is turned OFF.

For Computers and Operating Systems, see "Connecting Your Machine to the PC" on page 189.

#### Note

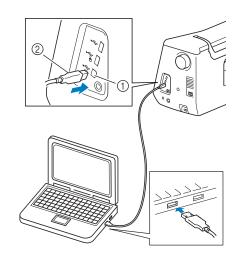
 Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose the stitch pattern you are saving.

Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.



#### Turn on your computer and select "Computer (My Computer)".

The USB cable can be plugged into the USB ports on the computer and machine whether or not they are turned on.

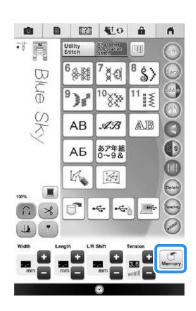


- (1) USB port for computer
- (2) USB cable connector
- $\rightarrow$  The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "Computer (My Computer)" on the computer.

#### Note

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force and check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.







\* Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The stitch pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My Computer)".

# Select the stitch pattern's .pmv file and copy the file to the computer.

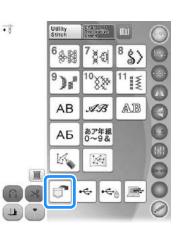
	Les (cr) las
🖉 💭 = 👝 + Computer + Removable Disk (G)	•   44    Search Removable Duri J
Disperize # 🗋 Open Base Newfolder	
the favorites	
Gill Libraries	
P Computer 9999955466 pmv	
Su Network	

#### ير Note

 Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving..." screen is showing. You may lose the data.

# Retrieving Stitch Patterns from the Machine's Memory

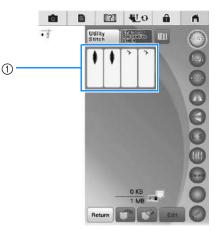




 $\rightarrow$  The pocket selection screen appears.

#### Choose a stitch pattern to retrieve.

- \* If the entire saved stitch pattern is not displayed, press the thumbnail.
- \* Press Return to return to the original screen without saving.



① Saved stitch patterns



Press [ rest to delete the stitch pattern.



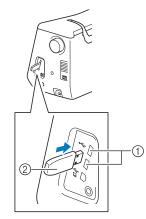
The selected stitch pattern is retrieved and the  $\rightarrow$ sewing screen will be displayed.

# **Recalling from USB Media**

You can recall a specific stitch pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the stitch pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the stitch pattern.



Insert the USB media into either of the USB ports on the machine (see page 190).



① USB port

② USB media



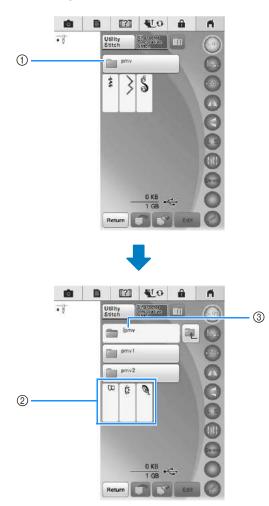
Press 😁 when connecting the USB media to the \* USB port for mouse.

F	Utility Stitch	Staten	<b>0</b> 11	
	<sup>6</sup> &₩	<sup>7</sup> ≹€]	<sup>8</sup> \$>	Õ
	<sup>9</sup> )/	10	<sup>11</sup>  ≸	00
	AB	AB	AB	õ
	АБ	あア年組 0~9&		0
	<b>F</b>	~ ~		ŏ
I) T				0

 $\rightarrow$  Stitch patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

Press when there is a subfolder to sort З two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the stitch pattern in the subfolder is displayed.

Press Return to return to the original screen without recalling.



- (1) Folder name
- ② Stitch patterns in a folder show only the first pattern of any combined patterns.
- ③ Path
- $\rightarrow$  The path shows the current folder at the top of the list.

Stitch patterns and a subfolder within a folder are displayed.

- Press 📃 to return to the previous folder.
- Use the computer to create folders. Folders cannot be created with the machine.

Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.



Press is to delete the stitch pattern. The pattern will be deleted from the USB media.



The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing  $\rightarrow$ screen will be displayed.

# **Recalling from the Computer**

For Computers and Operating Systems, see "Connecting Your Machine to the PC" on page 189.

2

Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine (see page 191).

On the computer, open "Computer (My Computer)" then go to "Removable Disk".





Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable Disk".

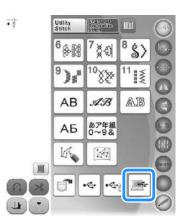
💭 🖬 🕳 + Computer + Removalile Disk (G)		carch Ann	2555	1000	1212
leganize + Share with + New Adder		£.)		C16	.0
il" Favortes	This folder is simply.				
i Librariat					
9 Computer					
i Network					
	-				
	🔶 Copy to Remova	ibie Dick (f	44		

→ Stitch pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.

#### Vote

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.

4 Press 📧



→ The stitch patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.

# Press the key of the stitch pattern you want to recall.

Press Return to return to the original screen without recalling.

- 6 Press [ 7].
  - Press for a delete the stitch pattern.
     The pattern will be deleted from the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer.



→ The selected stitch pattern is recalled and the sewing screen will be displayed.

# • The

The pattern recalled from the computer is only temporarily written to the machine. It is erased from the machine when the machine is turned off. If you wish to keep the stitch pattern, store it in the machine ("Saving Stitch Patterns in the Machine's Memory" on page 190).

\_\_\_\_



DESIGNING A STITCH 198
ENTERING STITCH DATA 200
<ul> <li>Key Functions</li></ul>
USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES 206
Storing Custom Stitches in Your List       206         ■ If the Memory is Full       206         Retrieving Stored Stitches       206

# **DESIGNING A STITCH**

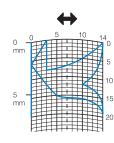
By using the MY CUSTOM STITCH function, you can register stitches you have created yourself. You can also sew designs combining MY CUSTOM STITCH creations with built-in characters (see page 183).

#### Memo

- Stitches that you create with MY CUSTOM STITCH can be a maximum of 7 mm (approx. 9/32 inch) wide and 37 mm (approx. 1-1/3 inches) long.
- Stitches can be designed more easily with MY CUSTOM STITCH if you first draw the stitch on the included grid sheet.



Draw the stitch design on the grid sheet (part code SA507, GS3:X81277-151).



#### **Memo**

Simplify the design so that it can be sewn as a continuous line. For a more attractive stitch, close the design by intersecting lines.

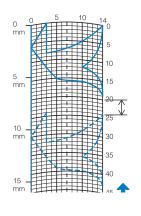


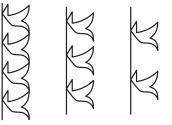
If the design is to be repeated and linked, the start point and end point of the design should be at the same height.



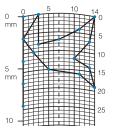
#### Decide the spacing of the stitch.

By adjusting the spacing of a stitch, you can create various patterns with one stitch.



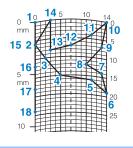


Place points where the pattern intersects З with the grid, and connect all the points with a line.





Determine the x and y coordinates of each of the marked points.



Memo

This will determine the stitch design that will be sewn.

## **Examples of Custom Stitches**

5	Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	1	0	12	18	22	23	21	17	14	12	9	6	3	1	3	6
	$\leftrightarrow$	0	0	3	6	10	13	14	13	11	13	14	13	10	6	3
	Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
$\mathbf{k}$	1	12	41	43	40	41	38	35	32	30	32	35	41	45	47	44
	$\Leftrightarrow$	0	0	4	7	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0	4	7
٤	Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
	1	45	47	50	54	56	55	51	45	70						
Γ	$\leftrightarrow$	11	13	14	13	10	6	3	0	0						

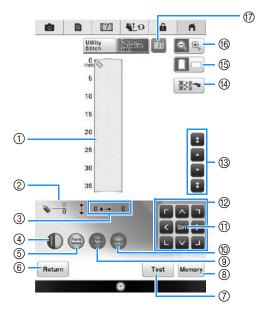
S	Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
L.	1	0	30	32	32	32	33	35	35	37	35	32	30	30	29	26
	$\Leftrightarrow$	0	0	1	7	10	12	11	8	12	14	14	11	5	3	8
S	Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	1	24	18	13	12	13	10	12	8	12	7	12	6	10	5	10
' [	$\Leftrightarrow$	10	13	14	14	12	11	10	9	8	6	6	3	2	0	2
S	Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
Γ	1	16	19	23	22	17	22	23	19	42						
	$\Leftrightarrow$	1	0	0	6	10	6	0	0	0						

Stite	ch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
		0	3	5	8	12	17	20	24	27	29	31	32	30	27	24
	F	0	5	8	11	13	14	14	13	12	11	9	6	3	1	0
	h	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
		21	18	16	15	15	16	18	21	25	28	33	37	41	43	44
	F	0	1	3	5	8	10	12	13	14	14	13	11	8	5	0
Stite	h	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
1																
<u></u>																

	Stitch	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
	t	0	5	4	5	8	7	8	11	11	11	16	11	7	4	0
$ $ $ $	$\leftrightarrow$	7	7	3	7	7	0	7	7	3	7	7	3	0	3	7
	Stitch	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	1	4	7	11	16	21	20	21	24	23	24	27	27	27	32	27
	$\Leftrightarrow$	11	14	11	7	7	11	7	7	14	7	7	11	7	7	11
	Stitch	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45
	1	23	20	16	20	23	27	32								
	÷	14	11	7	3	0	3	7								

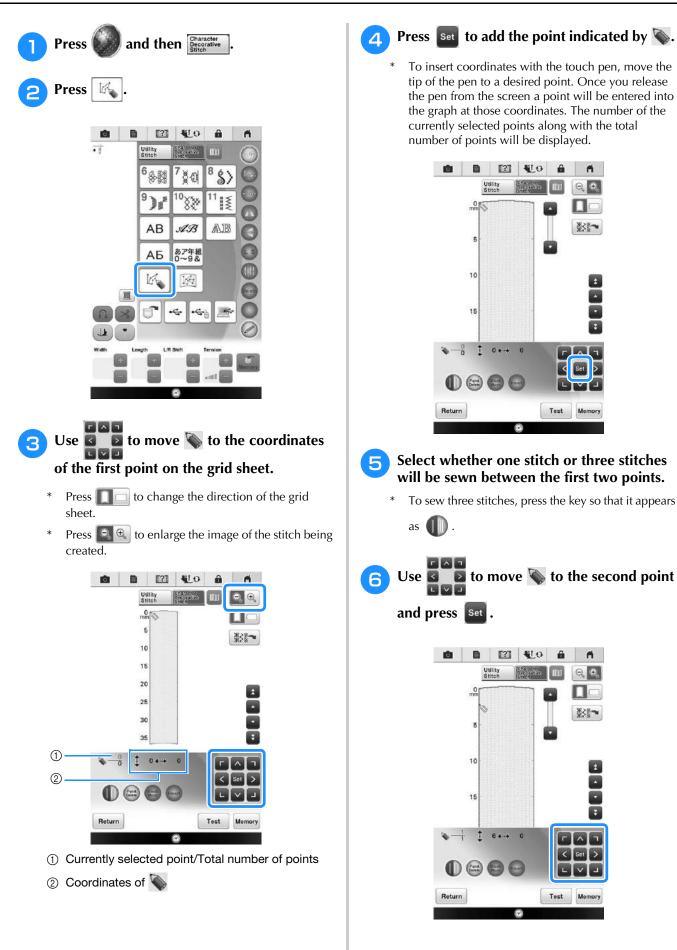
# **ENTERING STITCH DATA**

# **Key Functions**



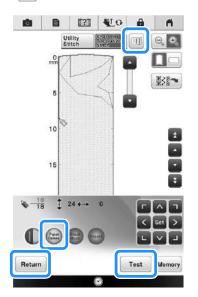
- This area displays the stitch being created.
- O Displays the number of the present set point over the total number of points in the stitch.
- ③ Displays the y-coordinate of 💊 over the x-coordinate of 💊.

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
4	0	Single/triple stitching key	Press this key to select whether one or three stitches will be sewn between two points.	201
5	Point Delete	Point delete key	Press this key to delete a selected point.	202
6	Return	Return key	Press this key to exit the entering stitch data screen.	-
0	Test	Test key	Press this key to sew a test of the stitch.	202, 206
8	Memory	MY CUSTOM STITCH memory key	Press this key to store the stitch being created.	206
9	Black	Block move key	Press this key to group points together and move them together.	203
10	Insert	Insert key	Press this key to insert new points on the stitch design.	204
1	Set	Set key	Press this key to set a point on the stitch design.	201-203
12		Arrow keys	Use these keys to move 🔊 over the display area.	201-204
13	ÂŦ • Ţ	Point-to-point key	Use these keys to move if from point to point on the stitch, or to the first or last point entered on the stitch.	202-204
14	¥38~	Stitch edit key	Press this key to edit the utility stitches in the machine.	204
15		Grid direction key	Press this key to change the direction of the grid sheet.	201
16	0, 9,	Enlarger key	Press this key to see an enlarged version of the stitch being created.	201
17		Image key	Press this key to view an image of the stitch.	202



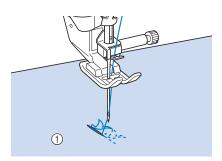
7 Repeat the steps above for each point that you have drawn on the grid sheet until the stitch design is drawn on the screen as a continuous line.

- \* Press Press to delete a selected point entered.
- \* Press Test to sew a test-run of the stitch.
- \* Press Return to return to the original screen.
- \* Press 🔟 to view an image of the stitch.

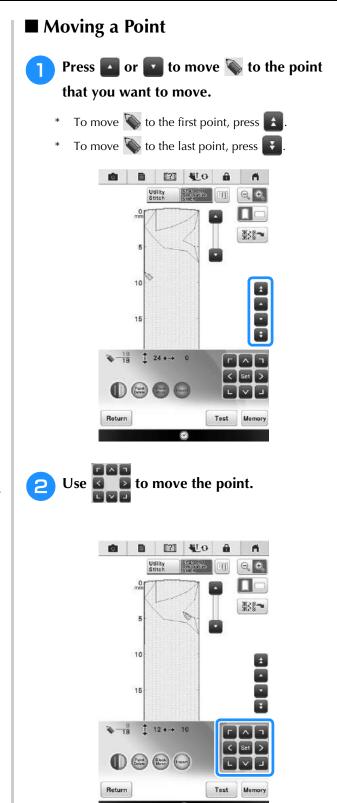


#### Memo

- If you have entered points that are too close together, the fabric may not feed properly. Edit the stitch data to leave a larger space between points.
- If the stitch design is to be repeated and linked, make sure that linking stitches are added so that the stitch designs will not overlap.



- ① Linking stitches
  - You can touch on the grid sheet to set the point, or you can also use a USB mouse.



\* You can also move 💊 by using the touch pen.

n

€. €,

\*\*\*

÷

-

-

Memor

n

⊖. ⊕,

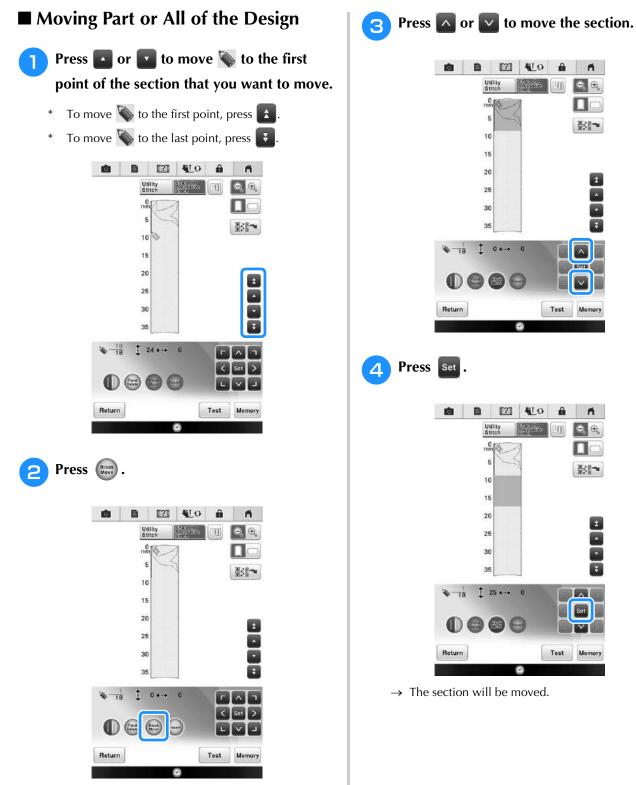
\*\*\*

÷

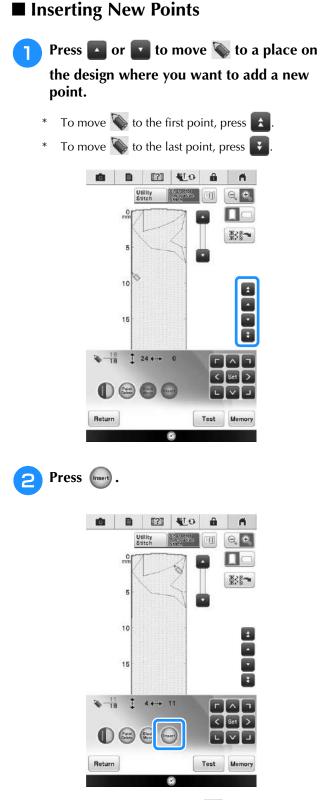
•

-

Memory



 $\rightarrow$  The selected point and all points that were entered after it are selected.



 $\rightarrow$  A new point is entered and  $\bigotimes$  moves to it.

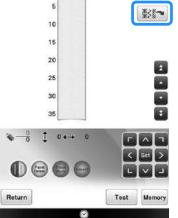
**Г** Л Л **3** Use **2** to move the point. V J â Ċ. n . Utility Stitch Characteri Descarature 11 ⊖, ↔ \*\*\***\*** 10 15 \$<u>−12</u> 19 1 5++ 9 < Set D Cast Bird Insert Return Test Memory

\* You can also move 📎 by using the touch pen.

# Editing Stitch Stored in the Machine

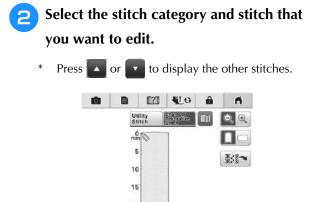


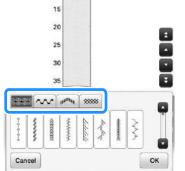




â ñ

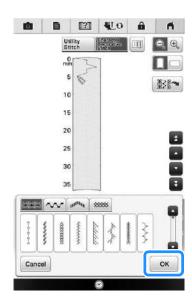
⊖. ⊕,





 $\rightarrow$  Selected stitch is displayed in the grid sheet.





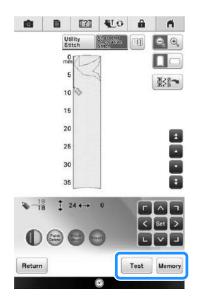
 $\rightarrow$  Edit the stitch as you like.

# **USING STORED CUSTOM STITCHES**

## **Storing Custom Stitches in Your** List

Stitch patterns created using the MY CUSTOM STITCH function can be stored for later use. Once you finish entering the stitch data, press Memory ,and choose where to save data. The "Saving ... " message appears and the stitch will be stored.

Before storing a stitch, press Test to sew a testrun of the stitch.



#### Memo

- Storing a stitch pattern takes a few seconds.
- · For details on retrieving a stored stitch pattern, see page 206.

#### Note

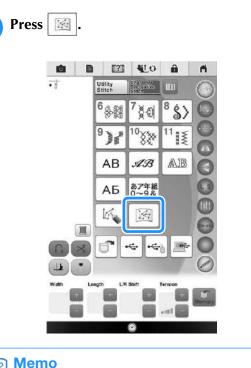
Do not turn off the machine while the "Saving..." message is displayed, otherwise the stitch pattern data being saved may be lost.

## If the Memory is Full

If the following message appears after Memory is pressed, the stitch pattern cannot be stored because either the machine's memory is full or the stitch pattern being stored is larger than the amount of space available in the memory. To be able to store the stitch pattern in the machine's memory, a previously stored stitch pattern must be deleted. Refer to "Retrieving Stored Stitches" on page 206.



# **Retrieving Stored Stitches**



#### Memo

You can also retrieve the stitches by the procedure to retrieve the Decorative/ Character stitches. Refer to the page 192 to 194.



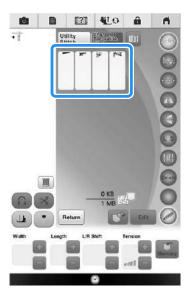
Select the device to retrieve the pattern from.





#### Select the stitch pattern.

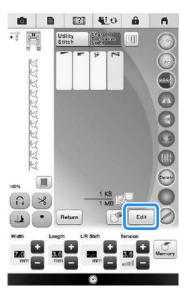
\* Press Return to return to the previous screen without retrieving.





Press **Edit** to start editing the pattern.

- \* To delete the stored stitch pattern, press [?.
- \* You can start sewing in this screen.



MY CUSTOM STITCH

# Chapter **6** Basic Embroidery

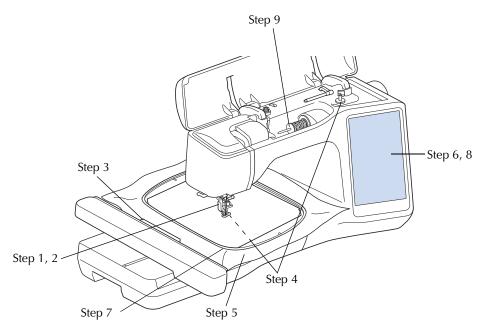
BEFORE EMBROIDERING 210
Embroidery Step by Step210
Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer
Attaching the Embroidery Unit
About the Embroidery Unit
Removing the Embroidery Unit
SELECTING PATTERNS 214
Copyright Information
Pattern Selection Screens
Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Decorative Alphabet Patterns/
Utility Embroidery Patterns/Bobbin Work Patterns216
Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns217
Selecting Frame Patterns219
Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards
About Embroidery Card Reader (Sold Separately) and
USB Card Writer Module*219
About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)
Recalling from USB Media221
Recalling from the Computer222
EDITING PATTERNS 224
Key Functions
Previewing the Pattern226
Moving the Pattern226
Rotating the Pattern
Changing the Size of the Pattern
■ Changing the Size and the Density of the Pattern
Changing the Size by Dragging
Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image
Changing Font Type230
Editing Letters (Size/Font Type)230
Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame
Patterns Only)231
Changing the Colors of Alphabet Character Patterns
Changing the Configuration of Alphabet Character Patterns233
Deleting the Pattern
Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified
<ul> <li>Selecting the Percent of Magnification</li></ul>
Changing Alphabet Character Spacing
Separating Combined Character Patterns
Changing the Thread Color
Creating a Custom Thread Table
■ Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List 238
<ul> <li>Adding a Color to the Custom Thread Table from the List</li></ul>
<ul> <li>Recalling the Custom Thread Table data from USB media 239</li> </ul>
Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table
Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function241
Designing Repeated Patterns243
Sewing Repeated Patterns
Repeating One Element of a Repeated Pattern
Color Sorting Repeated Patterns246
Assigning Thread Marks
Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly247
Duplicating a Pattern249
After Editing249
VIEWING THE EMBROIDERY SCREEN 250
Key Functions 251

COMBINING PATTERNS252
Editing Combined Patterns
PREPARING THE FABRIC256
Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric
Types of Linkolety Planes
Embroidering Small Fabrics
ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME261
Removing the Embroidery Frame
Checking the Needle Drop Point With the Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED Pointer
Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position 266 Specifying the Embroidering Position With the Sensor Pen 268 Selecting the Embroidering Position by the Pattern Edge269 Selecting the Embroidering Position by the Pattern Center270 Checking the Pattern Position
EMBROIDERING AN PATTERN273
Embroidering Attractive Finishes
<ul> <li>When Not Comp the Spool stand LLD</li></ul>
ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS
If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread       280         If the Thread Breaks During Sewing       281         Restarting from the Beginning       282         Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power       282

# **BEFORE EMBROIDERING**

# **Embroidery Step by Step**

Follow the steps below to prepare the machine for embroidery.



Step #	Aim	Action	Page
1	Presser foot attachment	Attach embroidery foot "W+".	211
2	Checking the needle	Use needle 75/11 for embroidery. *	77
3	Embroidery unit attachment	Attach the embroidery unit.	211
4	Bobbin thread setup	For the bobbin thread, wind embroidery bobbin thread and set it in place.	54
5	Fabric preparation	Attach a stabilizer material to the fabric, and hoop it in the embroidery frame.	256
6	Pattern selection	Turn the main power to ON, and select an embroidery pattern.	214
7	Embroidery frame attachment	Attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit.	261
8	Checking the layout	Check and adjust the size and position of the embroidery.	263
9	Embroidery thread setup	Set up embroidery thread according to the pattern.	62

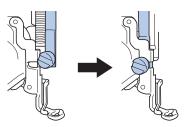
\* It is recommended that a 90/14 needle should be used when embroidering on heavy weight fabrics or stabilizing products (for example; denim, puffy foam, etc.). Ball point needle (golden colored) 90/14 is not recommended for embroidery.

# Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer

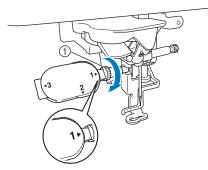
# 

- When attaching a presser foot, always press where a presser foot, always press where a press on the screen. You may accidentally press the "Start/Stop" button and possibly cause injury.
- Be sure to use embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer or "W" (optional) when doing embroidery. Using another presser foot may cause the needle to strike the presser foot, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury.
- Remove the presser foot and presser foot holder. For details, refer to "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 70.
- Position the embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer on the presser foot bar by aligning the notch of the presser foot to the large screw.

Side view



Biggin Boost and the embroidery foot in place with your right hand, and then use the included multi-purpose screwdriver to securely tighten the presser foot holder screw.

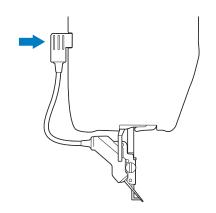


① Presser foot holder screw

# **A** CAUTION

- Use the included multi-purpose screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw of the presser foot holder. If the screw is loose, the needle may strike the presser foot and possibly cause injury.
- Plug the connector of the embroidery foot

"W+" with LED pointer into the jack on the back left side of your machine.



## 5 P

Press 💵 to unlock all keys and buttons.

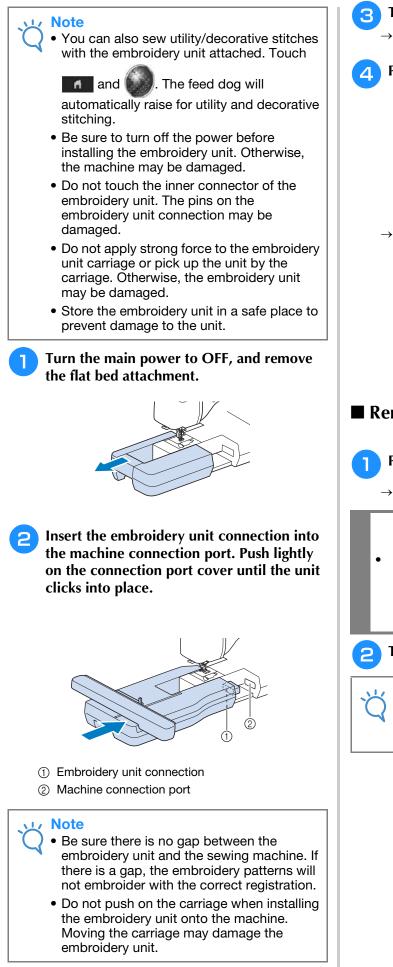
→ All keys and operation buttons are unlocked, and the previous screen is displayed.

# Attaching the Embroidery Unit

About the Embroidery Unit

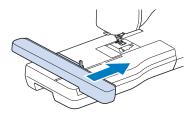
# **A** CAUTION

- Do not move the machine with the embroidery unit attached. The embroidery unit could fall off and cause injury.
- Keep your hands and foreign objects away from the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering. Otherwise, injury may result.
- To avoid distorting your embroidery design, do not touch the embroidery carriage and frame when the machine is embroidering.



Turn the main power to ON.
 → The following message will appear.
 Press OK.

 $\rightarrow$  The carriage will move to the initialization position.



## **Removing the Embroidery Unit**

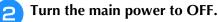


 $\rightarrow$  The carriage will move to the removal position.

# A CAUTION

• Always remove the embroidery frame before

pressing **Head**. Otherwise, the frame may strike the embroidery foot, and possibly cause injury.

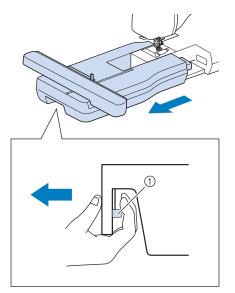


#### Note

• Be sure to turn off the machine before removing the embroidery unit, otherwise damage to the machine may result.



Press the release button, and pull the embroidery unit away from the machine.



① Release button



# **SELECTING PATTERNS**

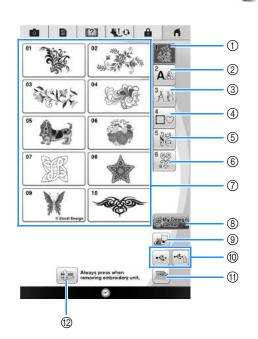
## **Copyright Information**

The patterns stored in the machine and patterns sold separately are intended for private use only. Any public or commercial use of copyrighted patterns is an infringement of copyright law and is strictly prohibited. There are many character and decorative embroidery patterns stored in the machine's memory (see the "QUICK REFERENCE GUIDE" for a full summary of patterns in the machine's memory). You can also use patterns sold separately.

Once the machine has finished the initialization and the carriage has moved to the start position, the pattern selection screen will display.

If another screen is displayed, press **m**, then

to display the screen below.



- ① Embroidery patterns
- ② Character patterns
- ③ Decorative alphabet patterns
- ④ Frame patterns
- 5 Utility embroidery patterns
- 6 Bobbin work patterns (see page 381)
- ⑦ Pattern type selection keys
- (8) My Design Center (see page 338)
- ③ Patterns saved in the machine's memory (see page 315)
- 1 Patterns saved in USB media (see page 221)
- (f) Patterns saved on the computer (see page 222)
- Press this key to position the embroidery unit for storage

## ■ Pattern Selection Screens

There are 6 categories of patterns in this machine.



#### **Embroidery patterns**





#### Alphabet characters

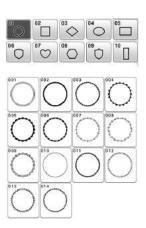
ABC		ABC
<sup>04</sup> ABC	ABC	06 A.BC
"ABC	ABC	ABC
<sup>10</sup> ABC	"ABC	ABC
<sup>13</sup> ABC	<sup>14</sup> ABC	ABG
16 ABCDE	ABCDE	
АБВ	<sup>19</sup> АБВ	
20 あいう	<sup>21</sup> あいう	22 あいう



## <sup>3</sup>AB Decorative alphabet patterns

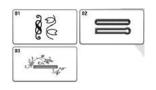


Frame patterns

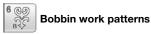


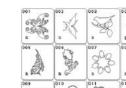


#### Utility embroidery patterns



# 6

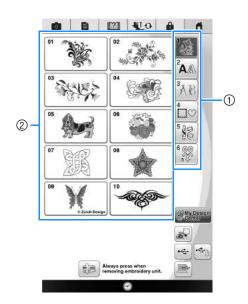






## Selecting Embroidery Patterns/ Decorative Alphabet Patterns/ Utility Embroidery Patterns/ Bobbin Work Patterns

- Press the category tab and then press the pattern type selection key or pattern key you want to embroider.
  - \* Refer to "How to Create Bobbin Work" on page 371 about the bobbin work embroidery.



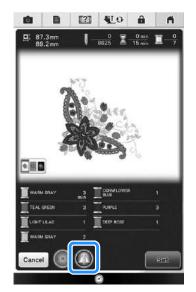
- ① Pattern category tab
- ② Pattern type/pattern selection key
- Press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.



- \* Press the category tab to return to the previous screen.
- $\rightarrow$  The selected pattern is displayed.

# **3** Press **1** to create a mirror image of the pattern as needed.

 If a mistake has been made when selecting the pattern, press Cancel to return to the previous screen, and select the pattern you want to embroider.



 Press res to darken the screen background for the pattern with bright thread colors, to get a clearer image.

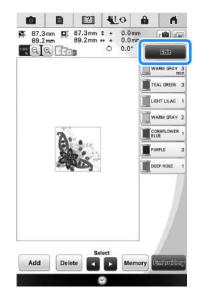


#### so or touch the selected pattern.

- → The pattern selected is outlined in red on the "Edit" display.
- Press

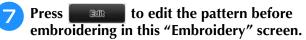
#### to edit the selected pattern.

 Refer to "EDITING PATTERNS" on page 224 about the "Edit" display.

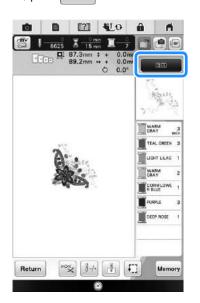




 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering screen is displayed.



- \* Refer to "VIEWING THE EMBROIDERY SCREEN" on page 250.
- \* To return to the previous screen to select another pattern, press Return.



Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.

\* See "Embroidering Patterns" on page 274.

## Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns

**Example:** Entering "Blue Sky".



Press the key of the font you want to embroider.

ABC		ABC
<sup>04</sup> ABC	ABC	06 ABC
"ABC	ABC	<sup>₀</sup> ABC
<sup>10</sup> ABC	"ABC	ABC
<sup>13</sup> ABC	<sup>14</sup> ABC	<sup>15</sup> ABG
ABCDE	ABCDE	
<sup>18</sup> АБВ	<sup>19</sup> АБВ	
ゐいう	<sup>21</sup> あいう	22 あいう



Press the tab to select a character type.

Delut	Ħ	G	Ŧ	Æ	₽	C	₿	я
1.01	P	0	N	M	1	K	1	1
+	x	W	V	U	τ	5	R	Q)
		-					Z	5



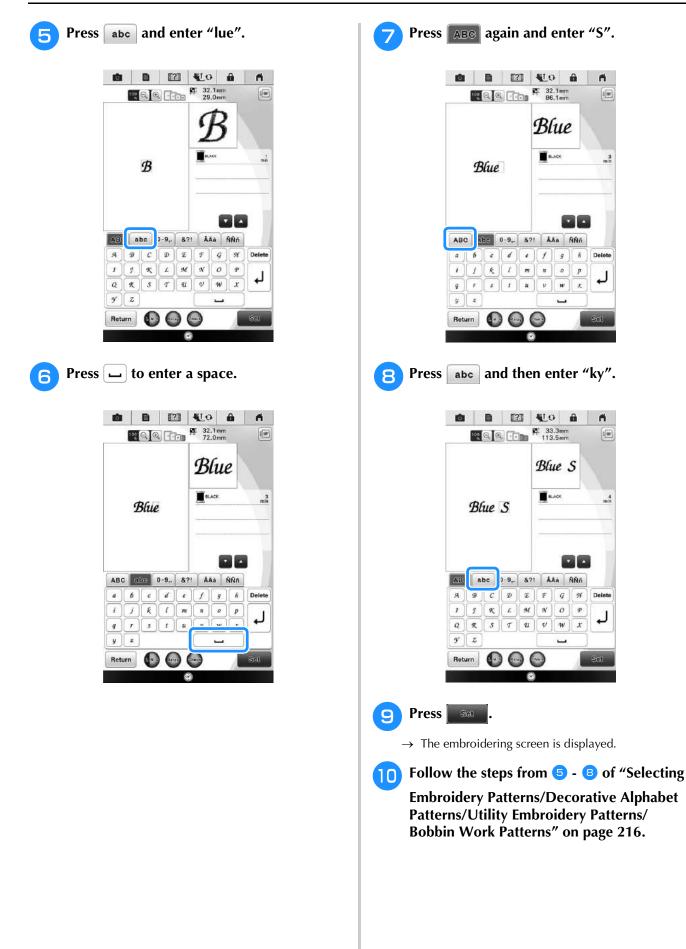
#### Press ABC and then enter "B".

If you want to change the size of a character, select the character and then press to change the size. The size changes each time you press the key, from large to medium to small.

- \* If you make a mistake, press Delete to erase the mistake.
- If the pattern is too small to see clearly, you can use the book key to check it.

## Memo

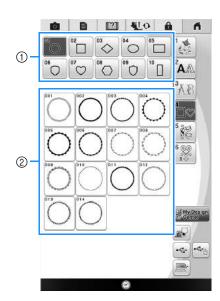
- If you continue adding characters after changing the size, the new characters will be entered in the new size.
- You cannot change the size of the entered characters after combining character stitch patterns.



### **Selecting Frame Patterns**



Press the key of the frame shape you want to embroider in the top part of the screen.

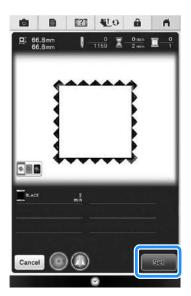


- ① Frame shapes
- ② Frame patterns
- → Various frame patterns are displayed at the bottom part of the screen.

## Press the key of the frame pattern you want to embroider.

- \* If you make a mistake selecting the pattern, press the key of the pattern you want to embroider.
- $\rightarrow$  The selected pattern is displayed on the screen.

## A Press Sa .



 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering screen is displayed.

5 Follow the steps from **5** to **8** of "Selecting Embroidery Patterns/Decorative Alphabet Patterns/Utility Embroidery Patterns/ Bobbin Work Patterns" on page 216.

## Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards

### About Embroidery Card Reader (Sold Separately) and USB Card Writer Module\*

- Use only an embroidery card reader designed for this machine. Using an unauthorized embroidery card reader may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
  - If you have purchased the PE-DESIGN Ver5 or later, PE-DESIGN NEXT, PE-DESIGN Lite, PED-BASIC or PE-DESIGN PLUS, you can plug the included USB card writer module into the machine as an embroidery card reader, and recall patterns.

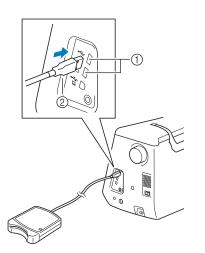
#### レ Note

 Embroidery patterns cannot be saved from the machine to an embroidery card inserted into a connected USB card writer module\*.

# About Embroidery Cards (Sold Separately)

- Use only embroidery cards manufactured for this machine. Using unauthorized cards may cause your machine to operate incorrectly.
- Embroidery cards sold in foreign countries cannot be used with this machine.
- Store embroidery cards in the hard case.

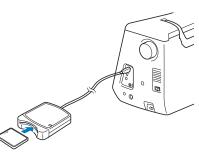
Plug the optional embroidery card reader/ USB card writer module into the USB port on the machine.



- ① USB port
- ② Embroidery card reader/USB card writer module

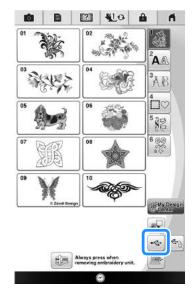
# Insert the card completely into the card reader/USB card writer module.

\* Insert the embroidery card so that the end with a printed arrow is facing up.



#### 🗸 Note

• Two embroidery USB card readers/USB card writer modules cannot be used with this machine at the same time. If two embroidery USB card readers/USB card writer module are inserted, only the embroidery USB card reader/USB card writer module inserted first is detected. 3 Press ح



- → The patterns on the embroidery card are displayed on the selection screen.
- **Press the key of the pattern you want to recall.** 
  - \* Press Return to return to the original screen.



## **Recalling from USB Media**

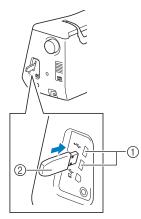
You can recall a specific embroidery pattern from either direct USB media or a folder in the USB media. If the pattern is in a folder, check each folder to find the embroidery pattern.

#### 🟒 Note

• The processing speed may vary by quantity of data.



Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.



① USB port

② USB media

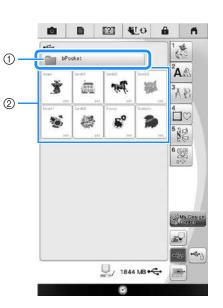


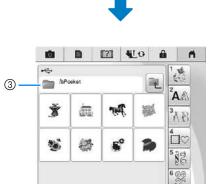


→ Embroidery patterns and a folder in a top folder are displayed.

3 Press 🔳 when there is a subfolder to sort

two or more stitch patterns to USB media, the embroidery pattern in the subfolder is displayed.





- ① Folder name
- 2 Embroidery patterns in USB media
- ③ Path
- \* The path to show the current folder at the top of the list.

Embroidery patterns and subfolders within a folder are displayed.

- \* Press 📃 to return to the previous folder.
- \* Use the computer to create folders. Folders cannot be created with the machine.
- Press the key of the pattern you want to retrieve.
  - \* Press Cancel to return to the original screen.



\* Press Delete to delete the pattern from the USB media.



 $\rightarrow$  The Embroidery Edit screen is displayed.

## **Recalling from the Computer**

Refer to "Connecting Your Machine to the PC" on page 312 for the available computer operating systems.

- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine (see page 314).
  - On the computer, open "Computer (My Computer)" then go to "Removable Disk".



3 Move/copy the pattern data to "Removable Disk".

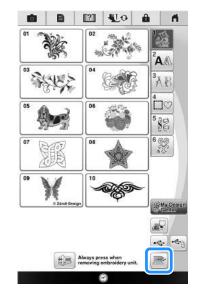
Cogarilae * Share with * New Mider	a × 11
Sill Favorites Sill Lösseles	This folder is analy-
/# Congodin Ay Notasih	
	( Copy to Removable Disk (G )

→ Pattern data in "Removable Disk" is written to the machine.

#### ي Note

- While data is being written, do not disconnect the USB cable.
- Do not create folders within "Removable Disk". Since folders are not displayed, stitch pattern data within folders cannot be recalled.

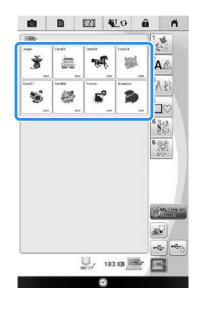




→ The patterns in the computer are displayed on the selection screen.



Press the key of the pattern you want to recall.

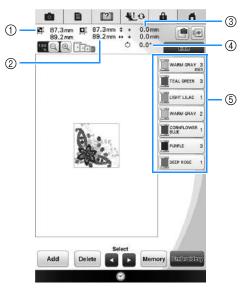


- 6 Press So
  - \* Press **Delete** to delete the pattern from the computer.



 $\rightarrow~$  The Embroidery Edit screen is displayed.

## **EDITING PATTERNS**



- ) Shows the size of the entire combined pattern.
- O Shows the size of the pattern currently selected.
- 3 Shows the distance from the center of the frame.
- 3 Shows the degree of rotation for the pattern.
- (5) Shows the color sequence and stitching times of each step of the pattern currently selected.

### Memo

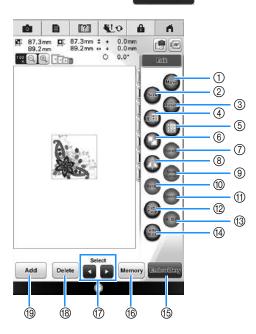
• If a key display is darkened, you cannot use that function with the selected pattern.

## **Key Functions**

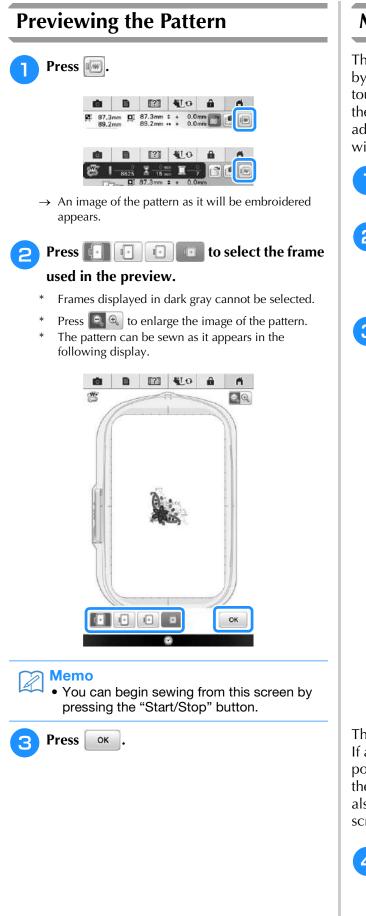
Using these keys, you can edit the pattern as you like. Press

Edit

to display the editing window.



No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1	Move	Move key	Press to display the pattern moving window.	226
2	Size	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the pattern. Patterns can be enlarged or reduced.	228
3	Rotato	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern one degree, ten degrees or ninety degrees at a time.	227
4		Thread palette key	Press this key to change the colors of the displayed pattern.	236
5	0	Border key	Press this key to make and edit a repeating pattern.	243
6	0	Duplicate key	Press this key to duplicate a pattern.	249
0	Density	Density key	Press this key to change the density of frame patterns or character patterns.	231
8		Horizontal mirror image key	Press this key to make a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.	229
9	Mult	Multi color key	Press this key to change the color of individual characters in a pattern.	232
10	Array	Array key	Press this key to change the configuration of a character pattern.	233
1	Spacing	Character spacing key	Press this key to change the spacing of character patterns.	235
12	Font Lypp	Font Type key	Press to change the font type after entering all the characters.	230
13	ABC	Separate key	Press to display the pattern separate window. You can separate the combined character patterns to adjust the spacing or edit separately afterwards.	235
14	Letter	Letter Edit key	Press to edit characters after entering all. You can change the size or font type.	230
15	Embreideny	Embroidery key	Press this key to call up the embroidering screen.	249
16	Memory	Memory key	Press this key to save a pattern in the machine's memory, USB media or a computer.	313, 314
17	Select	Pattern select key	When a combined pattern is selected, use these keys to select a part of the pattern to edit.	254
18	Delete	Delete key	Press this key to delete the selected pattern (the pattern outlined by the red box).	233
19	Add	Add key	Press this key to add another pattern to the editing pattern.	249



## **Moving the Pattern**

The pattern can be moved to the desired position by dragging on the screen using your finger, the touch pen or connected mouse without displaying the editing window. If you need some fine adjustment, move the pattern from the editing window.

window.

Press **mathefactory** to display the pattern move

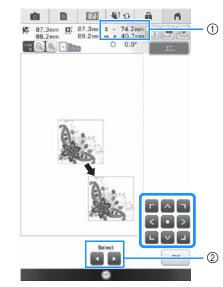


Select the desired pattern by pressing

, if there are several patterns on the screen.

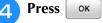
Use **S D b** to move the pattern in the З LVJ

direction shown by the arrow. Press 💽 to center the pattern.



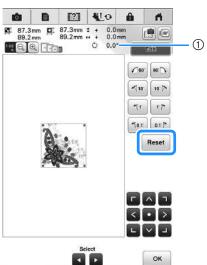
- ① Distance from the center
- (2) Pattern select key

The pattern can also be moved by dragging it. If a USB mouse is connected, move the mouse to position the pointer on the desired pattern, and then select and drag the pattern. The pattern can also be dragged by selecting it directly in the screen with your finger or the touch pen.

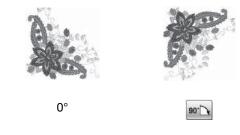


## **Rotating the Pattern** Press Ret 10 6 [?] 101 1 87.3mm ☐ 87.3mm ± + 0.0mm 89.2mm 89.2mm ↔ + 0.0mm 0.0" 0.0" Add Delete -. Select the angle of rotation for the pattern. € 90° Rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the left. Rotate the pattern 90 degrees to the right. 90° Z Rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left. 10' Rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right. 10.74 Rotate the pattern 1 degree to the left. 11 Rotate the pattern 1 degree to the right. 1. 10.1 Rotate the pattern 0.1 degree to the left. Rotate the pattern 0.1 degree to the right. 0.1 Press 3

Press Reset to return the pattern to its original position.



① Degree of rotation

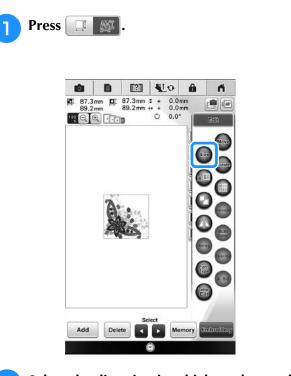




- You can rotate the pattern by rotating the mouse wheel. Rotate the mouse wheel away from you to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the left. Rotate the mouse wheel toward you to rotate the pattern 10 degrees to the right.
- • You can move patterns using S S on L V J the window.

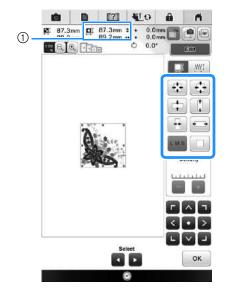
OK

## Changing the Size of the Pattern

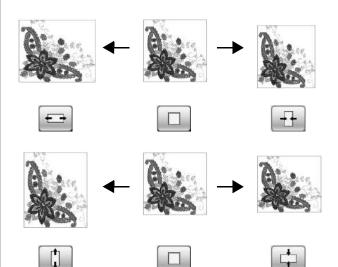


Select the direction in which to change the size.

E++	Enlarge the pattern proportionately.
- <b>‡</b> -	Decrease the pattern proportionately.
€⇒	Stretch the pattern horizontally.
	Decrease the pattern horizontally.
	Stretch the pattern vertically.
	Decrease the pattern vertically.
	Return the pattern to its original appearance.



① Size of the pattern



### Memo

- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged more than others.
- Some patterns or characters can be enlarged to a greater degree if they are rotated 90 degrees.
- You can change the size of the pattern by rotating the mouse wheel. Rotate the mouse wheel away from you to shrink the pattern. Rotate the mouse wheel toward you to enlarge the pattern.
- You can move patterns using
   > on
   > the window.

З Press ок

## Changing the Size and the Density of the Pattern

You can change the pattern size while maintaining the desired thread density. The machine recalculates the stitch density automatically. With this function, the pattern will be enlarged or reduced at a larger ratio than with normal pattern resizing.

#### Vie Note

- Be sure to sew trial embroidery using same fabric and threads as project in order to check the sewing results.
- This function cannot be used with alphabet character patterns, frame patterns or border patterns. However, a border pattern can be edited after this function has been used.
- Patterns with a large number of stitches (about 100,001 or more) cannot be resized while maintaining a desired thread density. The maximum limit for the number of stitches differs depending on the data size of pattern.

#### Press

2

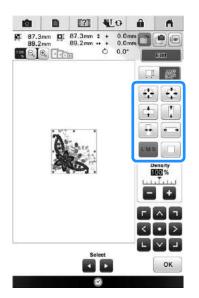
#### in the size window.

- \* Press **Press**: When changing the size, the pattern keeps the original density.
- \* Press Press : When you want to increase or decrease the density of the design.

#### Change the density.

- \* Press 📕 to make the pattern less dense.
- Press I to make the pattern more dense.

# Select the direction in which to change the size.



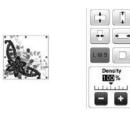


#### <sub>と</sub> Note

- If the pattern is enlarged and there is space between stitches, a better effect can be achieved by increasing the thread density.
- If the pattern is reduced and the stitching is too thick, a better effect can be achieved by reducing the thread density.

## ■ Changing the Size by Dragging

You can also change the pattern size by dragging the red point on the pattern image using your finger, touch pen or connected mouse.



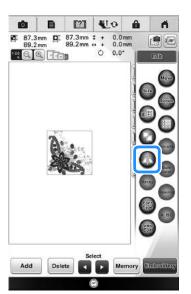
#### Note

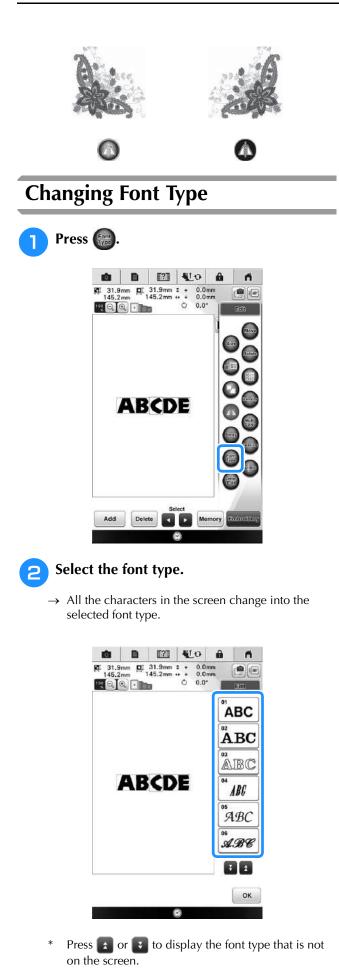
 You can change the pattern size with one finger. Using two or more fingers does not work.

## Creating a Horizontal Mirror Image

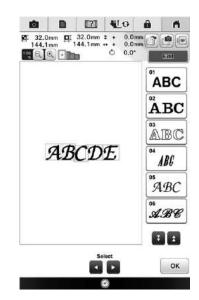
Press 🔊 so it appears as 🕥 to create a horizontal mirror image of the selected pattern.

Press 🕼 again to return the pattern to normal.

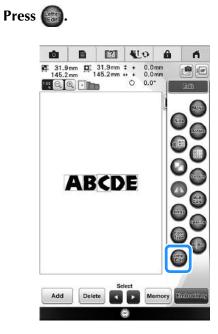




- Press OK . З
  - $\rightarrow$  The new font is selected.



## **Editing Letters (Size/Font Type)**





2

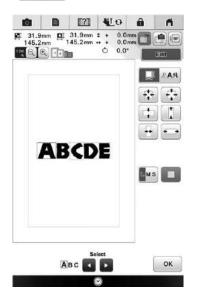
1

Select a letter you want to edit by pressing 💽 or 💽.



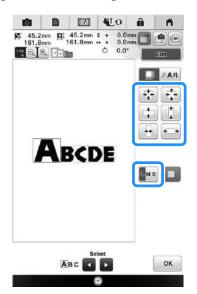
#### Change the size of letters.

- $\rightarrow$  Selected letter will be resized.
- \* Press 🔲 🌆 if the resize keys are not displayed.

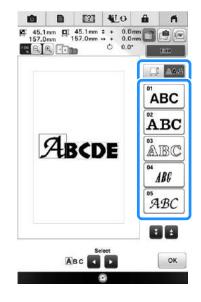


# Select the direction in which to change the size, or press .

→ Refer to "Changing the Size of the Pattern" on page 228 about selecting the direction.



- **5** Press **1** As to change font type, and then select the font type.
  - $\rightarrow$  Selected letter's font type will be changed.

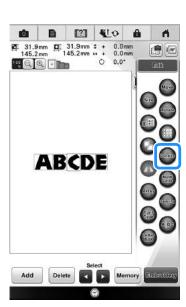


6 Press ок

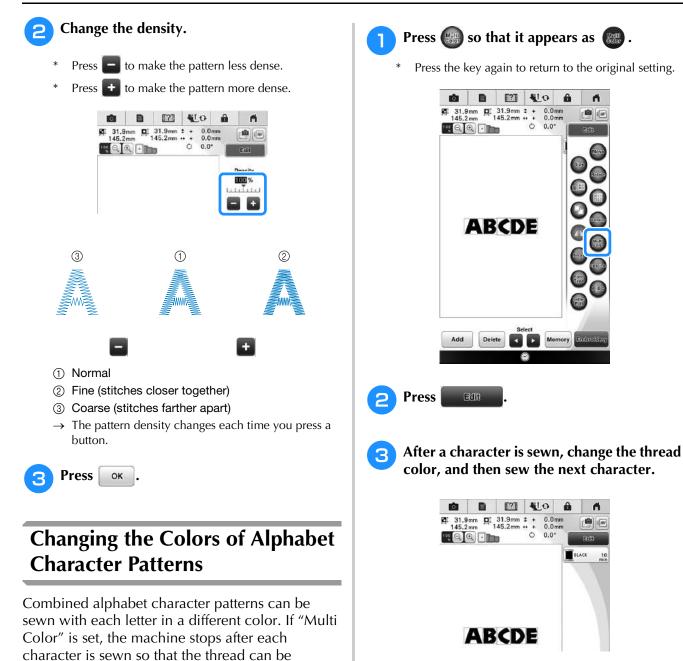
## Changing the Density (Alphabet Character and Frame Patterns Only)

The thread density for some alphabet character and frame patterns can be changed. A setting between 80% and 120% in 5% increments can be specified.

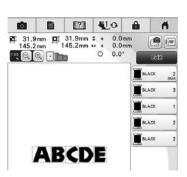


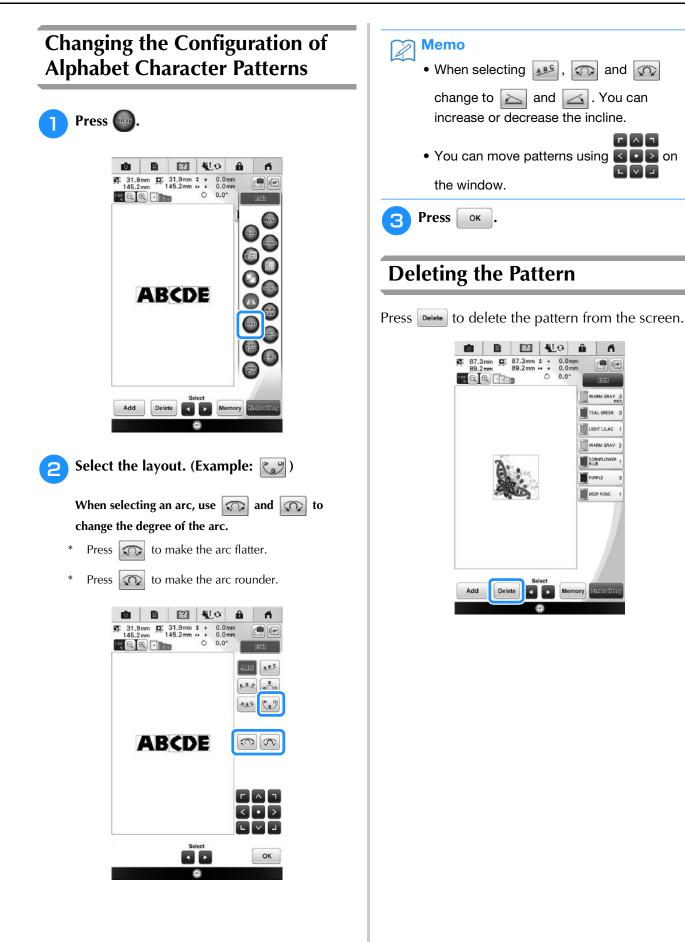


changed to a different color.









Basic Embroidery

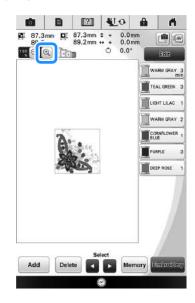
## Displaying Patterns in the Screen Magnified



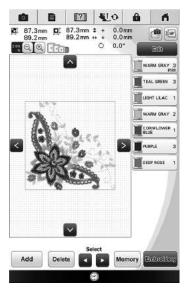
2

Press 🗟 to magnify the image.

The image is magnified by 125%, 150% and 200% as you press 🔍.



### Check the displayed pattern.

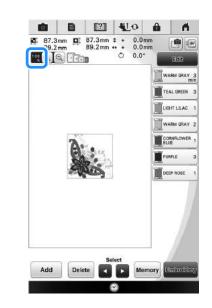


 $\rightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  to scroll through the display in any direction.

Press 🗟 to return the pattern image to the normal size (100%).

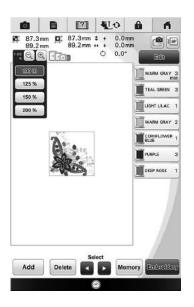
### Selecting the Percent of Magnification







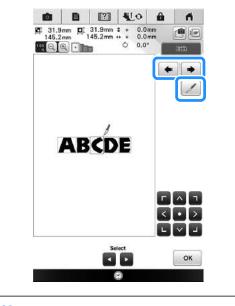
Press the percent of magnification you desire.



#### **Changing Alphabet Character** Memo A Spacing • You can move patterns using S S on V J the window. Press . Press OK ń. Note It is not recommended to edit data and transfer to other or older version machines. Some features do not apply in other machines, so problems may occur. ABCDE Character spacing can be reduced only when characters are arranged normally on a straight line. Memo • The spacing between characters can be reduced to 50% of the narrowest character Delete Add in the group. Select the spacing. **Separating Combined Character Patterns** Press **+ABC+** to increase the character spacing. Press **\*ABC\*** to decrease the character spacing. Combined character patterns can be separated to adjust the character spacing or to separately edit Press **ABC** to return the pattern to its original the patterns after all characters have been entered. appearance. Press ñ 21 31.9mm 2 31.9mm + 0.0mm 145.2mm 145.2mm + 0.0mm 100 • • 0.0mm [?] **1**0 A ń 2 31.9mm □ 31.9mm ± + 0.0mm 145.2mm 145.2mm ↔ + 0.0mm O 0.0\* ABC+ +ABC 14 Q Q 🖓 🖿 🖿 🖿 ABCDE ABC ABCDE • > OK Delete Add Memory A B C D E $\leftrightarrow$ ABCDE +<u>ABC</u>+ +ABC+

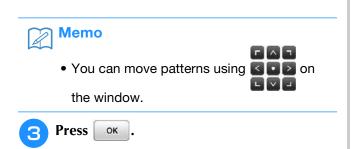
6

2 Use ← → to select where the pattern is to be separated, and then press ✓ to separate it. For this example, the pattern will be separated between "C" and "D".



#### V Note

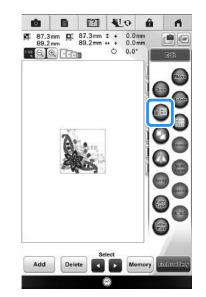
• A separated character pattern cannot be combined again.



## **Changing the Thread Color**

You can change the thread color by moving the color to be changed to the top of the sewing order and selecting a new color from the thread colors in the machine.

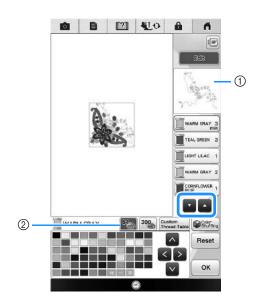




 $\rightarrow$  The thread color palette screen displays.

# Press the thread color key you want to change.

- \* Press The to display the thread color that is not on the screen.
- $\rightarrow$  The selected thread color image is displayed.



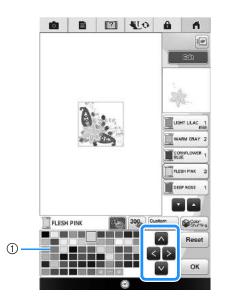
1 Selected thread color image

② 64 Embroidery thread color table



## Press 🔼 💟 💟 or color tip to choose a new color from the color palette.

\* To return to the original color, press Reset. If multiple colors have been changed, this command will return all colors to their original colors.



#### ① Color palette

- → The selected color appears at the top of the sewing order.
- $\rightarrow\,$  The display shows the changed colors.



#### Memo

• To select a color from the Custom Thread Table, "Choosing a Color from the Custom Thread Table" on page 240.

## **Creating a Custom Thread Table**

You can create a custom thread table containing the thread colors that you most often use by selecting thread colors from the machine's extensive list of thread colors from nine different thread brands. You can select any color and move the color to your custom thread table.

#### Vie Note

 Some machines may already have an additional 300 Robison-Anton thread colors contained in the custom thread table. 300 Robison-Anton thread colors table data can be downloaded from our website "<u>http://support.brother.com</u>". Press 💷 and then press Custom Thread Table.



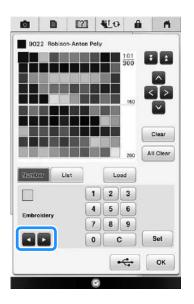
# Use 🔼 🔇 🔰 💟 or press directly to choose where to add a color on the custom thread table.

You can scroll through 100 colors at a time using
 and I on the custom thread table.

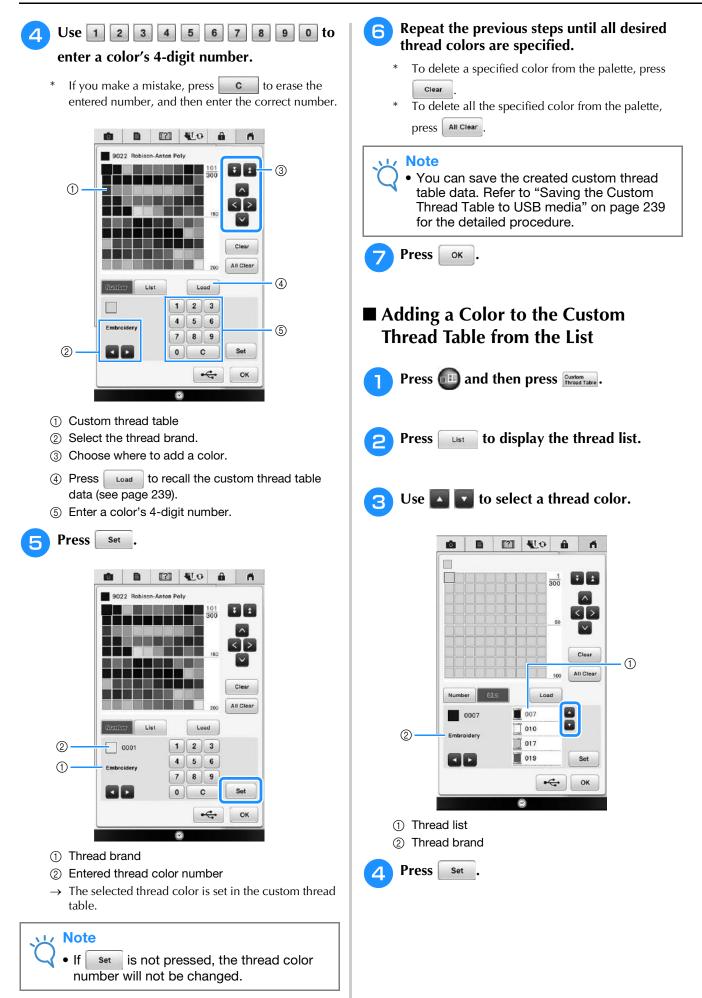
### Use 🖪 💽 to select one of the thread

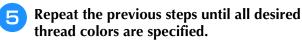
3

brands in the machine.



6



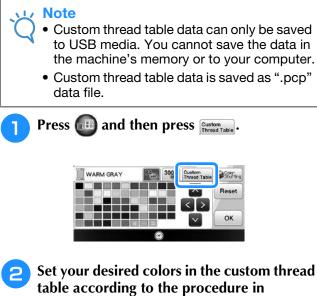


- \* To delete a specified color from the palette, press
- To delete all the specified color from the palette, press All Clear.

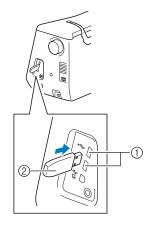


# ■ Saving the Custom Thread Table to USB media

You can save a custom thread table data file to USB media.



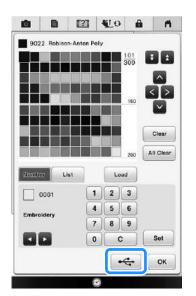
- table according to the procedure in "Creating a Custom Thread Table" on page 237.
- **3** Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.



① USB port

② USB media

Press 😽



→ Select the USB port, and then the "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the data is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### Note

• Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the data you are saving.

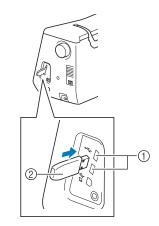
## Recalling the Custom Thread Table data from USB media

You can recall a custom thread table data from USB media.

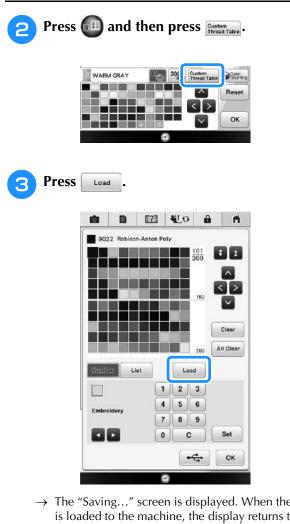
#### V Note

• Do not store two or more ".pcp" data file in USB media. You can only recall one custom thread table data at a time.

# Insert the USB media containing the custom thread table data into the USB port.



USB port
 USB media



 $\rightarrow$  The "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the data is loaded to the machine, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### Note

Λ

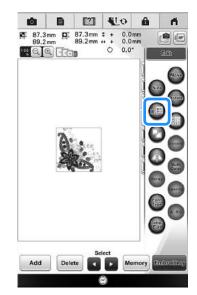
 Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the data you are saving.

```
The recalled custom thread table is
displayed on the screen.
```

## Choosing a Color from the **Custom Thread Table**

You can select a color from the up to 300 thread colors you have set in the custom thread table.

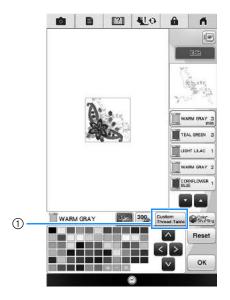




 $\rightarrow$  The thread color palette screen displays.

#### Press the thread color key you want to change.

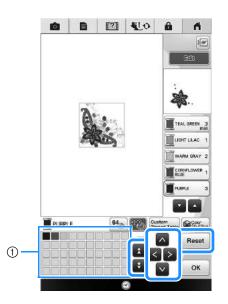
- Press **I** to display the thread color that is not on the screen.
- $\rightarrow$  The selected thread color image is displayed.
- Press 300 З



- ① Custom thread change key
- $\rightarrow$  The custom thread table will appear.



- \* Use 🛃 and 💽 to scroll through the custom thread table.
- \* Press Reset to return to the original color.
- \* You can choose colors from the custom thread table by directly touching the screen with the touch pen or your finger.



① Custom thread table

 $\rightarrow$  The display shows the changed colors.

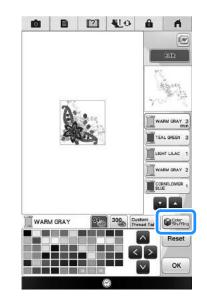
5 Press ок

# Find New Color Schemes With the Color Shuffling Function

With the color shuffling function, the machine suggests new color schemes for the embroidery pattern that you have selected. After you select the desired effect from the four available ("Random", "Vivid", "Gradient" and "Soft"), sample color schemes for the selected effect are displayed.



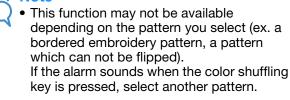




 $\rightarrow$  The color shuffling screen appears.

#### 🗤 Note

3



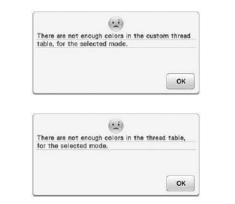
## Select the color table and the number of colors you want to create the pattern with.



- ① Thread table (64 colors)
- ② Custom thread table (300 colors)
- ③ Number of colors to be used.

#### 🗸 Note

- Selection for the desired number of colors must stay within the range for the number of thread changes for the pattern you selected.
- If an error message appears in this step, refer to page 405.



• If you have not set any color in the custom thread table, the color shuffling key will be grayed out. In that case, use the thread table (64 colors) instead or set some colors in the custom thread table. Refer to "Creating a Custom Thread Table" on page 237 for the detail.

Select the number of colors you want to use and then select the desired effect.



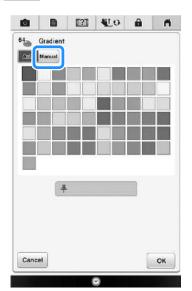
① Effects for schemes

4

- → If you select "Random" or "Gradient", the color specifying screen will appear.
- \* If you select "Vivid" or "Soft", proceed to step 6.

- **5** Press Manual and specify the thread color to use in the desired effect.
  - \* If you don't need to specify the thread color, just set

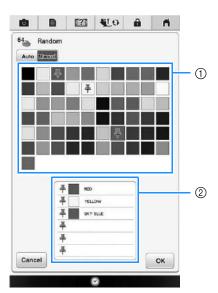




#### "Manual" setting for "Random"

You can select up to 6 colors to be used in the "Random" effect.

The effect will be created using the selected colors.



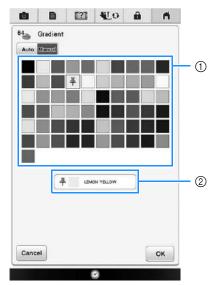
) Select colors from the pallet.

② Selected colors are listed.

#### "Manual" setting for "Gradient"

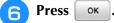
You can select one color to be used in the "Gradient" effect.

The effect will be created with a color you select.



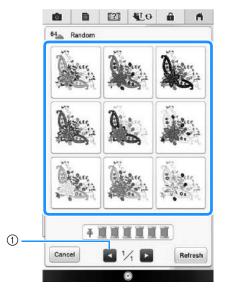
① Select a color from the pallet.

② Selected color is displayed.



**7** Press the desired color scheme from samples.

\* Press Refresh to display the new schemes.



① Press to review the previous schemes.

#### 🖵 Note

 Maximum 10 pages of schemes can be reviewed. After 10 pages of schemes, the oldest page is deleted every time you press
 Refresh.

# B Press set and then, select the displayed color scheme.

- \* Press OK to return to the previous screen.
- You can continue selecting color schemes from the selected page prior to pressing set.
- Press solution of the state of



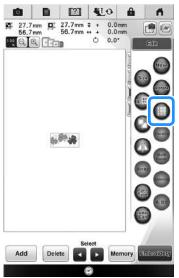
 $\rightarrow$  The thread color palette screen will appear.

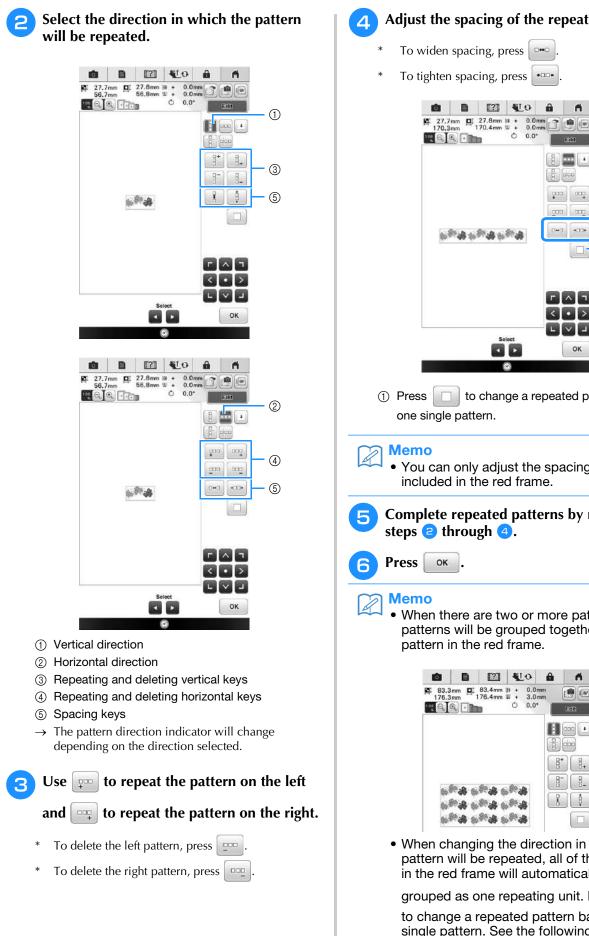
## **Designing Repeated Patterns**

## Sewing Repeated Patterns

Using the border function, you can create stitches using repeated patterns. You can also adjust the spacing of the patterns within a repeated pattern stitch.







#### Adjust the spacing of the repeated pattern.

.

O 0.0"

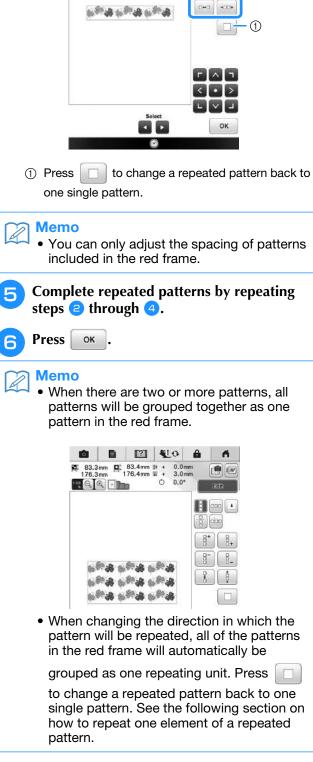
n

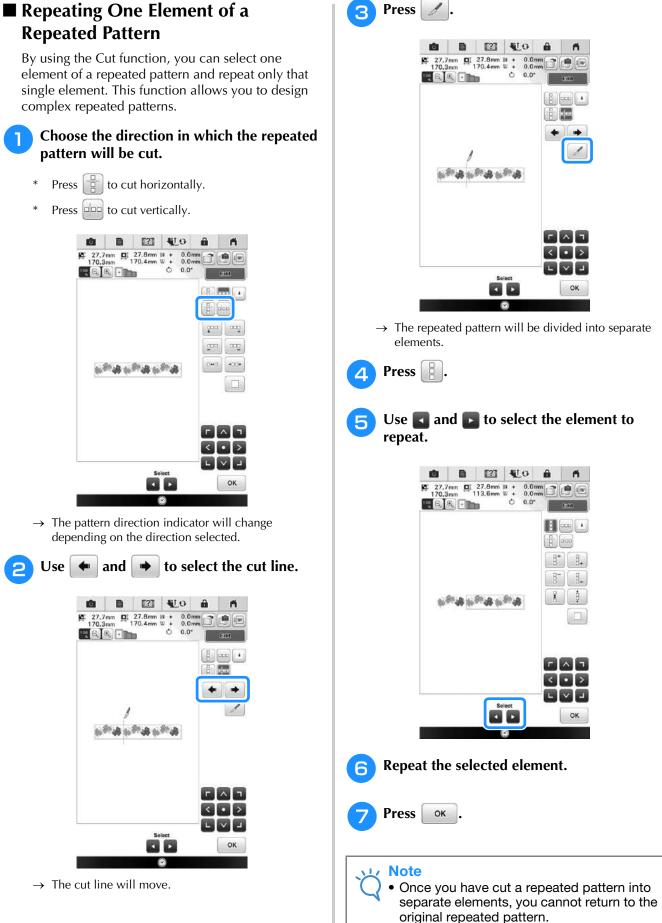
000 000

000 000

1

- To widen spacing, press
- To tighten spacing, press





• Each element can be edited separately in the edit screen. See "Selecting combined embroidery patterns" on page 254.

245

ŝ

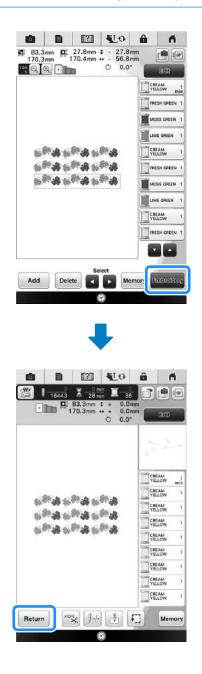
Basic Embroidery

## Color Sorting Repeated Patterns

Press Embradder to automatically change the sewing order of colors in combined border embroidery patterns so that the same color can be continuously sewn. This allows you to continue sewing without repeatedly changing the upper thread or changing the sewing order manually.

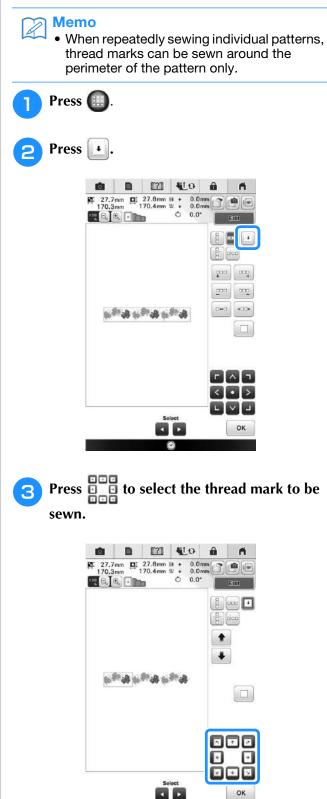
## Memo

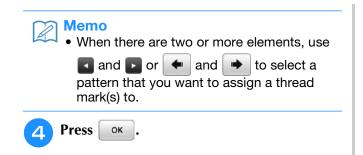
- In combined stitch patterns that contain two or more border patterns or other patterns combined with border patterns, the sewing order of only the border patterns is changed.
- When a group of two or more patterns using border patterns is repeated, the sewing order is changed so that the same color can be sewn continuously in each pattern.



## Assigning Thread Marks

By sewing thread marks, you can easily align patterns when sewing a series. When sewing is finished on a pattern, a thread mark in the shape of an arrow will be sewn using the final thread. When sewing a series of patterns, use the point of this arrow for positioning the following designs to be sewn.



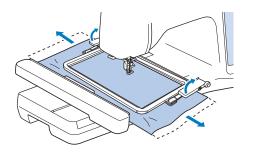


## Embroidering the Pattern Repeatedly

After creating the repeated pattern, rehoop the embroidery frame and keep sewing for the next pattern.

#### Memo

• The optional border frame allows you to easily rehoop the fabric without removing the embroidery frame from the machine.



# Select the boarder pattern with the thread mark at the center of the end of the pattern.

\* Refer to "Assigning Thread Marks" on page 246.



# Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.

→ When embroidering is finished, the thread mark is sewn with the last thread color.





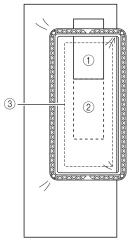
5

Remove the embroidery frame.

Rehoop the fabric in the embroidery frame.

#### Note

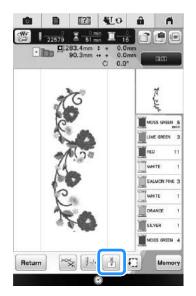
 Adjust the position of the fabric so that the embroidering area for the next pattern is within the embroidering area of the embroidery sheet.



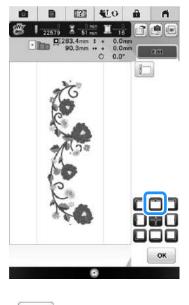
- ① Pattern embroidered first
- O Position of pattern to be embroidered next
- ③ Embroidering area of embroidery sheet

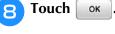


Attach the embroidery frame to the machine, and then touch **[1]**.



**7** Touch 🛅 to set the starting point to the center of the pattern.





Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.



Press 📖.



Press the positioning keys to move the embroidery frame until the thread mark on the fabric is aligned on the starting point in the camera view window.



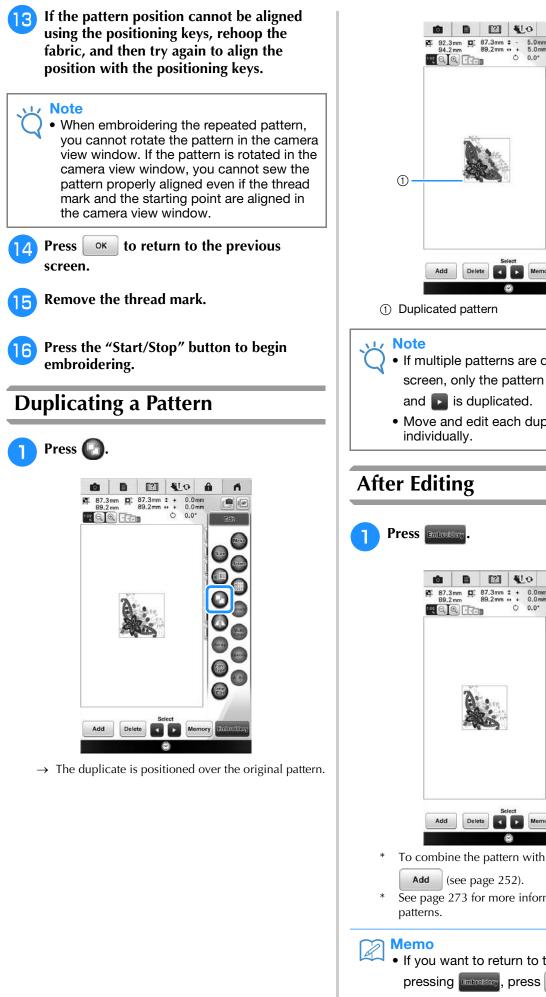
- ① Grid lines
- ② Thread mark on the fabric
- ③ Positioning keys

#### Memo

• Press 🔄 🔍 to enlarge the camera view. By enlarging the camera view, you can make a close adjustment for the needle drop position moving the embroidery frame little by little.

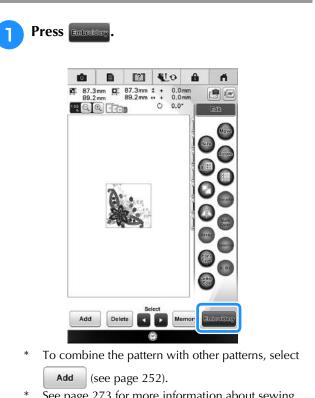
-

n.



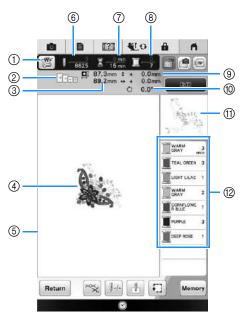
- P Memory • If multiple patterns are displayed in the screen, only the pattern selected using

Move and edit each duplicated pattern



- See page 273 for more information about sewing
- · If you want to return to the edit screen after pressing Embreddery, press Return

## **VIEWING THE EMBROIDERY SCREEN**



- ① Shows the presser foot code. Attach embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer or "W" (optional) for all embroidery projects. When the foot presser symbol is displayed on the screen, you are able to sew.
- ② Shows the embroidery frames that can be used for the selected pattern. Be sure to use the proper frame (see page 257).
- ③ Shows the size of the selected pattern.
- ④ Shows a preview of the selected pattern.
- (5) Shows the boundary for embroidering with the selected frame in the settings screen. (see page 306)
- ⑥ Shows how many stitches are in the selected pattern and how many stitches have been sewn so far.
- ⑦ Shows the time necessary to sew the pattern, and the time already spent sewing the pattern (not including time for changing and automatically trimming the thread).
- (a) Shows the number of colors in the selected pattern, and the number of the color currently being sewn.
- (9) Shows how far the sewing position is from the center (when you move the sewing position).
- (1) Shows the degree of rotation of the pattern.
- (f) Shows the part of the embroidery that will be sewn with the first thread color.
- 1 Shows the order for thread color changes and the embroidering time for each thread color.
- \* The displayed time is the approximate time that will be required. The actual embroidering time may be longer than the displayed time, depending on the embroidery frame that is used. In addition, the amount of time required to change thread colors is not included.

#### Note

• There is an explanation of additional key functions on the next page.

### **Key Functions**

Using these keys, you can move or rotate pattern, etc. Press

2 3 n Ô. [?] . 1 1 1 8 🖻 📼 Я 8625 4 8625 1 87.3mm 1 + 89.2mm + + 0 0.0mm 0.0mm 0.0" 56789912 Move 18 ×× 1-+ + 1 Return Memory (13) 17 16 15 14

to display the editing window.

#### Viv Note

Edit

• Some operations or functions are not available for certain patterns. If the key display is darkened, you cannot use that function or operation with the selected pattern.

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
1		Needle point check key	Press this key to check the needle drop point with the light of the LED pointer.	263
2		Fabric image save key	Press this key to save the currently displayed fabric image.	
3		Fabric scan key	Press this key to scan the fabric to align the embroidery position.	286
4		Image key	Press this key for a preview of the sewn image.	226
5	Move	Move key	Press to display the pattern moving window.	226
6		Uninterrupted embroidery key	Press this key to embroider the selected pattern with a single color.	286
7	Rotato	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the pattern. You can rotate a pattern 0.1 degree, 1 degree, 10 degrees or 90 degrees at a time.	227
8		Basting key	Press to add the basting stitch to the pattern. You can set the desired basting distance.	290
9	0	Appliqué key	Press to create an appliqué piece using the selected pattern.	291
10	8	Embroidery positioning key	Press this key to align the embroidering position using the built-in camera.	266
1		Pattern connect key	Press to start pattern connecting embroidering. You can connect the patterns accurately using the built-in camera.	321
12	0	Sensor function key	Press this key to use the sensor function.	268
13	Memory	Memory key	Press this key to save a pattern in the machine's memory, USB media or a computer.	313, 314
14	ŧ.]	Trial key	Press this key to check the position of the pattern. The embroidery frame moves to the desired position so you can check that there is enough space to sew the pattern.	
15		Starting point key	Press this key to move the needle start position to align the needle with the pattern position.	307, 308
16	/-/+	Forward/Back key	Press this key to move the needle forward or back in the pattern; useful if the thread breaks while sewing or if you want to start again from the beginning.	
17	××××	Cut/Tension key	Press this key to specify automatic thread cutting, thread trimming or the thread tension. For embroidery, these functions are set automatically.	301-304
18	Return	Return key	Press this key to return to the pattern type selection screen.	-

🖑 Basic Embroidery 🛞

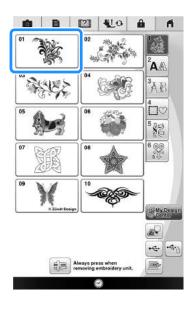
## **COMBINING PATTERNS**

## **Editing Combined Patterns**

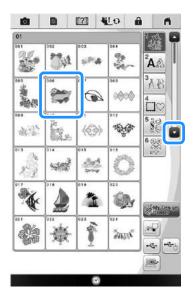
**Example:** Combining alphabet characters with an embroidery pattern and editing







2 Select 💓





sa or touch the selected pattern.



n

Delete

Ļ

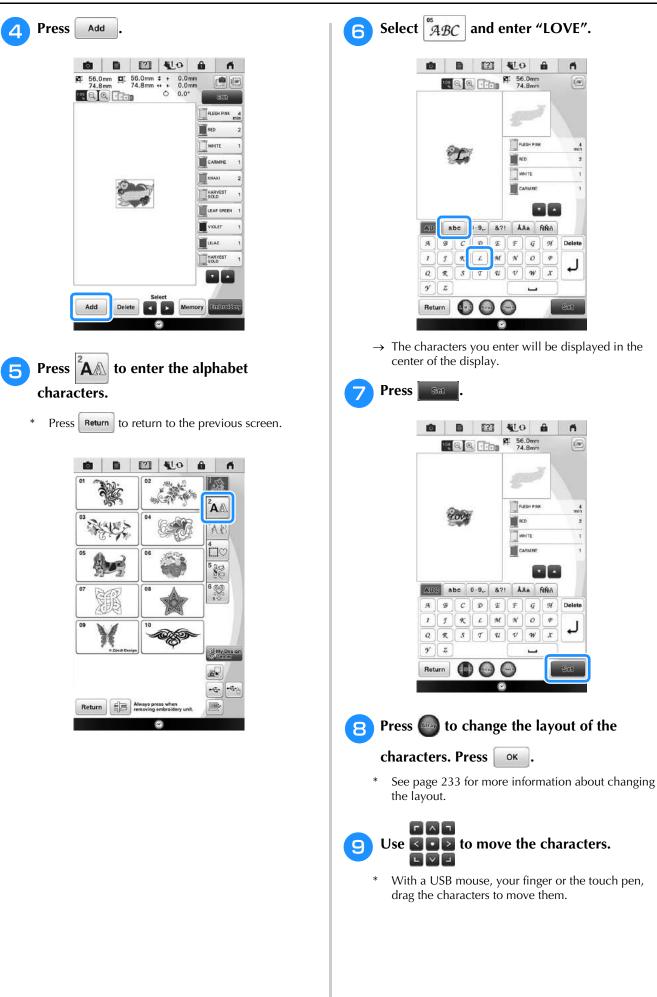
n

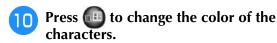
1.00

Delete

Ļ

1.00



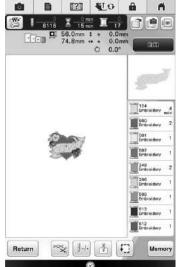


\* See page 236 for more information about changing the color.





When all editing is finished, press Embradders.



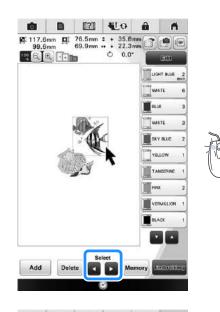
### Selecting combined embroidery patterns

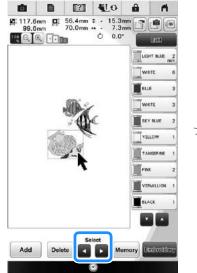
If multiple patterns have been combined, use to select the pattern to be edited. If a USB mouse is connected, the pattern can be selected by clicking it. Move the mouse to position the pointer over the desired pattern, and then click the left mouse button. In addition, patterns can be selected by directly touching the screen with your finger or touch pen.

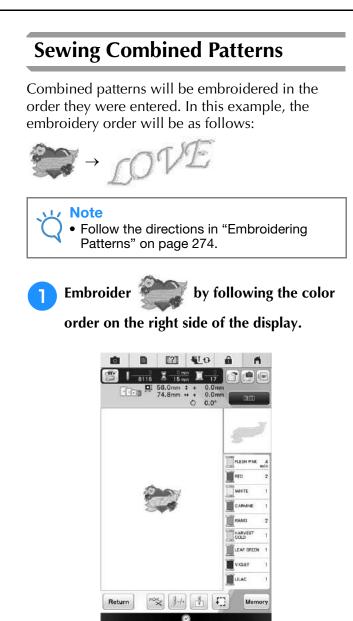
#### Memo



• Use to select patterns that are overlapping and cannot be selected by clicking them or by touching the screen.







 $\rightarrow$  After the hart are embroidered, the [+] cursor will move to the "LOVE" part of the pattern.

2 Embroider



→ When "LOVE" is embroidered, the display returns to the embroidering screen.

## **PREPARING THE FABRIC**

## **CAUTION**

- Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.
- When using layers with thicker batting etc., you can sew more attractive embroidery by adjusting the embroidery presser foot height in the embroidery settings screen (see below).
- In the case of thick terry cloth towels we recommend that you place a piece of water soluble stabilizer on the top surface of the towel. This will help to reduce the nap of the toweling and result in more attractive embroidery.

#### بر Note

• Press , and select page 7 to use - and + in the "Embroidery Foot Height" display in the embroidery settings screen. Adjust the presser foot height for thick or puffy fabrics.

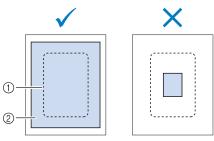
Ļ	Embroidery Foot Height	
	a service and the service of the ser	

• To increase the space between the presser foot and the needle plate, set the "Embroidery Foot Height" to a larger number, 1.5 mm setting is used for most embroidery.

## Attaching Iron-on Stabilizers (Backing) to the Fabric

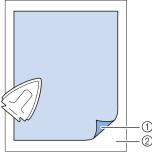
**CAUTION** 

- Always use a stabilizer material for embroidery when sewing stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics which cause pattern shrinkage. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injury. Not using a stabilizer material may result in a poor finish to your project.
- Use a piece of stabilizer which is larger than the embroidery frame being used.



- ① Size of the embroidery frame
- Iron-on stabilizer (backing)

Iron the iron-on stabilizer material to the wrong side of the fabric.



- ① Fusible side of stabilizer
- ② Fabric (wrong side)

#### 🦙 Memo

• When embroidering on thin fabrics such as organdy or lawn, or on napped fabrics such as towel or corduroy, use water soluble stabilizer (sold separately) for best results. The water soluble stabilizer material will dissolve completely in water, giving the project a more attractive finish.

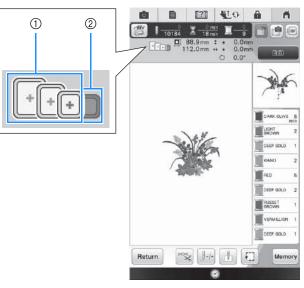
## Hooping the Fabric in the Embroidery Frame

Super large	Extra Large	Large	Medium
A start of the sta		The second	- Conte
Embroidery field	Embroidery field	Embroidery field	Embroidery field
36 cm × 24 cm	30 cm × 20 cm	18 cm × 13 cm	10 cm × 10 cm
(approx. 14 inches × 9-1/2 inches)	(approx. 12 inches × 8 inches)	(approx. 7 inches × 5 inches)	(approx. 4 inches × 4 inches)
Use when embroidering patterns larger than 30 cm × 20 cm (approx. 12 inches × 8 inches).	Use when embroidering connected or combined characters or patterns, or when embroidering large patterns.	Use when embroidering patterns between 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm (approx. 4 inches $\times$ 4 inches) and 18 cm $\times$ 13 cm (approx. 7 inches $\times$ 5 inches).	Use when embroidering patterns under 10 cm $\times$ 10 cm (approx. 4 inches $\times$ 4 inches).

### **Types of Embroidery Frames**

Other optional embroidery frames can be used. When choosing frames that do not appear on the screen, be sure to check the design size of the embroidery field of the optional frame. Check with your authorized Brother dealer for frame compatibility.

Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Included frame options are displayed on the LCD.



- ① Highlighted: Can be used
- ② Shaded: Cannot be used

## **A** CAUTION

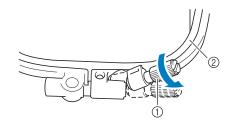
• If you use a frame that is too small, the presser foot may strike the frame during sewing and cause injury.

### ■ Inserting the Fabric

#### Note

 If the fabric is not securely held in the embroidery frame, the embroidery design will sew out poorly. Insert the fabric on a level surface, and gently stretch the fabric taut in the frame. Follow the steps below to insert the fabric correctly.

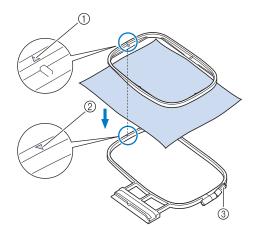
#### Lift-up and loosen the frame adjustment screw and remove the inner frame.



- 1) Frame adjustment screw
- Inner frame

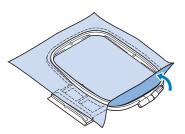
#### Lay the fabric right side up on top of the outer frame.

Re-insert the inner frame making sure to align the inner frame's  $\triangle$  with the outer frame's  $\bigtriangledown$  .



- (1) Inner frame's  $\triangle$
- (2) Outer frame's  $\nabla$
- ③ Frame adjustment screw

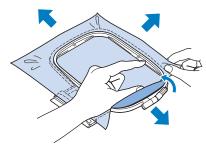
Slightly tighten the frame adjustment screw, З and then remove the slack in the fabric by pulling on the edges and corners. Do not loosen the screw.



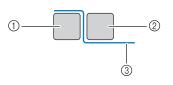
4

Gently stretch the fabric taut, and tighten the frame adjustment screw to keep the fabric from loosening after stretching.

After stretching the fabric, make sure the fabric is taut.



Make sure the inside and outside frames are even before you start embroidering.



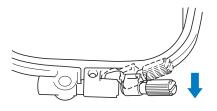
- ① Outer frame
- ② Inner frame
- ③ Fabric

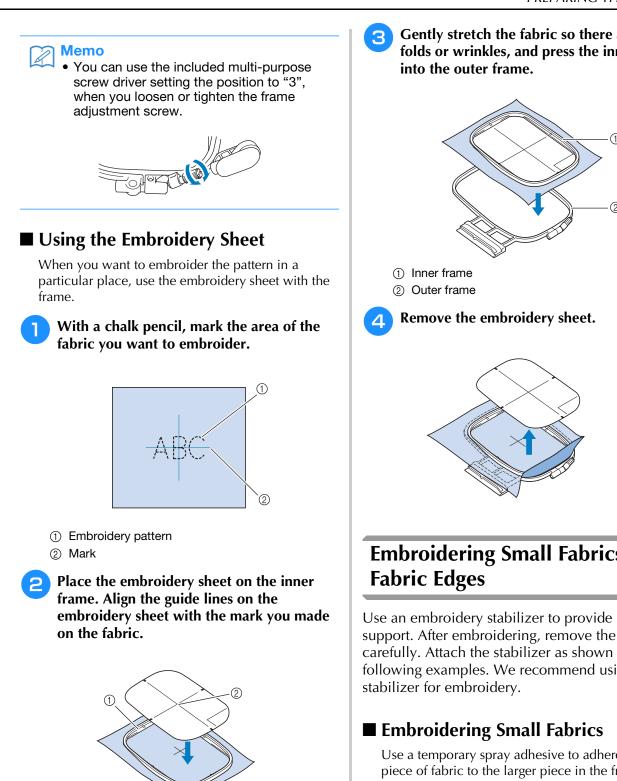
#### Memo

Stretch the fabric from all four corners and all four edges. While stretching the fabric, tighten the frame adjustment screw.



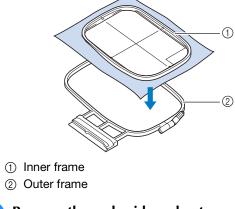
Return the frame adjustment screw to its initial position.





- Inner frame
- ② Guide line

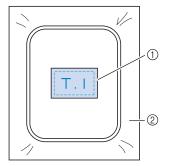
Gently stretch the fabric so there are no folds or wrinkles, and press the inner frame



# **Embroidering Small Fabrics or**

Use an embroidery stabilizer to provide extra support. After embroidering, remove the stabilizer carefully. Attach the stabilizer as shown in the following examples. We recommend using a

Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.

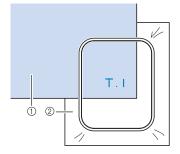


① Fabric

Stabilizer

### Embroidering Edges or Corners

Use a temporary spray adhesive to adhere the small piece of fabric to the larger piece in the frame. If you do not wish to use a temporary spray adhesive, attach the stabilizer with a basting stitch.

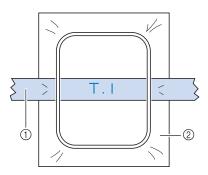


① Fabric

② Stabilizer

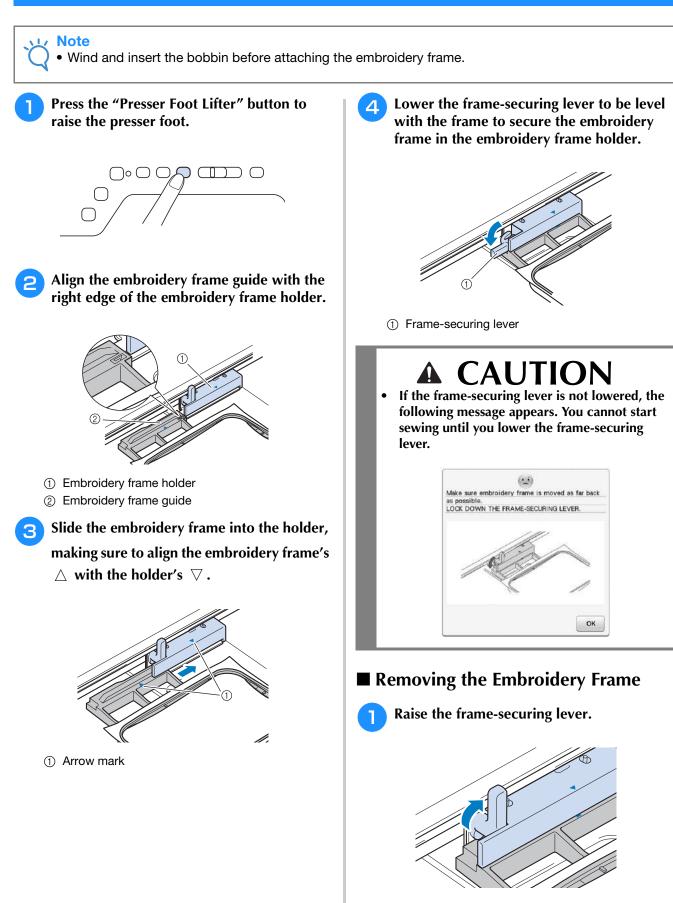
#### Embroidering Ribbons or Tape

Secure with double-sided tape or a temporary spray adhesive.



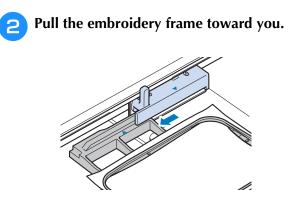
- ① Ribbon or tape
- Stabilizer

## ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME



ŝ

Basic Embroidery 🎆



## **CONFIRMING THE PATTERN POSITION**

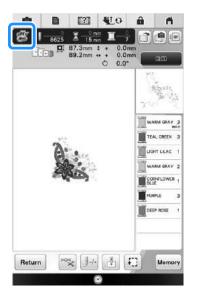
The pattern is normally positioned in the center of the embroidery frame. If the pattern needs to be repositioned for better placement on the garment, you can check the layout before starting embroidery.

## Checking the Needle Drop Point With the Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED Pointer

With the embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer, you can check the needle drop position before embroidering.

Press 📷 in the embroidery screen.

 $\rightarrow$  The LED pointer indicates the needle drop point.



#### Memo

- When the LED pointer is turned on, the presser foot height is automatically adjusted according to the fabric thickness.
- If s not displayed, you cannot use the LED pointer.
- \* The LED pointer turns off automatically by lowering the presser foot or returning to the previous page.

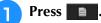
- With bulky fabrics, the position may not be accurate due to the various depths of the fabrics.
- With fabric that has a very uneven surface such as quilting, the fabric thickness may not be correctly measured. In this case, the pointer indication should be used only as a reference.

### ■ Adjusting the LED Pointer 🔤

Adjust the LED pointer if it indicates a point different than the actual needle drop point. Before adjusting the LED pointer, mark the actual needle drop point on the fabric to be embroidered, and then hoop the fabric and attach the embroidery frame.

#### Viv Note

 As a default, the key mentioned in the following procedures appear in light gray and is not available. To enable the key for specifying the settings, attach embroidery foot "W+" with LED pointer to the machine. The key is enabled after the embroidery foot is plugged in.



 $\rightarrow$  The settings screen appears.

Display page 8 of the Embroidery settings screen.





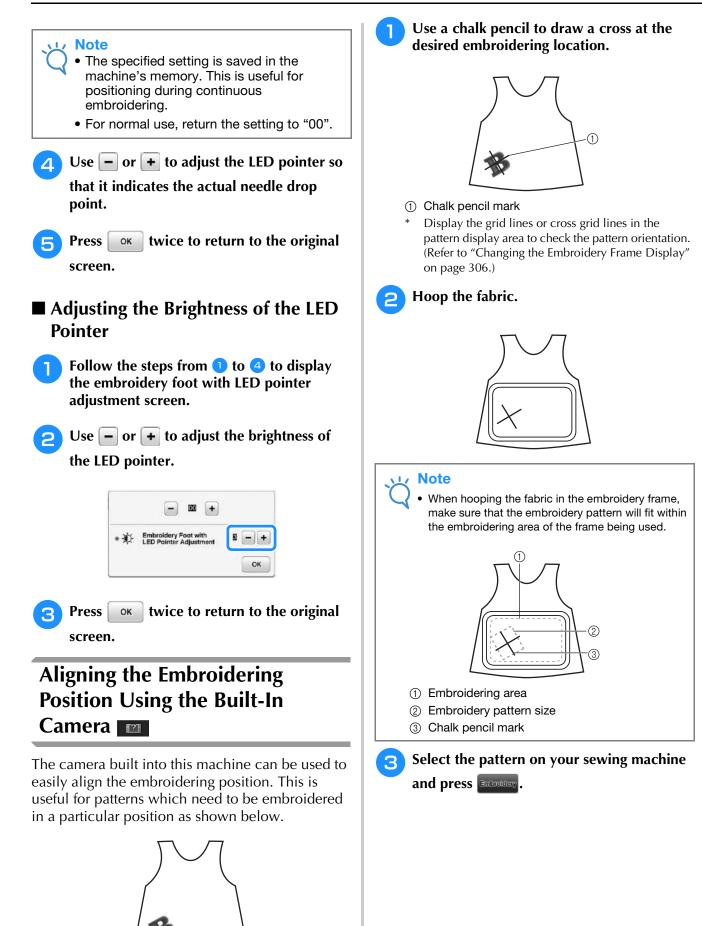
→ The Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED Pointer Adjustment screen appears.

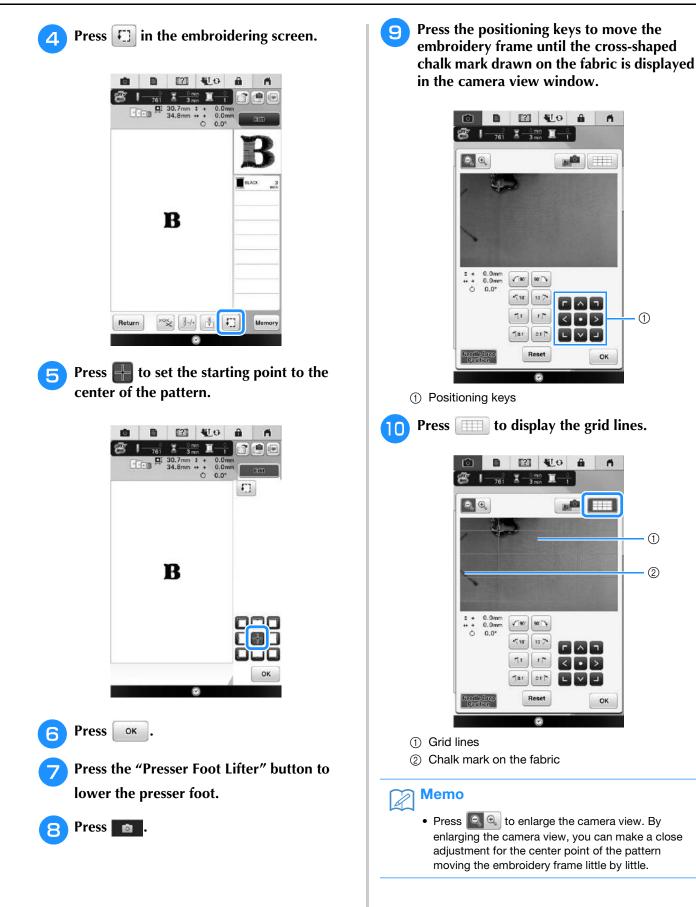


① LED pointer adjustment

ŝ

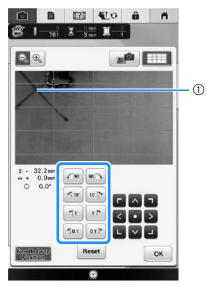
<sup>&</sup>lt;sub>ヒ</sub> Note





0

Adjust the orientation of the pattern by pressing the orientation keys until the grid lines are parallel with the chalk mark drawn on the fabric. (Refer to "Rotating the Pattern" on page 227.)



① Center point of the pattern

Press the positioning keys to move the embroidery frame until the center point of the pattern in the camera view window is aligned with the chalk mark drawn on the fabric.



Press or return to the previous screen.

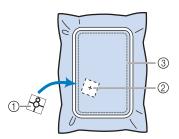
Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.

See "Embroidering Patterns" on page 274.

## Using the Built-In Camera to Align the Embroidering Position

The embroidering position can easily be aligned using the machine's built-in camera and the included embroidery positioning sticker.

Affix the embroidery positioning sticker to the location in the fabric to be embroidered. Place the embroidery positioning sticker so that the center of the larger circle is at the center or edge of the embroidery pattern.

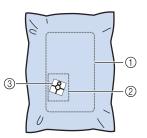


- ① Embroidery positioning sticker
- O Center or edge of the embroidery pattern
- ③ Embroidery field

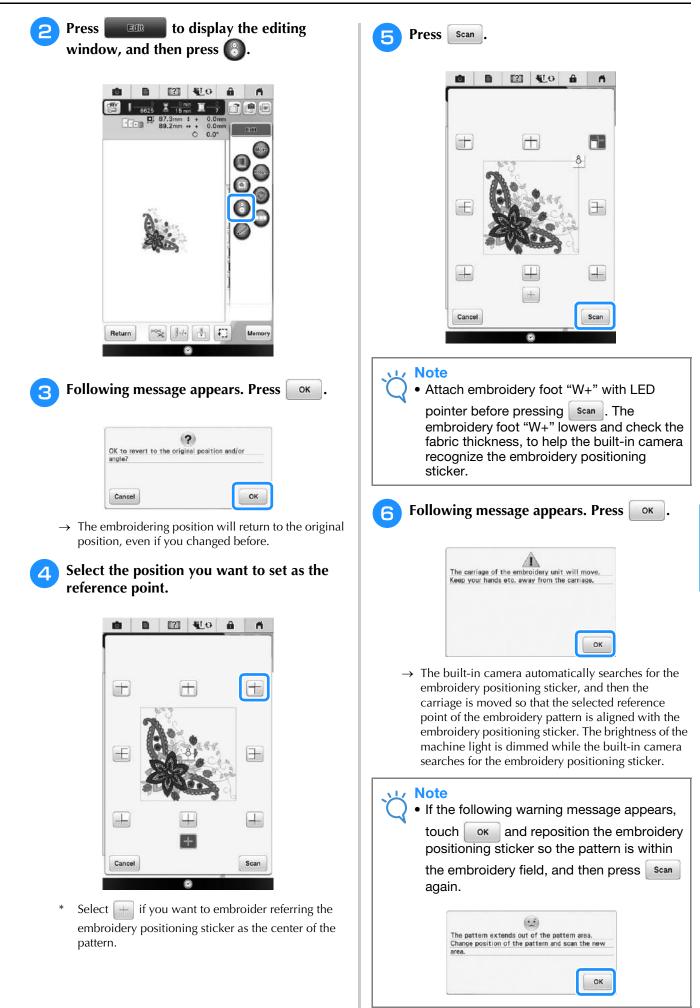
#### V Note

1

• When inserting the fabric in the embroidery frame, check that the embroidery pattern fits within the embroidery field for the frame that is used.



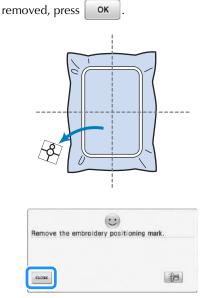
- ① Embroidery field
- ② Embroidery pattern
- ③ Embroidery positioning sticker
- Depending on the type of fabric that is used, a part of the embroidery positioning sticker may remain attached when it is peeled off. Before using the embroidery positioning sticker, check that it can be cleanly removed from a scrap piece of the fabric to be used.



ŝ



To remove the embroidery positioning sticker more easily, press 📳 so that the embroidery frame moves slightly forward and away from under the needle. After the embroidery positioning sticker is



Press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.

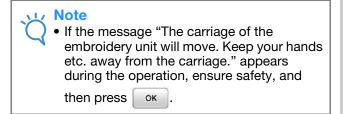
See "Embroidering Patterns" on page 274.

#### Note

• After the included embroidery positioning stickers are used up, optional stickers are available. For details, refer to "Options" on page 22.

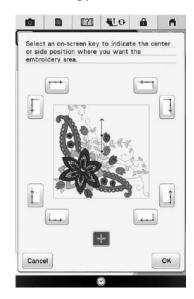
### **Specifying the Embroidering** Position With the Sensor Pen

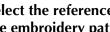
By using the sensor pen, the embroidering position can be adjusted to the desired location.





 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering position selection screen appears.





З

#### Select the reference point for positioning the embroidery pattern.

To align the edge of the embroidery with a pattern or mark on the fabric, select the edge of design. If the center of the pattern to be embroidered is determined, select the center position.

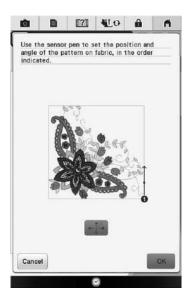
### Selecting the Embroidering Position by the Pattern Edge

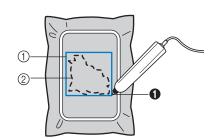
From the keys on the screen, press the edge to be the reference for positioning.



Press ок

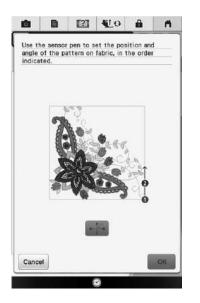
With the sensor pen, touch the point on the fabric corresponding to corner **1** in the screen.

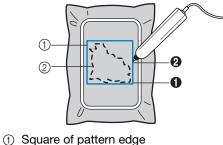




Square of pattern edge
 Pattern position

**4** With the sensor pen, touch the point on the fabric corresponding to corner **2** in the screen.



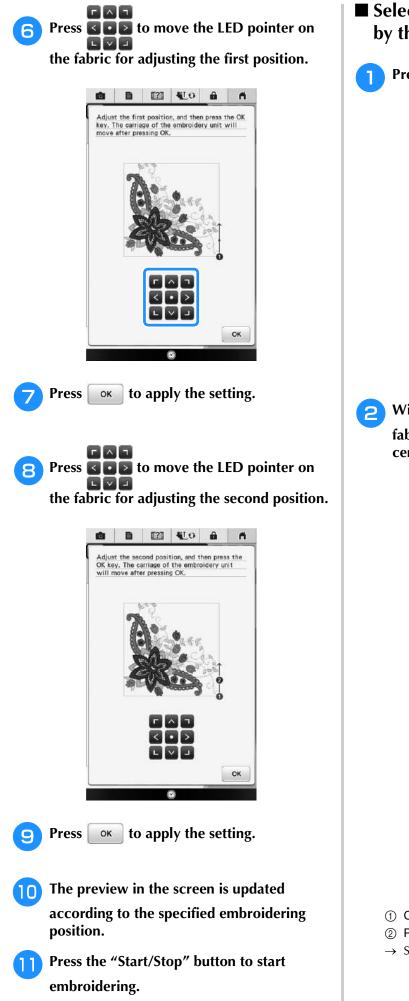


2 Pattern position

5

Press 👘 to adjust the positions.

→ If you don't need to adjust the positions, continue to step  $\bigcirc$ .



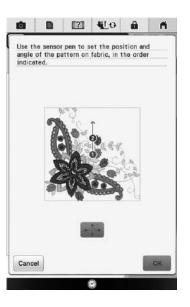
### Selecting the Embroidering Position by the Pattern Center

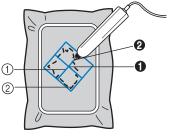


OK in the following screen.

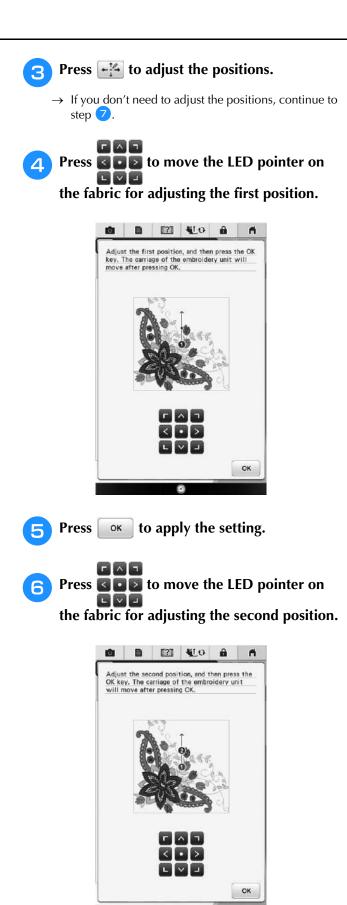


With the sensor pen, touch 2 points on the fabric corresponding to the numbers in the center of the embroidery pattern.





- ① Center line of the pattern
- ② Pattern position
- $\rightarrow$  Specified point number turns into red.



**7** Press

to apply the setting.

The preview in the screen is updated according to the specified embroidering position.

9

## embroidering.

#### <sub>レ</sub>Note

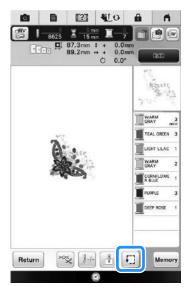
 When using the sensor pen to specify the embroidering position, it may not be possible to exactly specify the desired location. In this case, move the embroidery frame to align the center of the pattern with the location indicated by the LED pointer.

Press the "Start/Stop" button to start

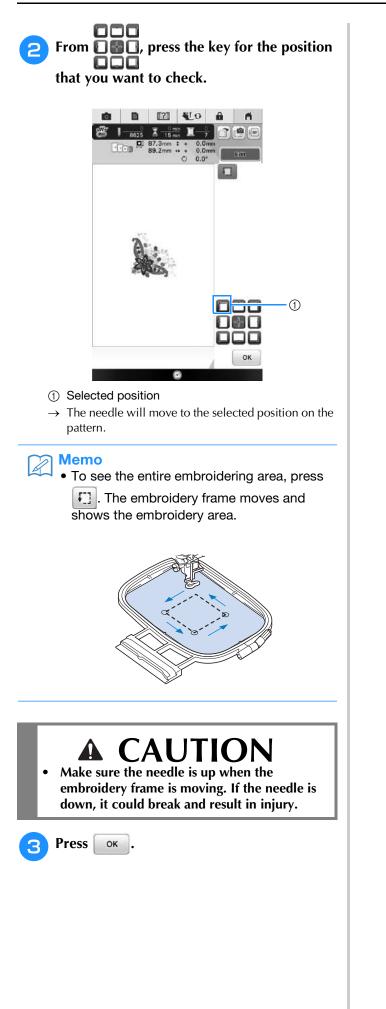
## **Checking the Pattern Position**

The embroidery frame moves and shows the pattern position. Watch the frame closely to make sure the pattern will be sewn in the right place.





 $\rightarrow$  The following screen is displayed.



## **EMBROIDERING AN PATTERN**

## **Embroidering Attractive Finishes**

There are many factors that go into sewing beautiful embroidery. Using the appropriate stabilizer (see page 256) and hooping the fabric in the frame (see page 257) are two important factors mentioned earlier. Another important point is the appropriateness of the needle and thread being used. See the explanation of threads below. Included with this machine are two bobbin cases. Follow the explanation below.

Thread		Use embroidery thread intended for use with this machine. Other embroidery threads may not yield optimum results.
	Bobbin thread	Use embroidery bobbin thread intended for use with this machine.

#### Memo

• If you use threads other than those listed above, the embroidery may not sew out correctly.

Bobbin case (recommended for sewing and for embroidering with included 60 weight bobbin thread)



Standard bobbin case (green marking on the screw)

Standard bobbin case originally installed in the machine has a green marking on the screw. We recommend using the included embroidery bobbin thread with this bobbin case. Do not adjust the tension screw on this bobbin case with the green marked screw. Bobbin case (for prewound or other embroidery bobbin threads)



① Bobbin case (no color on the screw)

The bobbin case with no color on the screw is set with tighter tension for embroidery with different weights of bobbin threads and a variety of embroidery techniques. This bobbin case is identified with a dark colored mark on the inside of the bobbin cavity. The tension screw on this case can be adjusted if necessary.

## **A** CAUTION

 When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table.
 Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely and the embroidery frame may strike the needle, causing the needle to bend or break and possibly cause injury.

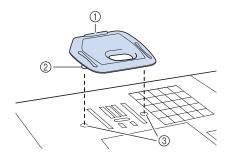
Place the fabric so that it does not hang off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from dragging.

#### ப் Note

- Before embroidering, check that there is enough thread in the bobbin. If you start to sew your embroidery project without enough thread in the bobbin, you will need to rewind the bobbin in the middle of the embroidery pattern.
- Do not leave objects in the range of motion of the embroidery frame. The frame may strike the object and cause a poor finish to the embroidery pattern.
- When embroidering on large garments (especially jackets or other heavy fabrics), do not let the fabric hang over the table. Otherwise, the embroidery unit cannot move freely, and the pattern may not turn out as planned.

### Embroidery Needle Plate Cover

Under some conditions, based on the type of fabric, stabilizer, or thread being used, there may be some looping in the upper thread. In this case, attach the included embroidery needle plate cover to the needle plate. Attach the cover by inserting the two projections on the underside of the cover into the notches on the needle plate as shown below.



- ① Groove
- ② Projection
- ③ Notch

To remove the embroidery needle plate cover, place your fingernail in the groove and lift the plate out.

## **A** CAUTION

• Push the embroidery needle plate cover as far as possible to attach it. If the embroidery needle plate cover is not securely attached, it may cause the needle to break.

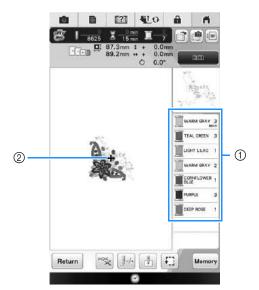
#### Note

• Do not use the embroidery needle plate cover for any applications other than embroidery.

### **Embroidering Patterns**







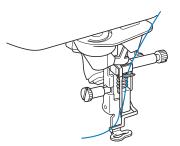
- ① Embroidery color order
- ② Cursor

#### 🔊 Memo

• The [+] cursor moves over the pattern, showing which part of the pattern is being sewn.



Using the automatic needle threader, thread the machine for the first color.



## Lower the presser foot, then press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering.

→ When the first color is completely sewn, the machine will automatically trim the threads and stop. The presser foot will then automatically be raised. On the embroidery color order display, the next color will move to the top.

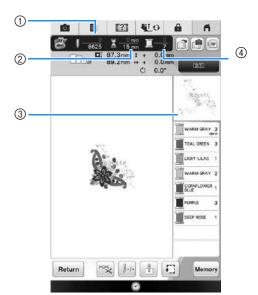
#### Memo

- If you want to get more attractive finishes, try the procedures below;
  - After 5-6 stitches, press the "Start/Stop" button again to stop the machine.
  - Trim the excess thread at the end of the seam. If the end of the seam is under the presser foot, raise the presser foot, then trim the excess thread.



- If there is thread left over from the beginning of sewing, it may be sewn over as you continue embroidering the pattern, making it very difficult to deal with the thread after the pattern is finished. Trim the threads at the beginning of each thread change.
- Remove the thread for the first color from the machine. Thread the machine with the next color.

**4** Repeat the same steps for embroidering the remaining colors.



- ① Current stitch numbers/Total stitch numbers
- ② Current time/Total time
- ③ The part of pattern embroider next
- ④ Embroidered colors/Total colors
- → When the last color is sewn, "Finished embroidering" will appear on the display. Press

**OK**, and the display will return to the original screen.

#### Memo

 The Thread Trimming Function is originally set to trim excess thread jumps (threads linking parts of the pattern, etc.). Depending on the type of thread and fabric that are used, an end of upper thread may remain on the surface of the fabric at the beginning of the stitching. After embroidering is finished, cut off this excess thread. If the setting has been turned off, trim the excess thread jumps using scissors after the pattern is finished. See page 304 for information on the thread

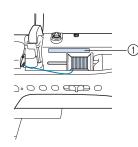
See page 304 for information on the thread trimming function.

## Spool Stand LED

This machine is equipped with a spool stand LED. Its lighting status and color indicate the machine status and thread color for embroidering.

#### 🔊 Memo

• Use the color in which the LED lights up as a guide. Since the actual embroidery thread color may differ slightly, be sure to also check the thread color number in the LCD.



① Spool stand LED

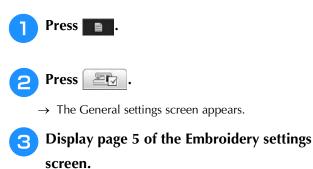
Lit	Lights up in thread color for embroidering
Lit (color changing)	Indicates thread spool replacement (then lights up in embroidery thread color)
Flashing (red)	Error
Flashing (green)	End of stitching

#### 🔊 Memo

- When embroidering a pattern with uninterrupted embroidering, the LED lights up in gray.
- When embroidering an appliqué pattern, the LED light indicates no color while

embroidering "	[────────────────────────────────────
MATERIAL", " 🧾	APPLIQUE
POSITION" or "	APPLIQUE".

# When Not Using the Spool Stand LED



A Set "Spool Stand LED" to "OFF".



Press

#### to return to the original screen.

## Using Appliqués

OK

This machine can sew patterns that contain an appliqué. Follow the procedure described below

to sew patterns with \_\_\_\_\_ (appliqué piece),

(appliqué position) and (appliqué) in the embroidery color order display.

- 1. Create the appliqué piece.
- 2. Sew the appliqué position on the base fabric.

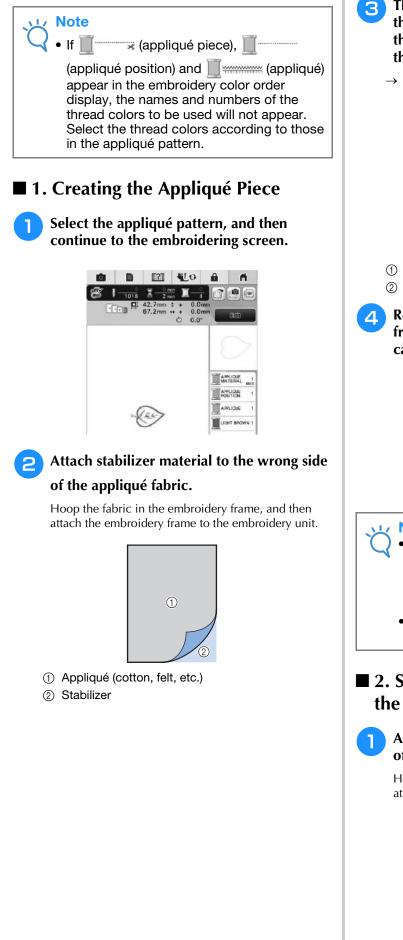
 $\downarrow$ 

3. Affix the appliqué piece to the base fabric.

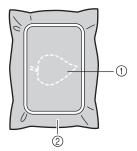
4. Embroider the remainder of the pattern.

#### **Required materials**

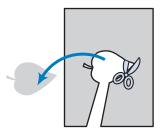
- Fabric for the appliqué piece
- Fabric for the appliqué base
- Stabilizer material
- Craft glue
- Embroidery thread



- Thread the machine with the embroidery thread, lower the presser foot lever, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the cutting line of the appliqué piece.
  - → The outline of the appliqué piece is sewn, and then the machine stops.



- ① Cutting line for appliqué piece
- ② Fabric for appliqué piece
- Remove the fabric for the appliqué piece from the embroidery frame, and then carefully cut along the sewn cutting line.



#### ⊥ Note

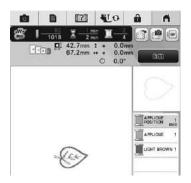
- If the appliqué piece is cut out along the inside of the cutting line, it may not be correctly attached to the fabric. Therefore, carefully cut out the appliqué piece along the cutting line.
  - After cutting out the appliqué piece, carefully remove the thread.

### 2. Sewing the Appliqué Position on the Base Fabric

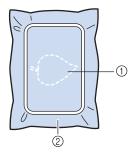
## Attach stabilizer material to the wrong side of the fabric for the appliqué base.

Hoop the fabric in the embroidery frame, and then attach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit.

**2** Thread the machine with the embroidery thread, lower the presser foot lever, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the appliqué position.



→ The position of the appliqué is sewn, and then the machine stops.



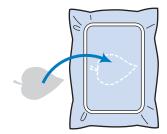
- Appliqué position
- ② Base fabric

Remove the embroidery frame from the embroidery unit.

#### **Note**

 Do not remove the base fabric from the embroidery frame until all sewing is finished.

- 3. Affixing the Appliqué Piece to the Base Fabric
  - Lightly apply craft glue to the back of the appliqué piece, and then attach it to the base fabric within the outline of the position sewn in step <sup>2</sup> of "2. Sewing the Appliqué Position on the Base Fabric".

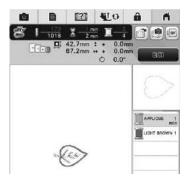


#### V Note

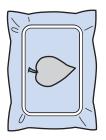
- If the appliqué piece is not securely attached to the base fabric, the appliqué piece may lift off the base fabric during sewing, causing misalignment.
  - If the appliqué piece cannot be attached to the base fabric with craft glue, securely baste it in place with basting stitches.
  - If thin fabric is used for the appliqué piece, reinforce and secure it in place with an ironon adhesive sheet. An iron can be used to attach the appliqué piece to the appliqué location.
  - Do not remove the fabric from the embroidery frame when attaching the appliqué piece to the base fabric.

## After the appliqué piece is attached, attach the embroidery frame to the machine.

Thread the machine with the embroidery thread, lower the presser foot lever, and then press the "Start/Stop" button to sew the appliqué.



→ The appliqué piece is sewn to the base fabric, and then the machine stops.



#### Memo

Depending on the pattern that is selected,

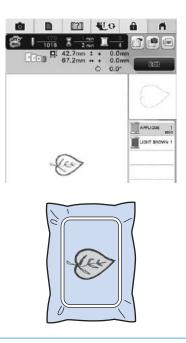
🚃 🤕 (appliqué piece), 📗

(appliqué position) and (appliqué) for all three steps may not appear. If

embroider using thread of that color.

# ■ 4. Embroidering the Remainder of the Pattern

Change the embroidery thread according to the embroidery color order display, and then finish embroidering the remainder of the pattern.



### Memo

- Since glue may become attached to the presser foot, needle or needle plate, clean off any glue off after finishing embroidering the appliqué pattern.
- For best results, trim all excess threads each time the thread color is changed.

## **ADJUSTMENTS DURING THE EMBROIDERY PROCESS**

```
ر Note
```

• Be careful not to bump the embroidery unit carriage or the presser foot when removing or attaching the embroidery frame. Otherwise, the pattern will not embroider correctly.

2

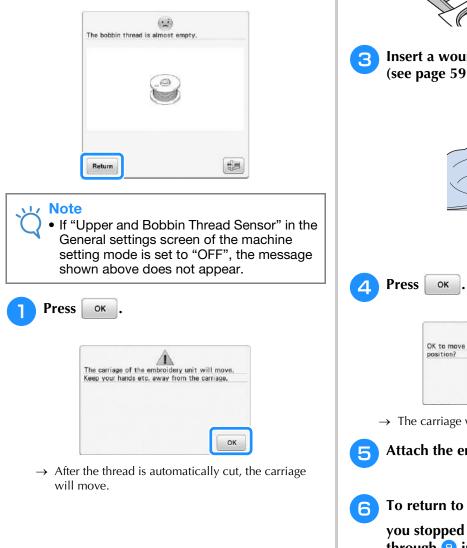
## If the Bobbin Runs Out of Thread

When the bobbin begins to run out of thread during embroidering, the machine will stop and

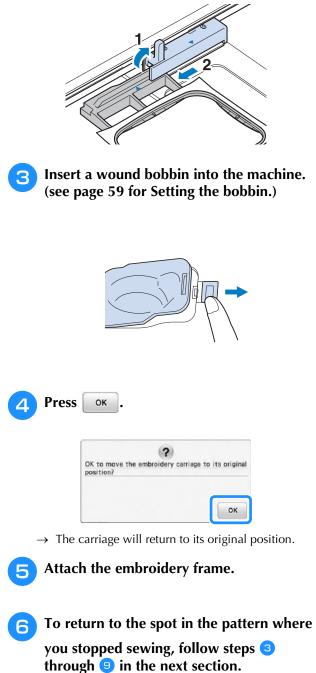
the message below will appear. Press **fis** and

follow the directions below to rethread the lower threading. If very little sewing remains, you can embroider 10 final stitches without rethreading the

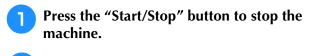
machine by pressing Return. The machine will stop after sewing the 10 stitches.



- Unlock the frame-securing lever and remove the embroidery frame.
- \* Be careful not to apply strong force to the fabric at this time. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.



# If the Thread Breaks During Sewing



If the upper thread is broken, redo the upper threading. If the bobbin thread is broken, press for and follow the directions in steps 1 through 5 from the

previous section to reset the bobbin.



Press J-/+.



- Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.
  - Press 💵.



 $\rightarrow$  The camera view window appears.

**6** Press [1-1], [1-10], [1-100], or [1-1000] to move the

## needle back the correct number of stitches before the spot where the thread broke.

\* If you cannot move back to the spot where the

thread broke, press 😧 or 😫 to select the color and move to the beginning position of that color, then use 🚺+1, 🚺+100, J+100, or 🚺+1000 to move ahead

to slightly before where the thread broke.



- \* Press  $\square \oplus$  to enlarge the image in the screen.
- \* Press Press to remove " " from the screen.
- Press fill to close the camera view window.

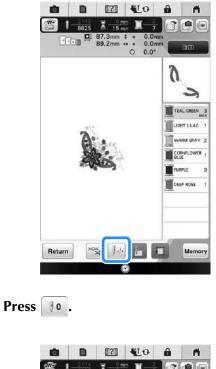


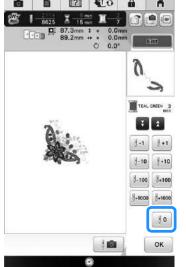
ress or return to the original screen.

**9** Press the "Start/Stop" button to continue sewing.

### **Restarting from the Beginning**







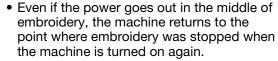
→ The embroidery frame moves, returning the needle to the pattern's beginning position.

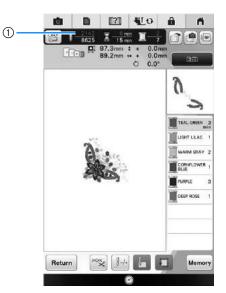
Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot and start sewing.

### Resuming Embroidery After Turning Off the Power

The current color and stitch number are saved when embroidery is stopped. The next time the machine is turned on, you have the option to continue or delete the pattern.

#### Memo





① Current stitch number when embroidery was stopped

#### Vir Note

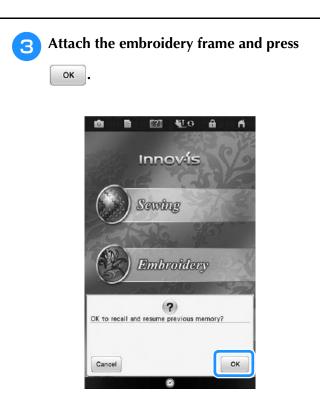
2

• Do not remove the embroidery unit or the memory will no longer remember your design.

Turn the main power to ON.

## Follow the instructions shown on the screen and remove the embroidery frame.

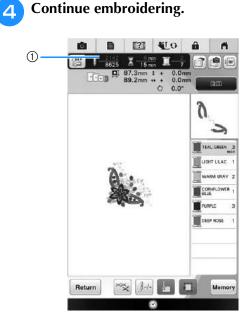
 $\rightarrow$  The following message will appear.



→ The previous embroidering screen displayed before the machine was turned off appears.

## Memo

• If you want to start a new embroidery pattern, press **Cancel** so the pattern selection screen appears.



1 Stitch number when embroidery is resumed

# Chapter 7 Advanced Embroidery

#### VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS ...... 286

No Contraction

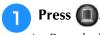
Uninterrupted Embroidering
(Using a Single Color : Monochrome)
Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position286
■ Specify Fabric Display from the Settings Screen
Saving Scanned Image to USB Media
Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric
Basting Embroidery290
Creating an Appliqué Piece291
Creating an Appliqué Piece
Using a Frame Pattern for the Outline
PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY
PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS) 296
Calastina - Battana 2007
Selecting a Pattern
Checking the Combined Image
Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image297
<ul> <li>Using USB Media</li></ul>
Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet
Sewing Embroidery Patterns
о ,
MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS 301
Adjusting Thread Tension301
Correct Thread Tension
Upper Thread is Too Tight
Upper Thread is Too Loose
Adjusting Overall Upper Thread Tension
Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case
(with No Color on the Screw)
Correct Tension
Bobbin Thread is Too Loose
■ Bobbin Thread is Too Tight
Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)
<ul> <li>Selecting the Length of Jump Stitch Not to Trim</li></ul>
Adjusting the Embroidery Speed
Changing the Thread Color Display
• •
Changing the Embroidery Frame Display
Aligning the Pattern and the Needle
Embroidering Linked Characters
USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION 311
Embroidery Data Precautions311
■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used
Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used
Connecting Your Machine to the PC
Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data 312
Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory
■ If the Memory is Full
Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media313
Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer
Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory
EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS
Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)

USING THE CAMERA TO CONNECT PATTERNS321
Connecting Three Patterns 321
Changing the Position of a Sticker
CONNECTING ROTATED PATTERNS
Connecting Patterns to be Joined Along an Edge
Measuring the Distance That the Pattern Will Be Slid
Trial Sewing
RESUME FEATURE

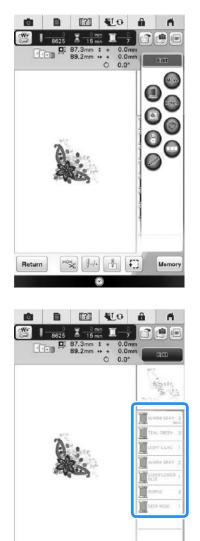
## VARIOUS EMBROIDERING FUNCTIONS

## Uninterrupted Embroidering (Using a Single Color : Monochrome)

A selected pattern can be stitched out in one color instead of multicolor. The machine will continue till the pattern is completed.



Press the key again to return to the original setting.



→ The thread color displayed on the screen will be grayed out.

××× 1-1+ + 1

Memo

#### Memo

Return

• Even if uninterrupted embroidering (a) has been set, the automatic thread cutting function and the thread trimming function can be used (see page 304 and 304).

## Display the Fabric While Aligning the Embroidering Position

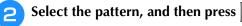
The fabric hooped in the embroidery frame can be displayed on the LCD so that the embroidery position can be easily aligned.

#### Example:



#### VV Note

- When embroidery frame (small: H 2 cm × W 6 cm (H 1 inch × W 2-1/2 inches)) is installed, the built-in camera cannot be used to align the embroidering position. Install medium embroidery frame or larger.
  - For details on using thicker fabric such as quilting, refer to "Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric" (page 289).
- Hoop the fabric in the embroidery frame, and then attach the frame to the embroidery machine.



\_\_\_\_

#### V Note

• When using light to medium weight fabrics, check the settings screen to make sure "Fabric Thickness Sensor" is set to "OFF".

# 5 When the fabric appears as a background for the pattern, press **Base** to display the

## editing window.

\* The pattern can be moved to the desired position by dragging on the screen using your finger, the touch pen or connected mouse without displaying the editing window. If you need some fine adjustment, move the pattern from the editing window.



6

Press **window**.

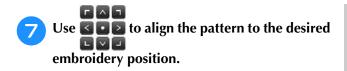


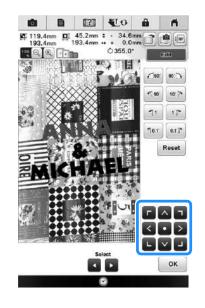


ŝ



- Memo
  - If you do not wish the upper thread to be scanned together with the fabric, scan the fabric without the needle threaded with the upper thread.





B Press OK

#### ן <mark>Memo</mark>

9

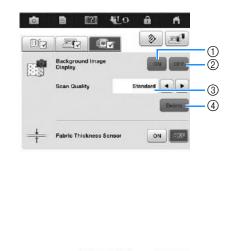
 If necessary, press with to display a preview in order to check the pattern position.

## Press the "Start/Stop" button to start embroidering.

- See "Embroidering Patterns" on page 274.
- → When embroidery is finished, the fabric displayed in the background disappears.

## Specify Fabric Display from the Settings Screen

Whether the fabric disappears or remains displayed can be specified from the settings screen.



 Set to "ON" to leave the fabric displayed in the background.

3 % P

OK

- ② When set to "OFF", the background will disappear.
- ③ Set to "Fine" to scan clearer than setting to "Standard".
- ④ Press Delete to remove the background image completely.

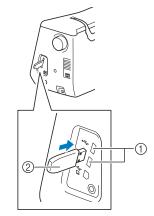
#### Note

• The fabric background will remain if the embroidery is not finished. In this case, erase the background image from the settings screen.

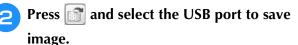
## ■ Saving Scanned Image to USB Media



Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.



USB port
 USB media



 $\rightarrow$  After the short melody, the image file will be saved to the USB media.



Remove the USB media, and then check the saved image using a computer.

- $\rightarrow$  The files for scanned images are saved with the name "BG\*\*.JPG" in a folder labeled "bPocket".
- "\*\*" in the name "BG\*\*.JPG" will automatically be replaced with a number between 00 and 99.

### Positioning the Pattern on Thick Fabric

When positioning the pattern on thick fabric such as quilting, the fabric may not be detected correctly. In order for the fabric to be correctly detected, its thickness must first be measured.

#### Î Memo

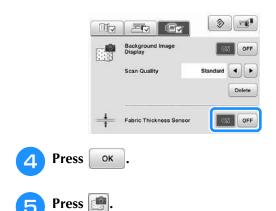
· This feature is functional only when the fabric is scanned. It will not affect embroidering if it is turned on with normal embroidery.

Hoop the fabric in the embroidery frame, and then attach the frame to the embroidery machine.

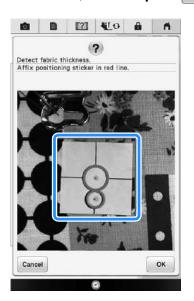


Select the pattern, and then press

Display page 9 of the Settings screen, and then set "Fabric Thickness Sensor" to "ON".



Affix the embroidery positioning sticker to the 6 fabric within the area indicated by the red frame in the LCD, and then press ОК



When the following message appears, remove the embroidery positioning sticker, and then press OK

Detection success. Remove the embroidery positioning Press OK key to start background cap	
Cancel	

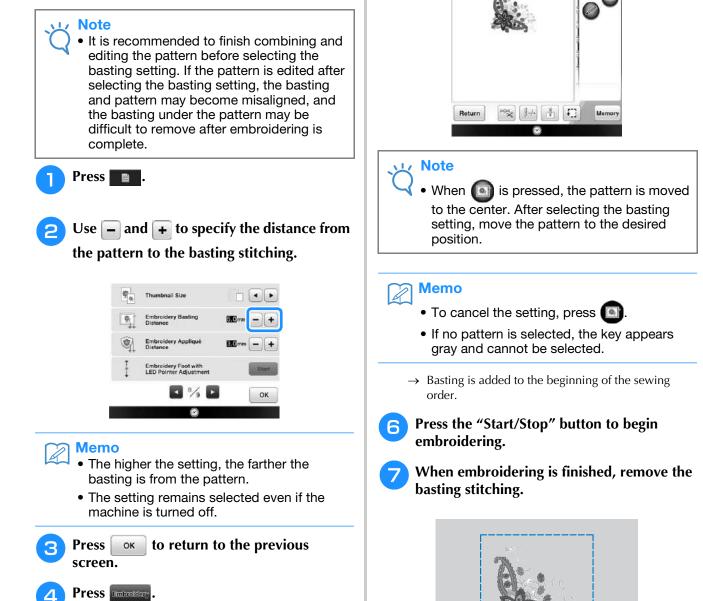
- $\rightarrow$  The embroidery frame is moved, and the embroidery positioning sticker affixed to the fabric is detected.
- Continue with step 7 on page 288 to align 8 the pattern with the desired embroidery position.

# CAUTION

Use fabrics with a thickness of less than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch). Using fabrics thicker than 3 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) may cause the needle to break.

## **Basting Embroidery**

Before embroidering, basting stitches can be sewn along the outline of the pattern. This is useful for embroidering fabric that cannot have stabilizer material affixed with an iron or adhesive. By stitching stabilizer material to the fabric, shrinkage of the stitching or misaligned pattern can be minimized.



5

Press ( to select the basting setting.

-

n

3 (**P** | w

3-16 87.3mm 89.2mm

8625

## **Creating an Appliqué Piece**

Appliqué pieces can be created from the built-in patterns and patterns on embroidery cards. This is convenient for fabrics that cannot be embroidered or when you wish to attach an appliqué to a garment.

## Creating an Appliqué Piece

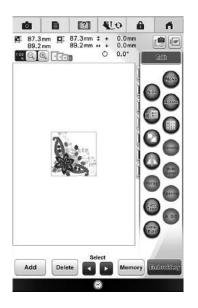
The following pattern will be used to create an appliqué piece.



#### بر Note

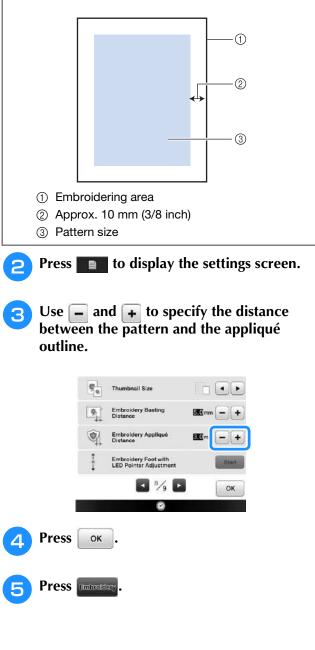
- Felt or denim fabrics are recommended to make the appliqué piece. Depending on the pattern and fabric used, lighter weight fabrics may cause the stitching to appear smaller.
- For best results, be sure to use stabilizer material for embroidering.
- Select a frame that matches the pattern size. Frame options are displayed on the LCD screen.
- When making appliqué pieces, do not use the border embroidery frame. Depending on the pattern density and fabric used, shrinkage of the stitching may occur.

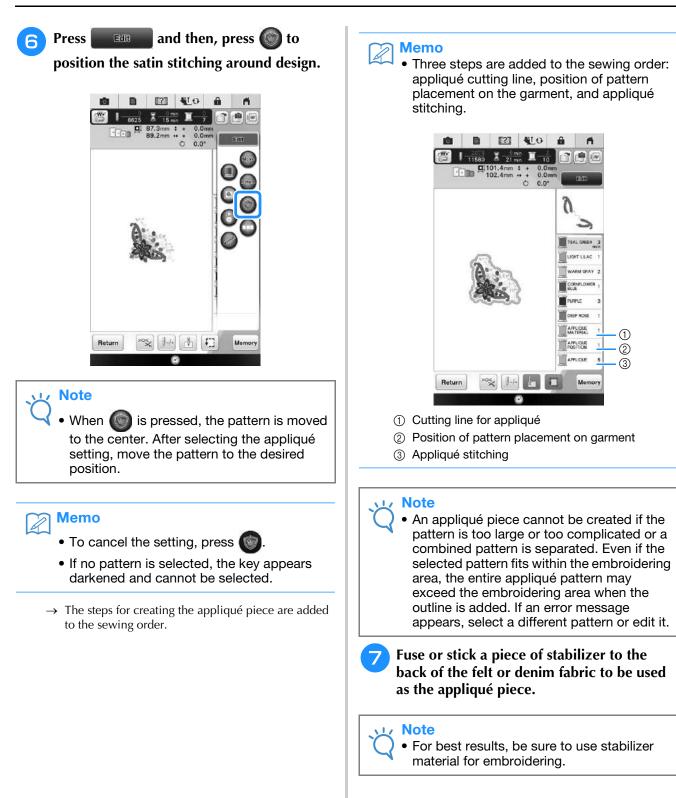
Select the pattern, and edit it if necessary.



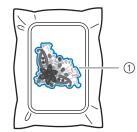
#### 🟒 Note

- Finish combining and editing the pattern before selecting the appliqué setting. If the pattern is edited after selecting the appliqué setting, the appliqué stitching and pattern may become misaligned.
- Since an outline is added, the pattern for an appliqué piece (when the appliqué setting is selected) will be larger than the original pattern. First, adjust the size and position of the pattern as shown below.





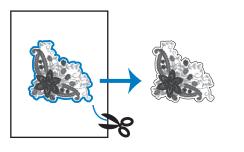
- B Hoop the appliqué fabric in the embroidery frame, attach the embroidery frame to the machine, and then start embroidering.
- 9 After the pattern is embroidered, thread the machine with the thread for the cutting line, and then sew the cutting line (APPLIQUE MATERIAL).



① Cutting line for appliqué

#### 🏹 Memo

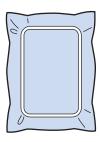
- We recommend using thread for the cutting line that is closest to the color of the fabric.
- 10 Remove the appliqué material from the embroidery frame, and then carefully cut along the stitching. After cutting, carefully remove all of the cutting line thread.



### بر Note

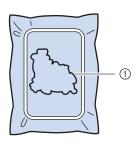
- Depending on the pattern density and fabric used, there may be shrinking of the pattern or the appliqué may be misaligned with the placement line. We recommend cutting slightly outside of the cutting line.
  - When using patterns that are vertically and horizontally symmetrical, use a chalk pencil to indicate the pattern orientation before cutting it out.
  - Carefully cut out the pattern on the outline you just sewed. Do not cut inside the cutting line, otherwise the appliqué fabric will not be caught by the appliqué stitch.

Use two layers of adhesive water-soluble stabilizer material with their sticky sides together, and then hoop them in the embroidery frame.



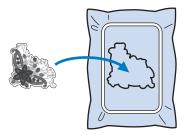
#### <sub>と</sub>Note

- If water-soluble stabilizer is used, it is not necessary to remove the stabilizer material after sewing the appliqué outline. To reduce shrinkage of the pattern, we recommend using water-soluble stabilizer.
- Put together two layers of water-soluble stabilizer, otherwise the stabilizer material may tear during embroidering.
- **12** Thread the machine with the thread for the outline from step <sup>14</sup>, and then sew the placement line for the appliqué position (APPLIQUE POSITION).



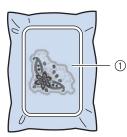
1) Pattern placement line

13 Lightly apply glue or spray adhesive, and paste the appliqué piece so that it aligns with the placement line.



#### 🗤 Note

 Before pasting the appliqué piece down, make sure the appliqué piece is positioned correctly within the placement line. With the machine threaded using the thread for the outline from step 12, sew the outline (APPLIQUE).



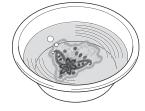
① Outline of appliqué piece

#### 🦙 Memo

- The outline is sewn using satin stitching.
- Some glue may get onto the presser foot, needle, and needle plate at this time. Finish embroidering the appliqué pattern, and then clean off the glue.

15 After embroidering is finished, remove the stabilizer material from the embroidery frame.

- 16 Use scissors to cut the excess water-soluble stabilizer from outside the appliqué outline.
  - Soak the appliqué piece in water to dissolve the water-soluble stabilizer.



Dry the appliqué piece, and then iron it if necessary.

#### Note

 Do not apply a strong force when ironing, otherwise the stitching may be damaged.

## ■ Using a Frame Pattern for the Outline

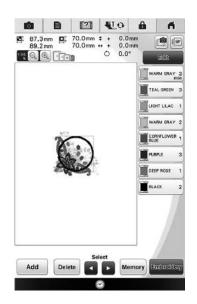
Using a frame pattern, the desired shape can be added as the outline of the appliqué. To select the desired frame, see "Selecting Frame Patterns" on page 219.

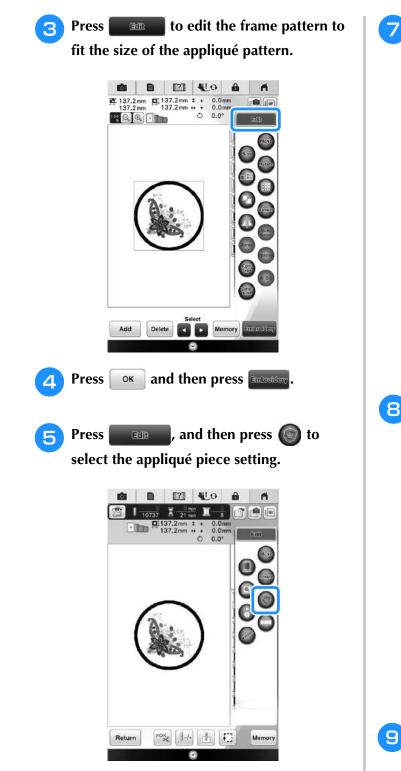


Perform the operations described in steps through ④ of "Creating an Appliqué Piece" on page 291.

1

Select the desired frame shape and pattern, and add it to the appliqué pattern.

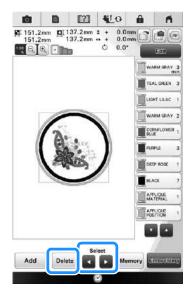




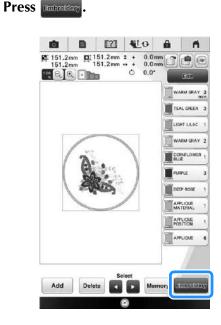
6 Press Return.

**7** Use **a** to select the frame pattern, and

then press Delete and OK.



 $\rightarrow\,$  The frame pattern is deleted.

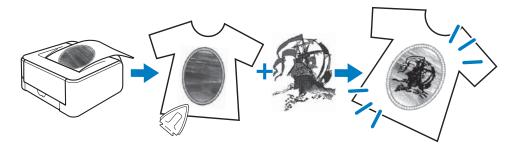


 Continue with step 
 of "Creating an Appliqué Piece" on page 291 to complete the appliqué piece.

## PRINT AND STITCH (COMBINING EMBROIDERY PATTERNS AND PRINTED DESIGNS)

Completed embroidery patterns combined with printed designs are built into this machine. Beautiful three-dimensional embroidered designs can be created by ironing a background onto fabric or printing it onto printable fabric, then sewing complementary embroidery on top of the background.

#### Using iron-on paper



#### Using printable fabric





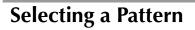
 •	
Step2Output from the machine the background image and the positioning image. $\rightarrow$ See "Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image" on page 297.	

	When using iron-on paper
	With a printer, print the background onto iron-on paper, and print the embroidery position sheet on plain paper. Then, iron the background image onto fabric.
Step3	When using printable fabric
	With a printer, print the background onto printable fabric, and print the embroidery position sheet on plain paper. → See "Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet" on page 299.

	Hoop in the embroidery frame the fabric with the background image ironed on or printed, check the embroidering	Ī
Step4	position, and then start embroidering.	l
	$\rightarrow$ See "Sewing Embroidery Patterns" on page 300.	

#### Vie Note

• Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.



Patterns combining embroidery and printed designs appears with and ...
Memo

Refer to the Quick Reference Guide for the detail of patterns which enable this function.

Select a pattern combining embroidery and printed designs.



→ Only the embroidery pattern (not the background image of the selected embroidery pattern) is displayed.

■ Checking the Combined Image





→ An image of the pattern combined with the background appears.



\* To return to the image of only the embroidery design, press

## Outputting the Background Image and Positioning Image

Use USB media or the computer to output the following three images from the machine.

- \* File name may differ depending on the PDF file selected.
- [xxx]r.pdf (Example: E\_1r.pdf) An image flipped on a vertical axis (for an ironon transfer)



• [xxx]n.pdf (Example: E\_1n.pdf) An image that is not flipped (for printing on printable fabric)



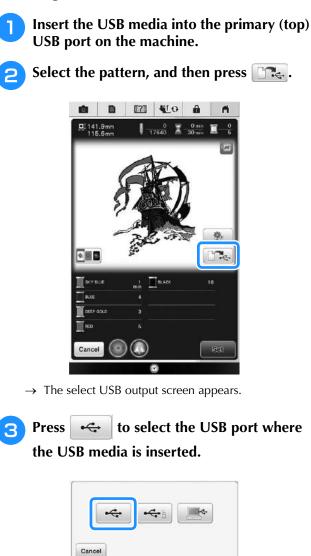
• [xxx]p.pdf (Example: E\_1p.pdf) An image that is not flipped, but has positioning marks attached (for positioning)



#### 🗸 Note

- Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.
- When printing the PDF file of the image with positioning marks, specify the highest image quality possible for full-color printing. In addition, use matte printing paper. Due to poor printing conditions, the machine's built-in camera may not be able to correctly detect the positioning marks. (For details on printing, refer to the operating instructions for your printer.)

### Using USB Media



→ Two files of the background image only and one file for aligning embroidery into position are copied (PDF format) onto the USB media.

#### Memo

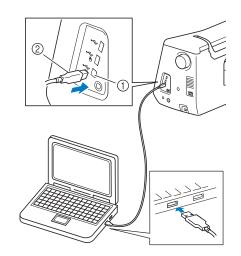
1

 Do not remove the USB media from the machine until data output is finished.

**4** Remove the USB media where the image data is saved from the machine, and then copy the image data from the USB media to the computer.

## ■ Using a USB Cable

Plug the USB cable connectors into the corresponding USB ports on the computer and on the machine.



- ① USB port for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon appears in "Computer (My Computer)" on the computer.

Select the pattern, and then press



 $\rightarrow$  The select USB output screen appears.



1	~	-	æ
0			2
			_

→ Two files of the background image and one file for aligning embroidery into position are copied (PDF format) into "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My Computer)".

#### Memo

 Do not disconnect the USB cable from the machine until data output is finished.

Copy the image data saved in "Removable Disk" into a different file before closing.

## Printing the Background and Embroidery Position Sheet

Print the PDF files of the background and embroidery position sheet. The background file that is printed differs depending on whether ironon paper or printable fabric is used.

To view the PDF file, Adobe<sup>®</sup> Reader<sup>®</sup> is needed. If it is not installed on your computer, you can download it from the Adobe Systems website: http://www.adobe.com/

Open the PDF file to be printed, click "File"-"Print", and then set "Page Scaling" to "None (100%)".

#### L Note

2

 Print the background and embroidery position sheet in their original dimensions. If an image is printed in a different size, the sizes of the embroidery pattern and background may not match. In addition, the built-in camera cannot detect the embroidery position mark. Make sure that the print settings are correctly specified.

#### Print the background image.

 When printing onto iron-on paper, print the file named E\_1r.pdf (an image flipped on a vertical axis).
 When printing onto printable fabric, print the file named E\_1n.pdf (an image that is not flipped).



① Background image

#### <sub>レ</sub>Note

- Before printing onto iron-on paper or printable fabric, we recommend performing a test print to check the print settings.
- For details on printing on iron-on transfer sheets or printable fabric, refer to the instructions for the iron-on transfer sheets and printable fabric.
- Some printers will automatically print an image flipped if an iron-on transfer sheet is selected as the paper. For details, refer to the instructions for the printer being used.

## Print the embroidery position sheet (file named E\_1p.pdf) onto plain paper.



① Embroidery position sheet

#### 🟒 Note

- When printing the PDF file for the embroidery position sheet, specify the highest image quality possible for full-color printing. In addition, we recommend printing on matte paper. If this is not done, the built-in camera may not be able to correctly detect the embroidery positioning mark.
- If an iron-on transfer sheet is used, transfer the image onto fabric.



### Memo

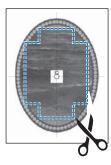
- For details on transferring from iron-on transfer sheets, refer to the instructions for the iron-on transfer sheets.
- If necessary, cut the iron-on transfer sheet to the size of the pattern before transferring the image.

## Sewing Embroidery Patterns

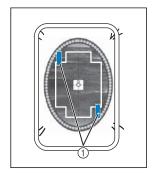
Hoop in the embroidery frame the fabric with the background image ironed on.



- Cut the paper printed with the center positioning image  $\beta$  so it can easily be positioned aligned with the background image on the fabric.
  - Lines or color changes in the image can help you find the correct alignment position.



Place the paper printed with the positioning image on top of the fabric so that the pattern is aligned, and then affix the paper to the fabric with cellophane tape to prevent the paper from moving.



① Cellophane tape

#### After checking that a pattern is selected, Δ press Embreddary

 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering screen appears.

#### Note

- · Before embroidering, check that the embroidery position sheet is perfectly aligned with the background.
- Align the embroidering position according to steps 2 through 13 of "Aligning the **Embroidering Position Using the Built-In** Camera" on page 264.

5

Remove the positioning sheet and press the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering.

# CAUTION

Before pressing the "Start/Stop" button to begin embroidering, remove the positioning sheet taped to the fabric in step 3.

## MAKING EMBROIDERY ADJUSTMENTS

## Adjusting Thread Tension

When embroidering, the thread tension should be set so that the upper thread can slightly be seen on the wrong side of the fabric.

## Correct Thread Tension

The pattern can be seen from the wrong side of the fabric. If the thread tension is not set correctly, the pattern will not finish well. The fabric may pucker or the thread may break.



- ① Right side
- ② Wrong side

Follow the operations described below to adjust thread tension according to the situation.

#### <sub>レ</sub>Note

• If the thread tension setting is made extremely weak, the machine may stop during sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction. Increase the thread tension slightly, and begin sewing again.

#### א Memo

- If you turn the main power to OFF or select a different pattern, the thread tension will reset to the automatic setting.
- When you retrieve a saved pattern, the thread tension setting will be the same as when the pattern was saved.

## Upper Thread is Too Tight

The tension of the upper thread is too tight, resulting in the bobbin thread being visible from the right side of the fabric.

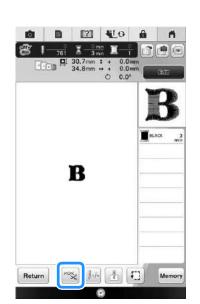
### Note

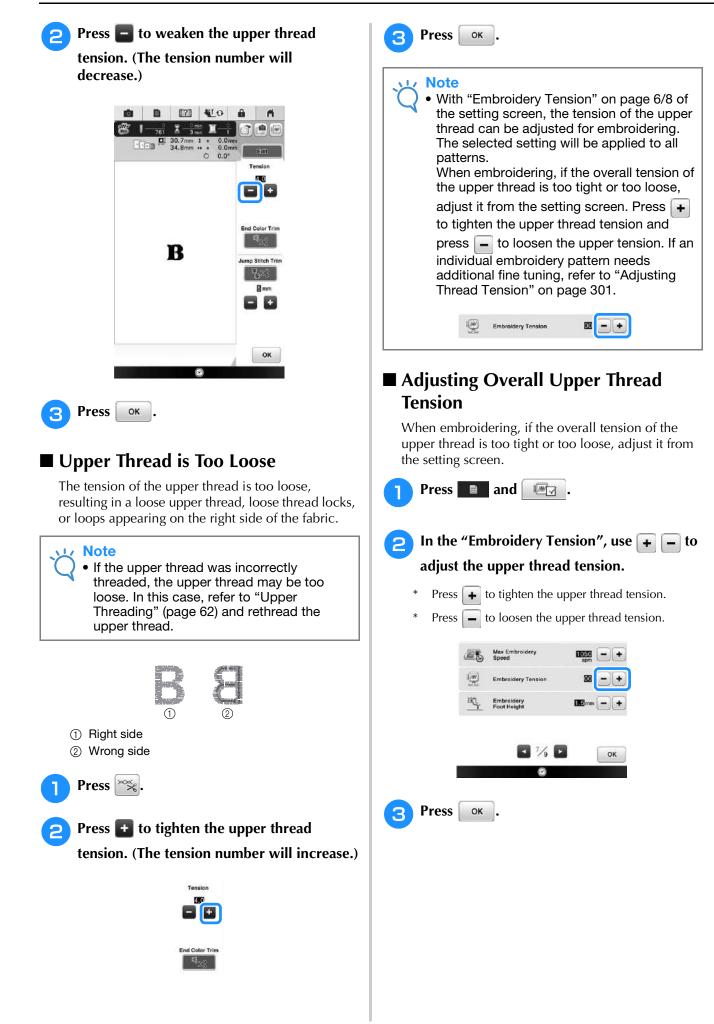
 If the bobbin thread was incorrectly threaded, the upper thread may be too tight. In this case, refer to "Setting the Bobbin" (page 59) and rethread the bobbin thread.





Press 💥





## Adjusting the Alternate Bobbin Case (with No Color on the Screw)

When using the embroidery bobbin thread provided, please be sure to choose the green marked bobbin case when performing utility stitch sewing and embroidery functions. When in the embroidery function mode, the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) should be selected when substitute embroidery bobbin threads (other than what is accompanied with your machine) are being used. The alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw) can be easily adjusted when bobbin tension changes are required to accommodate different bobbin threads. See "Sewing Attractive Finishes" on page 175.

To adjust the bobbin tension for embroidery function, using the alternate bobbin case (with no color on the screw), turn the slotted screw (-) with a (small) screwdriver.



① Do not turn a phillips screw (+).

2 Adjust with a screwdriver (small).

## ■ Correct Tension

Upper thread slightly appears on the wrong side of fabric.



Right side

② Wrong side

## Bobbin Thread is Too Loose

Bobbin thread appears slightly on the right side of fabric.



① Right side

② Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) clockwise, being careful not to over-tighten the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to increase bobbin tension.



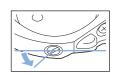
## Bobbin Thread is Too Tight

Upper thread on the right side of fabric seems to be lifting/looping and bobbin thread is not seen on the wrong side of fabric.



- ① Right side
- Wrong side

If this occurs, turn the slotted screw (-) counterclockwise, being careful not to over-loosen the screw, approximately 30-45 degrees to decrease bobbin tension.



# **A** CAUTION

- When adjusting the alternate bobbin case, be sure to remove the bobbin from the alternate bobbin case.
- DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the alternate bobbin case as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it unusable.
- If the slotted screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.

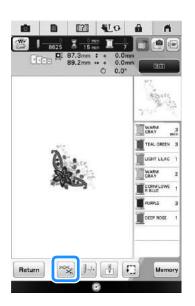
## Using the Automatic Thread Cutting Function (End Color Trim)

The automatic thread cutting function will cut the thread at the end of sewing each color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this

function off, press 📉 key and then 🔜. This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

\* This setting returns to its default when the machine is turned off.





2

Press **ress** to turn off the automatic thread cutting function.



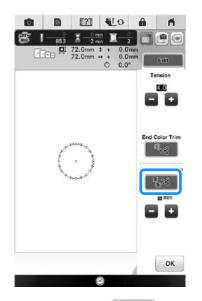
- ightarrow The key will display as  $\fbox{3}$
- \* When one color thread is sewn, the machine will stop without cutting the thread.

## Using the Thread Trimming Function (Jump Stitch Trim)

The thread trimming function automatically trim any excess thread jumps within the color. This function is initially turned on. To turn this function off, press 🛰 key and then . This function can be turned on or off during embroidering. Your customized setting remains after turning the machine off and on. ABCDEF (1) 1 Jump stitch Note When this function is turned on, use the included ball point needle 75/11 for embroidering patterns with short jump stitches such as alphabet characters. Using other needles may cause the thread to break. Press 🚟 1 [?] 72.0 th F Mem Return ×××

## 2

# Press **B** to turn off the thread trimming function.



- $\rightarrow$  The key will display as 5.
- \* The machine will not trim the thread before moving to the next stitching.

### Selecting the Length of Jump Stitch Not to Trim

When the thread trimming function is turned on, you can select the length of the jump stitch not to trim the thread. This function can be turned on or off during embroidering.

Select a setting from 5 mm to 50 mm in 5 mm increments.

\* Your customized setting remains after turning the machine off and on.

Press 📰 or 📰 to select the length of jump stitch.

For example: Press 🚹 to select 25 mm (1 inch)

and the machine will not trim a jump stitch of 25 mm or less before moving to the next stitching.



#### Ly Note

- If design has many trims it is recommended to select a higher jump stitch trim setting in order to reduce the amount of excess tails on backside of fabric.
- The higher number of the jump stitch length selected, the fewer number of times the machine will trim. In this case, more jump stitches remain on the surface of the fabric.

## Adjusting the Embroidery Speed



- In the "Max Embroidery Speed", use 🛨 🗕
  - to change the maximum embroidery speed.
  - \* You can choose from 8 different speed levels.



#### 🔊 Memo

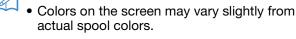
- SPM is the number of stitches sewn in one minute.
  - Decrease the embroidery speed when embroidering on thin, thick, or heavy fabrics.
  - The embroidery speed can be changed while embroidery is being sewn.
  - The setting specified before the main power is set to OFF remains selected the next time that the machine is turned on.
  - Decrease the embroidery speed to 600 spm when using a speciality thread like a metallic thread.

З Press ок.

## Changing the Thread Color Display

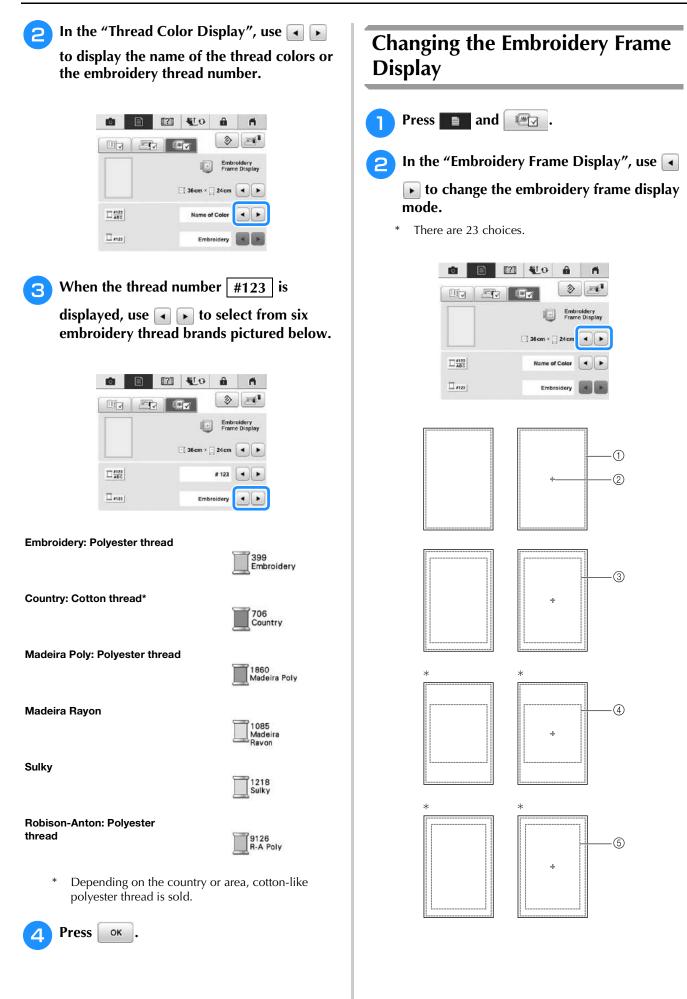
You can display the name of the thread colors or embroidery thread number.

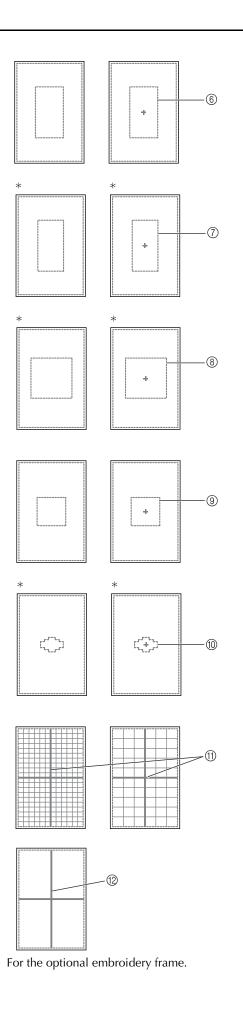
#### Memo



Press **and then**, press

ien, press Img.





- ① Super large frame embroidering area 36 cm × 24 cm (14 inches × 9-1/2 inches)
- 2 Center mark
- ③ Extra large frame embroidering area 30 cm × 20 cm (12 inches × 8 inches)
- Quilt frame embroidering area 20 cm × 20 cm (8 inches × 8 inches)
- Extra large frame embroidering area 26 cm × 16 cm (10 inches × 6 inches)
- 6 Embroidery area for optional large embroidery frame

18 cm  $\times$  13 cm (7 inches  $\times$  5 inches)

⑦ Embroidering area for optional border embroidery frame

18 cm  $\times$  10 cm (7 inches  $\times$  4 inches)

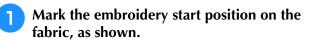
- (8) Embroidering area for optional medium frame 15 cm × 15 cm (6 inches × 6 inches)
- Medium frame embroidering area
   10 cm × 10 cm (4 inches × 4 inches)
- Small frame embroidering area
   2 cm × 6 cm (1 inch × 2-1/2 inches)
- ① Grid lines 10 mm (3/8 inch), 25 mm (1 inch)
- ⑦ Cross lines

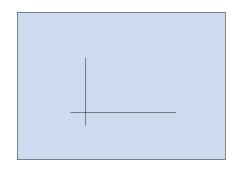
З Press ок.

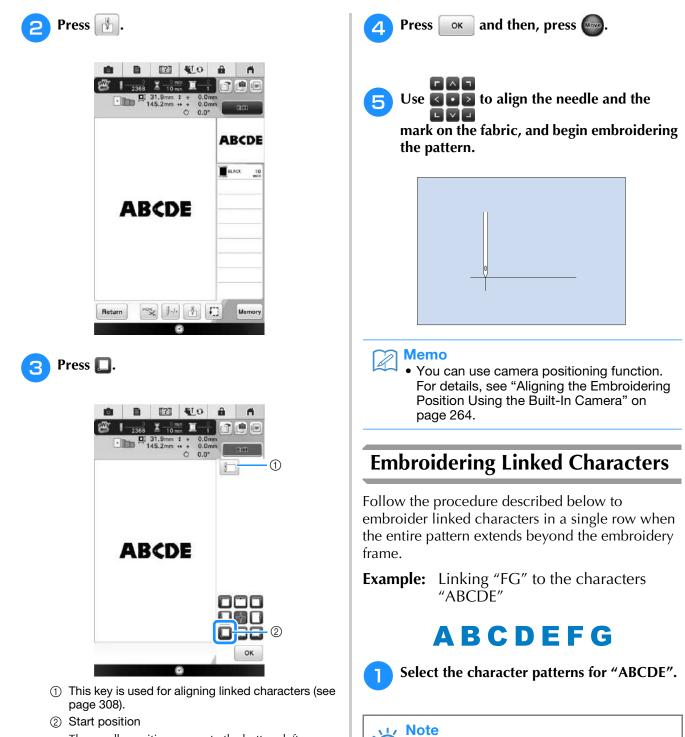
# Aligning the Pattern and the Needle

**Example:** Aligning the lower left side of a pattern and the needle



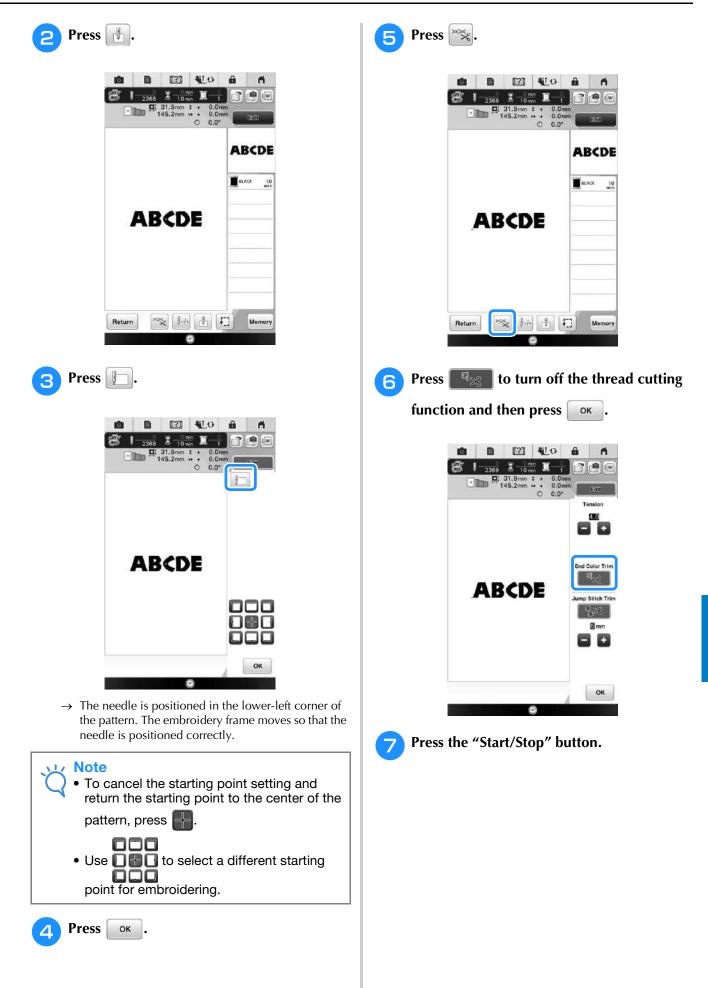






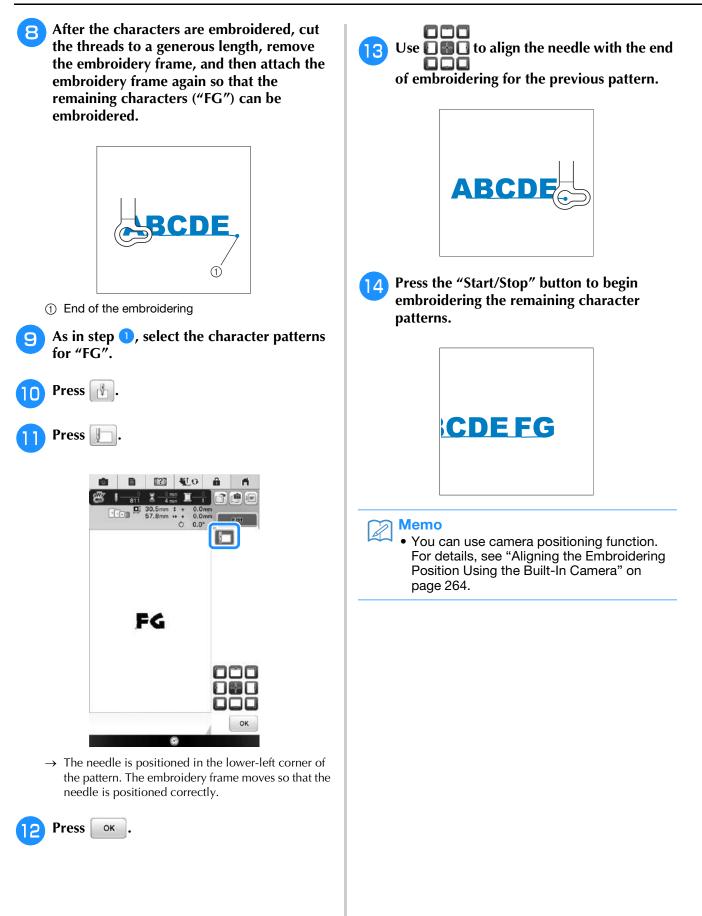
→ The needle position moves to the bottom left corner of the pattern (the embroidery frame moves so that the needle is positioned correctly).

• For details on selecting character patterns, refer to "Selecting Alphabet Character Patterns" on page 217.



<u> 
</u>

Advanced Embroidery



# **USING THE MEMORY FUNCTION**

## **Embroidery Data Precautions**

Observe the following precautions when using embroidery data other than that created and saved in this machine.

# 

• When using embroidery data other than our original patterns, the thread or needle may break when sewing with a stitch density that is too fine or when sewing three or more overlapping stitches. In that case, use one of our original data design systems to edit the embroidery data.

## ■ Types of Embroidery Data that can be Used

• Only .pes,.pha,.phb,.phc, and .dst embroidery data files can be used with this machine. Using data other than that saved using our data design systems or sewing machines may cause the embroidery machine to malfunction.

## ■ Types of USB Devices/Media that can be Used

Stitch data can be saved to or recalled from USB media. Use media that meets the following specifications.

- USB Flash drive (USB Flash memory)
- USB Floppy disk drive
- Stitch data can be recalled only.
- USB CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW drives

You can also use the following types of USB media with the optional Brother USB Memory Card Reader/USB card writer module.

- Secure Digital (SD) Card
- CompactFlash
- Memory Stick
- Smart Media
- Multi Media Card (MMC)
- xD-Picture Card

#### <sub>レ</sub>Note

- The processing speed may vary by port selection and quantity of data stored.
- Some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- The access lamp will begin blinking after inserting USB devices/media, and it will take about 5 to 6 seconds to recognize the devices/media. (Time will differ depending on the USB device/media).

#### Memo

- To create file folders, use a computer.
- Letters and numerals can be used in the file names. In addition, if the file name contains no more than eight characters, the entire file name will appear on the screen. If the file name is more than eight characters long, only the first six characters followed by "~" and a number appear as the file name.

Advanced Embroidery

ŚŚ

## ■ Connecting Your Machine to the PC

- Compatible models: IBM PC with a USB port as standard equipment IBM PC-compatible computer equipped with a USB port as standard equipment
- Compatible operating systems: Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8

## Precautions on Using the Computer to Create and Save Data

- If the name of the embroidery data file/folder cannot be identified, for example, because the name contains special characters, the file/folder is not displayed. If this occurs, change the name of the file/folder. We recommend using the 26 letters of the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase), the numbers 0 through 9,"-", and "\_".
- If embroidery data larger than 360 mm (H) × 240 mm (W) (approx.14 inches (H) × 9-1/2 inches (W)) is selected, a message is shown asking if you wish to rotate the pattern 90 degrees.
  Even after being rotated 90 degrees, embroidery data larger than 360 mm (H) × 240 mm (W) (approx. 14 inches (H) × 9-1/2 inches (W)) cannot be used. (All designs must be within the 360 mm (H) × 240 mm (W) (approx. 14 inches (H) × 9-1/2 inches (W)) design field size.)
- .pes files saved with the number of stitches or the number of colors exceeding the specified limits cannot be displayed. The combined design can not exceed a maximum number of 600,000 stitches or a maximum number of 127 color changes (Above numbers are approximate, depending on the overall size of the design). Use one of our design software programs to edit the embroidery pattern so that it meets these specifications.
- Embroidery data stored in a folder created in USB media can be retrieved.
- Do not create folders in "Removable Disk" on a computer. If embroidery data is stored in a folder in "Removable Disk", that embroidery data cannot be retrieved by the machine.
- Even if the embroidery unit is not attached, the machine will recognize embroidery data.

## ■ Tajima (.dst) Embroidery Data

- .dst data is displayed in the pattern list screen by file name (the actual image cannot be displayed). Only the first eight characters of the file name can be displayed.
- Since Tajima (.dst) data does not contain specific thread color information, it is displayed with our default thread color sequence. Check the preview and change the thread colors as desired.

# Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Machine's Memory

You can save embroidery patterns that you have customized and will use often; for example, your name, patterns that have been rotated or had the size changed, patterns that have had the sewing position changed, etc. A total of about 2 MB of patterns can be saved in the machine's memory.

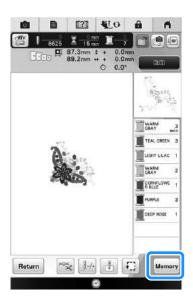
#### V Note

• Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.

#### 🥱 Memo

- It takes a few seconds to save a pattern to the machine's memory.
- See page 315 for information on retrieving a saved pattern.

Press Memory when the pattern you want to save is in the embroidering screen.



2	Press	æ,

\* Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

## ■ If the Memory is Full

If the screen below displays, either the maximum number of patterns have been saved or the pattern you want to save takes a lot of memory, and the

machine cannot save it. Press or and delete a previously saved pattern, then you can save the current pattern. Refer to "Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory" on page 315.

	w.
	le memory to save the pattern.
Delete another patt	tern?
	OK

# Saving Embroidery Patterns to USB Media

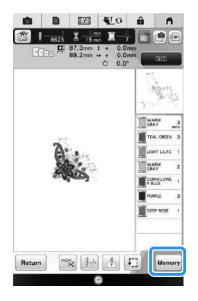
When sending embroidery patterns from the machine to USB media, plug the USB media into the machine's USB port.

#### Memo

- USB media is commercially available, but some USB media may not be usable with this machine. Please visit our website for more details.
- Depending on the type of USB media being used, either directly plug the USB device into the machine's USB port or plug the USB media Reader/Writer into the machine's USB port.
- The USB media can be inserted or removed at any time.

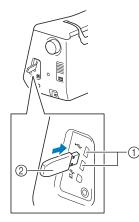


Press Memory when the pattern you want to save is in the embroidering screen.



2

Insert the USB media into the USB port on the machine.



- ① USB port
- ② USB media

#### بر Note

• Do not insert anything other than USB media into the USB media port. Otherwise, the USB media drive may be damaged.

3 Press 😽

\* Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without saving.



→ The "Saving..." screen is displayed. When the pattern is saved, the display returns to the original screen automatically.

#### 🟒 Note

 Do not insert or remove USB media while "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose some or all of the pattern you are saving.

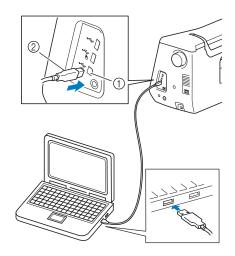
# Saving Embroidery Patterns in the Computer

Using the included USB cable, the machine can be connected to your computer, and the embroidery patterns can be temporarily retrieved from and saved in the "Removable Disk" folder in your computer. A total of about 3 MB of embroidery patterns can be saved in the "Removable Disk", but the saved embroidery patterns are deleted when the machine is turned OFF.

For Computers and Operating Systems, see "Connecting Your Machine to the PC" on page 312.

#### Vir Note

- Do not turn the main power to OFF while the "Saving..." screen is displayed. You will lose the pattern you are saving.
- Plug the USB cable connector into the corresponding USB ports for the computer and for the machine.
  - Turn on your computer and select "Computer (My Computer)".
  - \* The USB cable can be plugged into the USB ports on the computer and embroidery machine whether or not they are turned on.



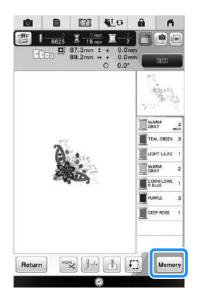
- ① USB port for computer
- ② USB cable connector
- → The "Removable Disk" icon will appear in "Computer (My Computer)" on the computer.



3

- The connectors on the USB cable can only be inserted into a port in one direction. If it is difficult to insert the connector, do not insert it with force. Check the orientation of the connector.
- For details on the position of the USB port on the computer (or USB hub), refer to the instruction manual for the corresponding equipment.

Press Memory when the pattern you want to save is in the embroidering screen.



- 4 Press 💻
  - \* Press **Cancel** to return to the original screen without saving.

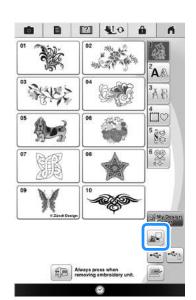


→ The pattern will be temporarily saved to "Removable Disk" under "Computer (My Computer)". 5 Select the pattern's .phc file in "Removable Disk" and copy the file to the computer.

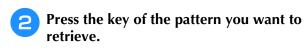
Disperse - 🗋 Oper Dass Newtolder 📰 - 🗍 🌢	And the second	ins 1-10 kg
A favolas la lénece 6 Genede	Computer + Removable Disk (0)	too da
i kinnen © Computer Summer Sum	Dopanize • 🗋 Open Base New folder	R• 01 4
Computer 30000455 ptc	te favotas	
Computer 30000455 ptc		
200000 Back I a a	ua Linner	
Se lorant	Camputer 999999455 phc	
	G Name	
	- MALINES	

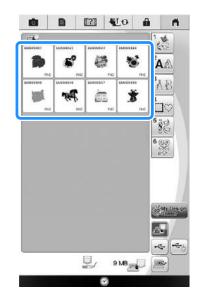
## **Retrieving Patterns from the Machine's Memory**





 $\rightarrow$  The machine displays the patterns currently in the memory.







\* Press Delete to delete the embroidery pattern.



 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering screen is displayed.

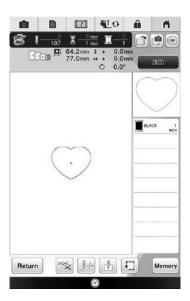
## **EMBROIDERY APPLICATIONS**

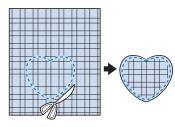
## Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (1)

You can use framed patterns of the same size and shape to create an appliqué. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

1

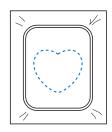
Select a straight stitch frame pattern. Embroider the pattern onto the appliqué material, then cut neatly around the outside of the shape.



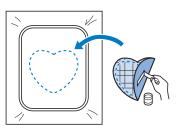




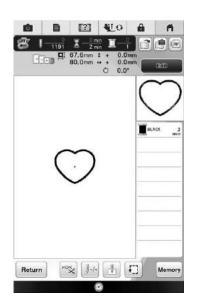
Embroider the same pattern from step **1** onto the base fabric.



3 Apply a thin layer of fabric glue or a temporary spray adhesive to the rear of the appliqué created in step **1**. Attach the appliqué to the base fabric matching the shapes.

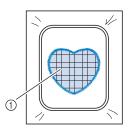


Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué. Embroider over the appliqué and base fabric from step 3 to create the appliqué.



#### 🗸 Note

• If you change the size or position of the patterns when selecting them, make a note of the size and location.



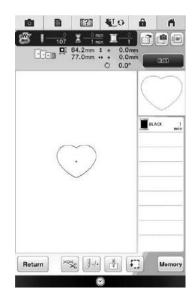
#### ① Appliqué material

## Using a Frame Pattern to Make an Appliqué (2)

This is a second method to make appliqué using embroidery patterns. You do not have to change the fabric in the embroidery frame using this method. Embroider one pattern with a straight stitch and one pattern with a satin stitch.

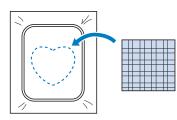


#### Select a straight stitch frame pattern, and embroider the pattern onto the base fabric.



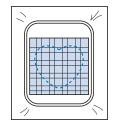


Be sure that the appliqué fabric completely covers \* the seam.

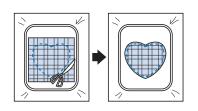




Embroider the same pattern on the appliqué fabric.



Remove the embroidery frame from the Δ embroidery unit, and cut around the outside of the stitches.



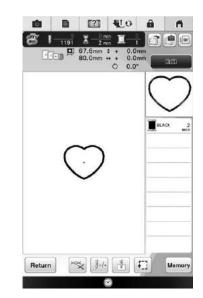
### Note

Do not remove the fabric from the embroidery frame to cut it. Also, do not pull strongly on the fabric. Otherwise, the fabric may loosen in the frame.



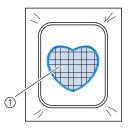
5

Select the satin stitch frame pattern of the same shape as the appliqué.



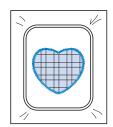
#### Note

- Do not change the size or position of the pattern.
  - If you change the size or position of the patterns when selecting them, make a note of the size and location.



Appliqué material

6 Reattach the embroidery frame to the embroidery unit, and embroider the satin stitch pattern to create an appliqué.



## Sewing Split Embroidery Patterns

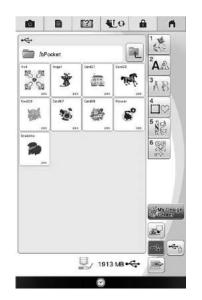
Split embroidery patterns created with PE-DESIGN Ver.7 or later can be sewn. With split embroidery patterns, embroidery designs larger than the embroidery hoop are divided into multiple sections, which combine to create a single pattern after each section is sewn.

For details on creating split embroidery patterns and for more detailed sewing instructions, refer to the operation manual included with PE-DESIGN Ver.7 or later.

The following procedure describes how to read the split embroidery pattern shown below from USB media and embroider it.



- Connect to the machine the media containing the created split embroidery pattern, and then select the split embroidery pattern to be embroidered.
  - \* For details on recalling patterns, refer to "Selecting Patterns from Embroidery Cards" on page 219, "Recalling from USB Media" on page 221, or "Recalling from the Computer" on page 222.



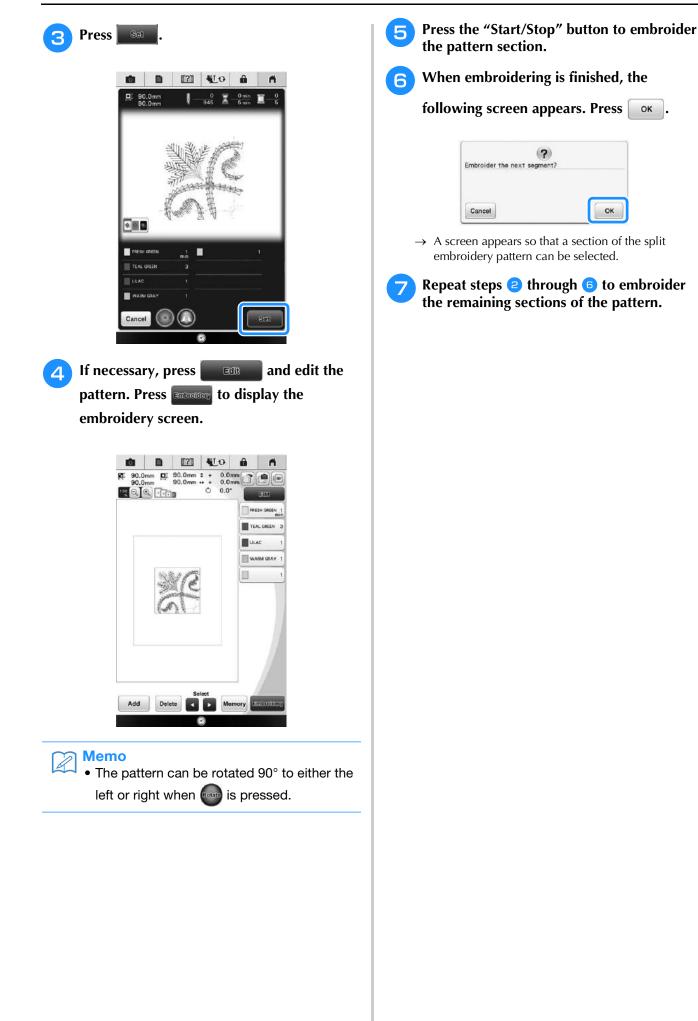
 $\rightarrow$  A screen appears so that a section of the split embroidery pattern can be selected.

### Select section 🖉 to be embroidered.

- Select the sections in alphabetical order.
- \* A maximum of 12 sections can be displayed in one page. If there are 13 or more sections in the pattern,

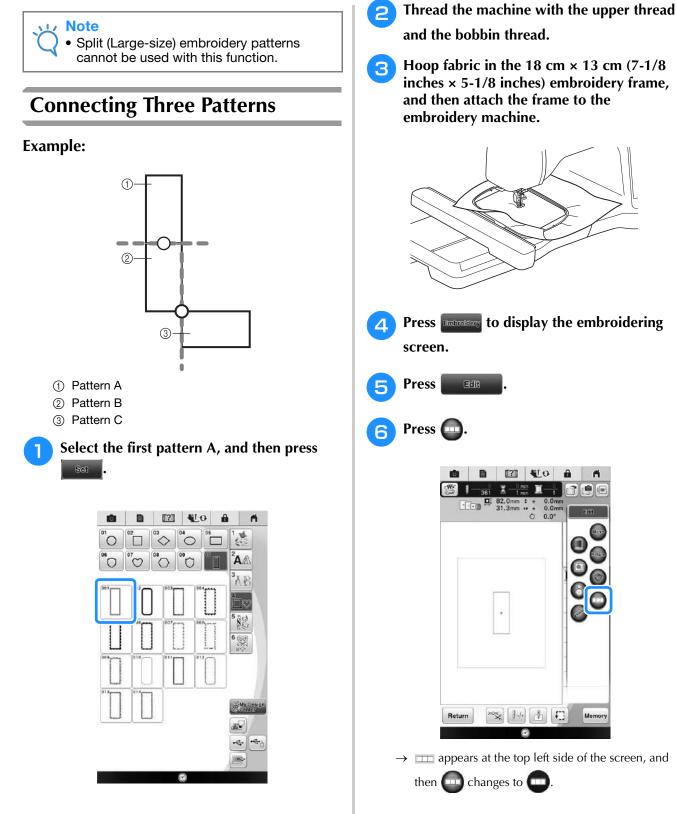
press or to display the previous or next page.



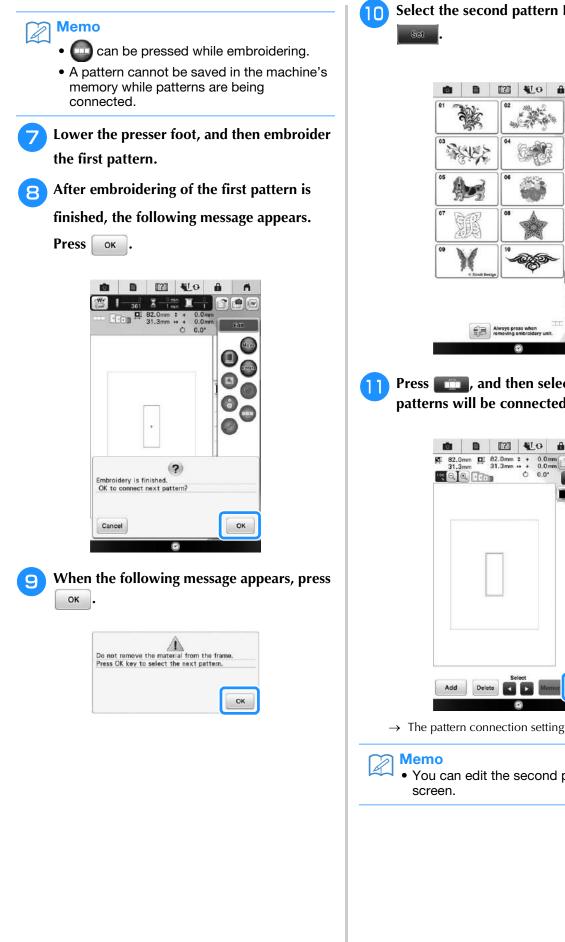


# USING THE CAMERA TO CONNECT PATTERNS

Instead of using thread marks, the camera can be used to connect patterns in the Embroidery Edit screen. An area of 33 cm  $\times$  21 cm (12-1/2 inches  $\times$  8 inches) can be embroidered when the camera is used to connect patterns. Select the appropriate frame depending on the size of the embroidery. We recommend using the super large embroidery frame (36 cm  $\times$  24 cm (14 inches  $\times$  9-1/2 inches)) when using the camera to connect patterns. The small embroidery frame (2 cm  $\times$  6 cm (1 inch  $\times$  2-1/2 inches)) cannot be used with the camera function.



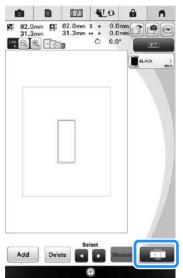
Advanced Embroidery



Select the second pattern B, and then press

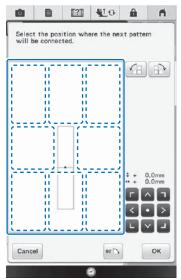


Press **min**, and then select how the patterns will be connected.

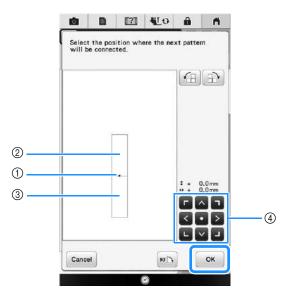


 $\rightarrow$  The pattern connection setting screen appears.

• You can edit the second pattern in this



\* You can adjust the position of the second pattern using the keys described below.



- ① Connecting point
- First pattern A
- ③ Second pattern B
- ④ Press to move the second pattern.

	Press to rotate the second pattern in a clockwise arc referring the first pattern as a center.
	Press to rotate the second pattern in a counterclockwise arc referring the first pattern as a center.
90	Rotate the second pattern 90 degrees in a clockwise arc.

→ Message appears on screen and carriage will move after pressing ok.

## 🟒 Note

• The second pattern will be automatically connected to the first pattern without adjustment. Change the position of the

second pattern manually using



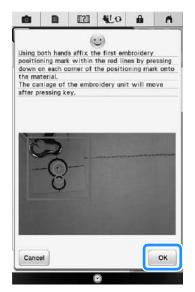
- The position of the second pattern can be moved using your finger or the included touch pen.
- Use , for or the conter of the pattern to the corner of the center of the first pattern, when changing the pattern's connecting position.

Prepare two embroidery positioning stickers. Follow the on-screen instructions to affix the two stickers to the fabric so that the positioning marks can be detected by the camera.

#### 🟒 Note

- Use the positioning stickers included with this product or purchase replacement stickers (SAEPS2, EPS2: XF0763-001) from your authorized Brother dealer. If any other sticker is used, the camera may not recognize it.
- The 182 mm × 257 mm (7 inches × 10 inches) embroidery positioning sticker sheet with strong adhesive is most appropriate for connecting patterns (SAEPS2, EPS2: XF0763-001). If any other positioning sticker is used, it may peel off. If the sticker peels off, the patterns cannot be connected.

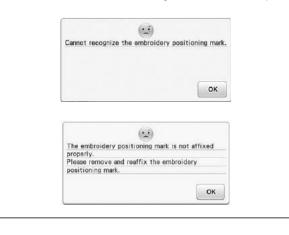
Affix the first embroidery positioning sticker onto the fabric within the red lines that now appear on the screen of the machine by using both hands to press down on each corner of the sticker. Affix the sticker with the large circle to the top as shown on machine. Then, press ok.



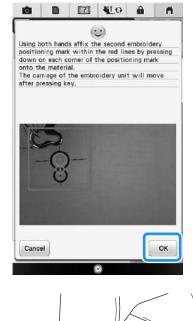
 $\rightarrow$  The camera detects the first positioning sticker.

#### 🟒 Note

- Use new positioning stickers. If a sticker is reused, it may easily peel off. If the sticker peels off during this procedure, the patterns cannot be connected.
- Use your fingers to apply pressure to the corners of the positioning sticker to firmly affix it to the fabric. If the sticker is not firmly attached, the camera may incorrectly detect the sticker.
- If any of the following messages appear, reattach the positioning sticker in the correct position. Make sure that the sticker is affixed with the large circle at the top.



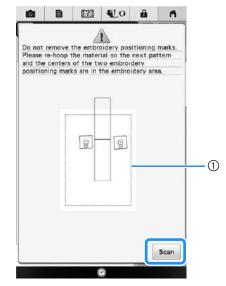
Use both hands to affix the second embroidery positioning mark within the red lines that now appear on the screen of the machine by pressing down on each corner of the positioning mark onto the material and then touch .





 $\rightarrow$  The camera detects the second positioning sticker.

16 After the two positioning stickers have been detected, the following message appears.

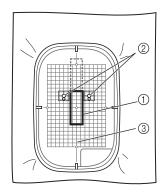


## 🟒 Note

• The positioning markers are shown with a tilted appearance to make sure that as long as the markers were placed with the red outlined square, they will be read properly and correct connection can be assured.

While making sure that the two positioning stickers do not peel off, remove the embroidery frame from the machine, and then rehoop the fabric. Be sure to hoop the fabric so the next pattern and both the positioning stickers are within the embroidery sewing area. Reattach the

frame and press Scan .

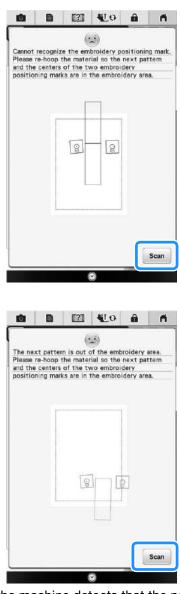


- ① Pattern to be embroidered next
- ② Centers of large circles for stickers
- ③ Embroidery sheet
- $\rightarrow$  The camera detects the two positioning stickers.

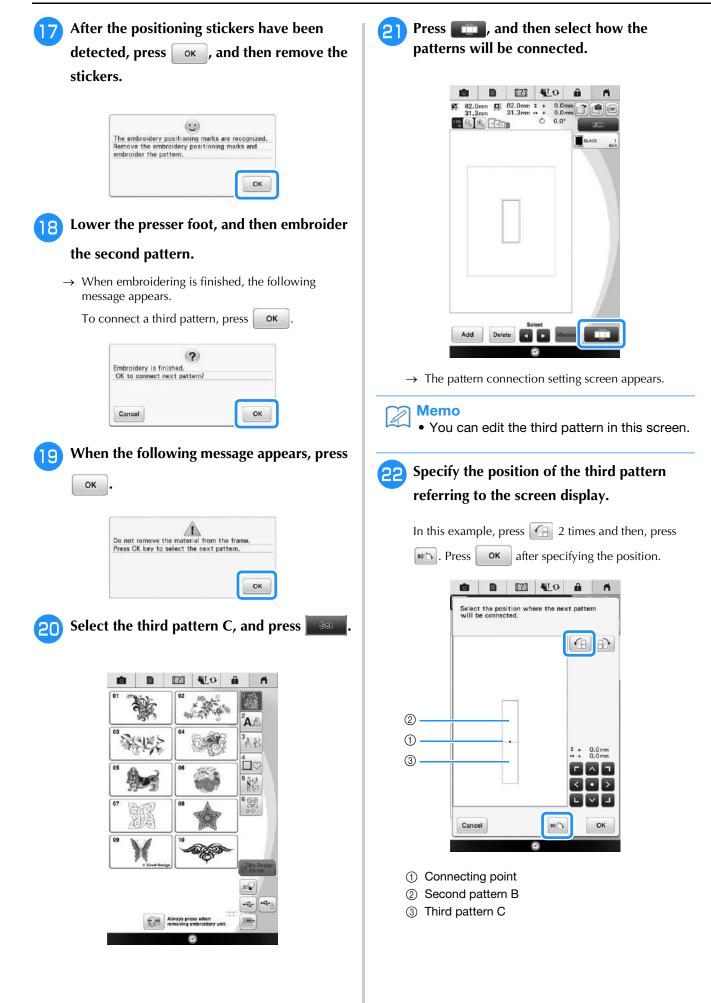
#### 🟒 Note

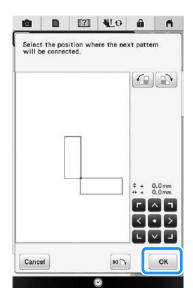
• If either of the following messages appear, rehoop the fabric so that the next pattern and both the positioning stickers are within the embroidery sewing area as indicated in the screen.

Press or to detect the positioning stickers.



- If the machine detects that the next pattern and the centers of the large circles of the two positioning stickers do not fit within the embroidering area, the operation will be paused. Follow the on-screen instructions to reposition the positioning stickers. Refer to "Changing the Position of a Sticker" on page 327 to reposition the stickers.
- If the sticker peels off during this procedure, the patterns cannot be connected. If this occurs, restart the procedure from the beginning.





 $\rightarrow$  Message appears on screen and carriage will move after pressing **OK**.



# Lower the presser foot, and then embroider the third pattern.

→ When embroidering is finished, the following message appears. When finished connecting

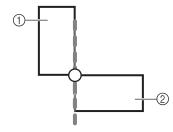
patterns, press Cancel

(?	2)
Embroidery is finished.	
OK to connect next patte	ern?
Cancel	

## Changing the Position of a Sticker

If the selected pattern or positioning stickers for connecting the next pattern do not easily fit in the embroidering area, follow the on-screen instructions that appear after step 15 on page 324 in order to move the positioning stickers.

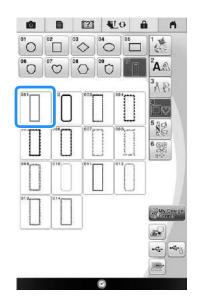
For an example, the on-screen instruction appears when you use the embroidery frame with a size of 10  $\text{cm} \times 10$  cm (4 inches  $\times$  4 inches) to connect patterns as shown below.



① Pattern A

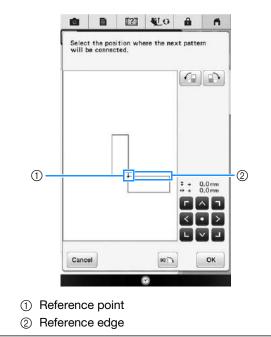
2 Pattern B

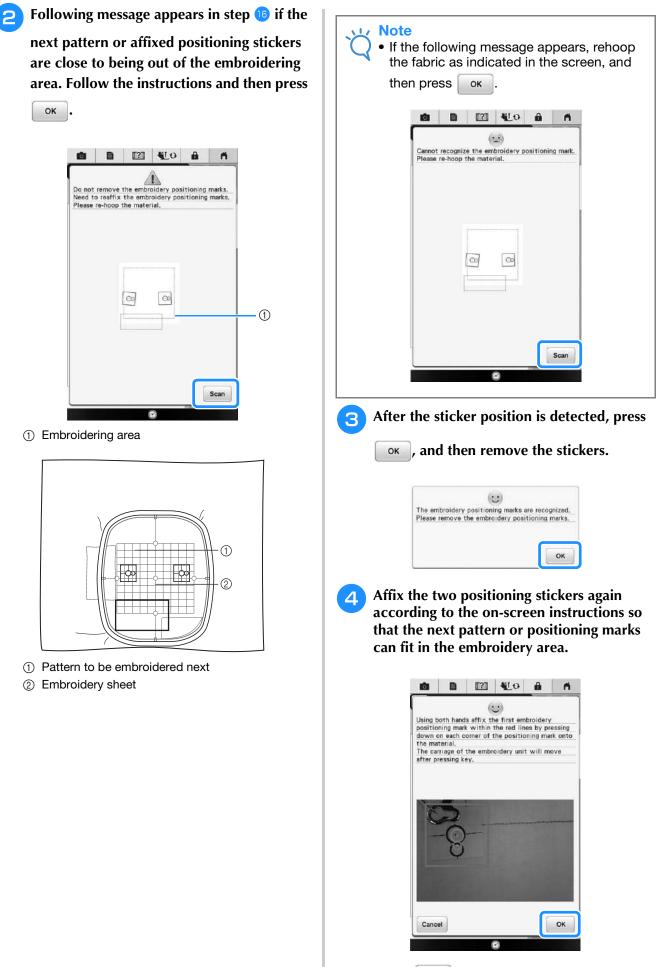
 Refer to steps 1 through 1 of "Connecting Three Patterns" using the embroidery frame with a size of 10 cm × 10 cm (4 inches × 4 inches) to embroider the first pattern and to connect the second pattern.



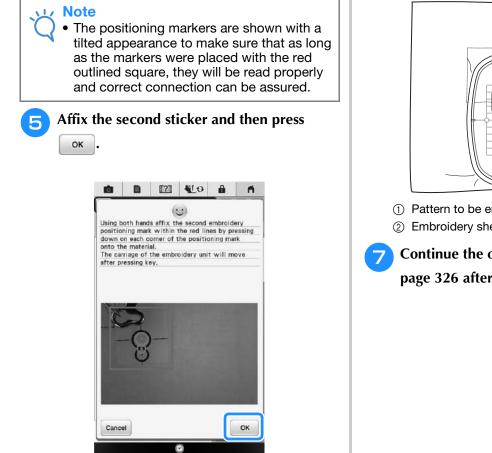


 When referring to steps 1 through 15, make sure you change the reference edge and reference point to reflect this exercise.



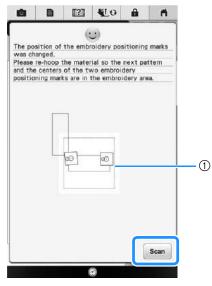


→ Press or bother or both

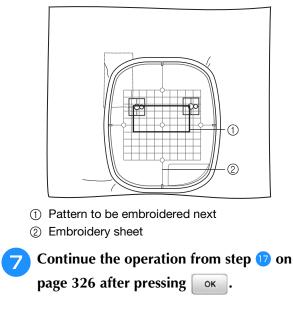


 $\rightarrow$  The camera detects the second positioning sticker.

6 After the two positioning stickers have been detected, the following message appears. While making sure that the positioning stickers do not peel off, rehoop the fabric according to the example displayed on the on-screen instruction.



① Embroidering area

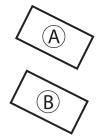


ŝ

Advanced Embroidery

# **CONNECTING ROTATED PATTERNS**

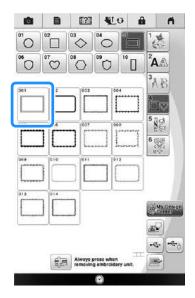
Greater design variations can be created by rotating patterns. The following procedure describes how to connect patterns that are rotated.



A: First pattern B: Second pattern

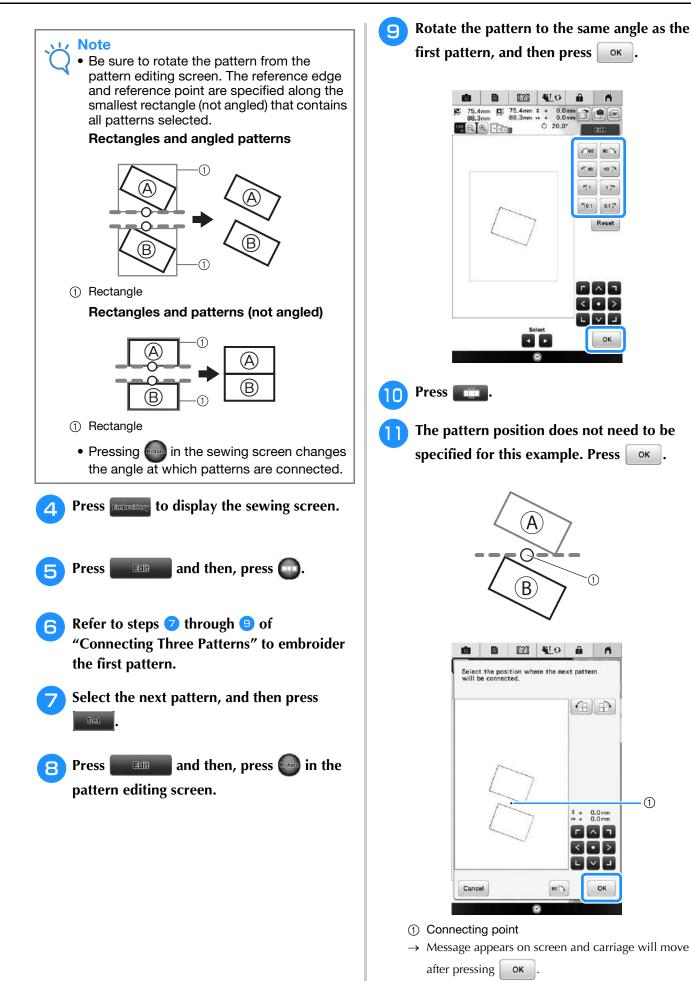


Select the pattern, and then press



 $\rightarrow$  The pattern editing screen appears.

Edit and then, press 🔤 in the Press 2 pattern editing screen. **A** n 53.2mm 
 153.2mm 
 1 
 53.2mm 
 1 
 53.2mm 
 74.7mm 
 74.7mm 
 0.0mm 
 0.0m
 Add Delete Memory Rotate the pattern, and then press З OK . • n Ċ. 75.4mm 
 75.4mm 
 75.4mm 
 ÷ 0.0mm
 89.3mm 
 ↔ 0.0mm
 90.0mm
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 0 
 £ 90' 90.7 10 10 7 71 17 70.1 0.17 Reset  $< \cdot >$ Sel ок 



Advanced Embroidery

(1)

331

Continue with step <sup>13</sup> of "Connecting Three Patterns" to finish connecting the patterns.

# Connecting Patterns to be Joined Along an Edge

Greater design variations can be created by sliding the patterns being connected.

The following procedure describes how to use this function to connect patterns so they are joined along an edge. Before connecting the patterns, the basting function will be used to measure the distance that the pattern will be slid.

# (A) (B)

A: First pattern B: Second pattern

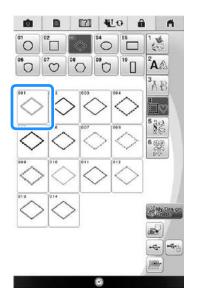
1

Measuring the Distance That the Pattern Will Be Slid

Set "Embroidery Basting Distance" in the settings screen to "0.0".

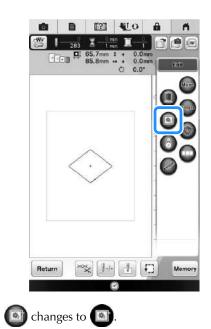


**2** Select the pattern whose slide distance is to be measured.

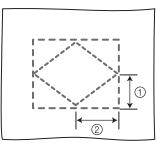


Continue to the embroidery screen, and press and then, press for to select the basting function.

3



4 After the pattern is sewn, remove the fabric from the frame, and then measure the distance that the pattern is to be slid.

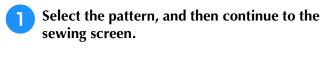


- 1) Vertical: 32.8 mm
- ② Horizontal: 42.8 mm



Sew trial embroidery to check that the pattern will

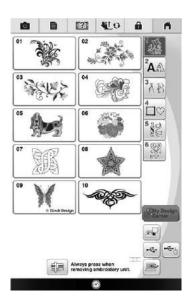
be slid the correct distance.



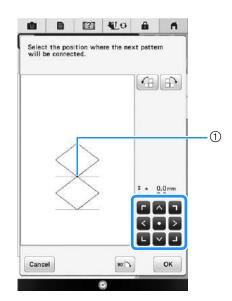


Embroider the first pattern.

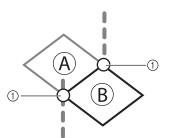
 Refer to steps <sup>(a)</sup> through <sup>(1)</sup> of
 "Connecting Three Patterns" on page 321 to select the next pattern.

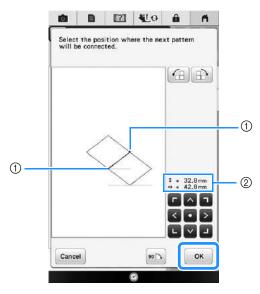


5 Specify the position of the second pattern referring to the vertical/horizontal position measured in step 4 of "Measuring the Distance That the Pattern Will Be Slid" on page 332. Press or after specifying the position.



① Connecting point





① Connecting point

O Vertical/Horizontal position

 $\rightarrow$  Message appears on screen and carriage will move after pressing  $\bigcirc \kappa$ .

## 6 Continue with step 🔞 of "Connecting

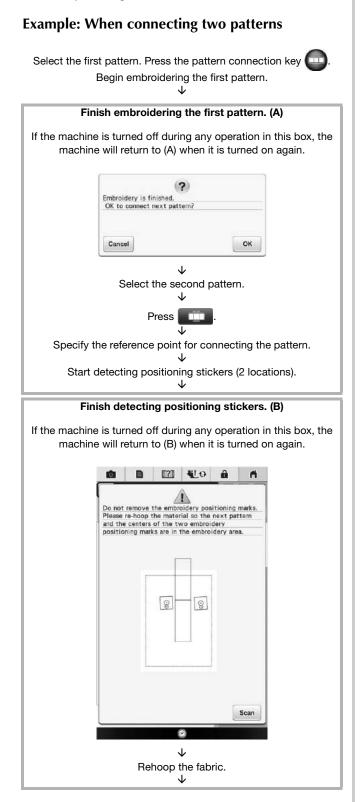
Three Patterns" on page 323 to finish connecting the patterns.

# Note

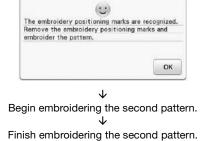
• After checking that the trial embroidery results are satisfactory, sew the actual embroidery. If you decide to change the distance that the pattern is slid after checking the trial embroidery, change the settings selected in step 5.

# **RESUME FEATURE**

If the machine is turned off while the pattern connecting function is being used, the machine will return to the operation indicated below when it is turned on again. The machine operation will differ depending on when it is turned off.



Finish detecting positioning stickers (2 locations).



ŝ



ABOUT MY DESIGN CENTER 338
Basics: Creating a Pattern
PATTERN DRAWING SCREEN 340
Key functions
Before Creating Designs
Drawing Lines
Setting the line types and colors
Drawing Regions
■ Setting the brush types and fill colors
Using the stamp key
Using the erase key
Using the select key
After Editing the Design
STITCH SETTINGS SCREEN
■ Line sew stitch settings
■ Fill stitch settings
Stippling stitch settings
EMBROIDERY IMAGE PREVIEW SCREEN 349
EMBROIDERY IMAGE PREVIEW SCREEN
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN       350         Using the Scanning Frame
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN       350         Using the Scanning Frame       350         Scanning with an Embroidery Frame       351         Scanning to Trace Background Image       351         Importing the Background Image       353         LINE SCAN       354         Using the Scanning Frame to Create a Pattern with Line Scan       354         ILLUSTRATION SCAN       357
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN       350         Using the Scanning Frame
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN       350         Using the Scanning Frame
MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN       350         Using the Scanning Frame.       350         Scanning with an Embroidery Frame.       351         Scanning to Trace Background Image.       351         Importing the Background Image.       353         LINE SCAN       354         Using the Scanning Frame to Create a Pattern with Line Scan

# **ABOUT MY DESIGN CENTER**

With My Design Center, you can use below functions;

- hand-drawn functions creating embroidery patterns by drawing on the LCD screen
- scanning functions creating embroidery patterns by not only scanning object with built-in camera, but also imported data from USB media or computer.

You can also combine patterns that you have created with the machine's built-in patterns.

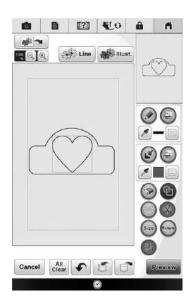
Start My Design Center by pressing in the home page screen or pressing ettern selection screen.

# **A** CAUTION

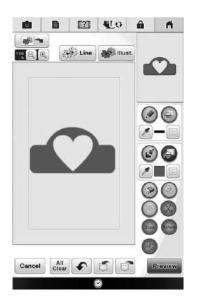
- Only touch the screen with your finger or the pen (stylus) included with the sewing machine. Do not use a mechanical pencil, screwdriver or any other hard or sharp object. In addition, do not press the screen with extreme pressure. Otherwise the screen may be damaged.
- All or part of the screen may sometimes become darker or lighter due to changes in the surrounding temperature or other changes in the environment. This is not a sign of a malfunction. If the screen is difficult to read, adjust its brightness.

## **Basics: Creating a Pattern**

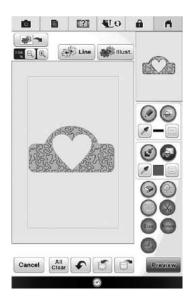
**1.** Draw a line drawing in the pattern drawing screen. (page 342)



## 2. Add color to the pattern.

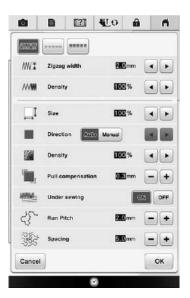


3. Select colors and stitching and add desired patterns to complete the pattern.



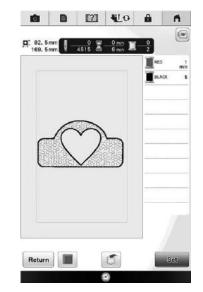
## 4. Specify stitching settings. (page 347)

Further customize your pattern by specifying embroidery stitching settings, such as satin stitch width and density and the sewing direction.



5. Convert image data to embroidery data.

The embroidery image preview screen appears. (page 349)

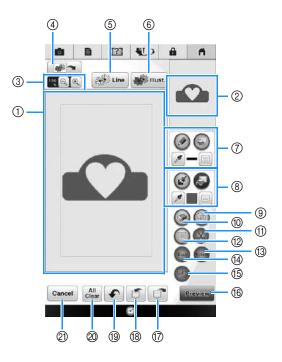


6. Edit the pattern in the embroidery edit screen, for example, by combining it with the machine's built-in patterns. (page 224)



 $\rightarrow$  Embroidering begins.

# PATTERN DRAWING SCREEN



- ① Pattern drawing area
- ② Pattern preview area

## Memo

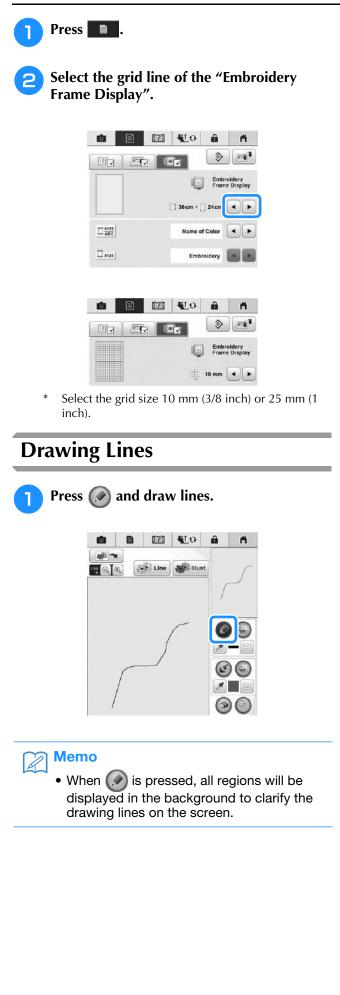
- The actual dimension of the pattern area is the size of the embroidery frame, which is 36 cm × 24 cm (approx. 14 inches × 9-1/2 inches). The pattern you drew may be bigger than you expected. Please resize the pattern after converting the design to the embroidery pattern.
- When the pattern is enlarged so that only a part of it appears in the pattern drawing area, the entire pattern is displayed in the pattern preview area. The red frame in the pattern preview area indicates the part of the pattern displayed in the pattern drawing area. Move the red frame in the pattern preview area with the touch pen or your finger to display the corresponding area in the pattern drawing area.

## ■ Key functions

No.	Display	Key Name	Explanation	Page
3		Magnify key	Press this key to magnify the pattern by both 200% and 400% in the screen.	234
4		Image scan key	Press this key to scan the attached frame and display on the screen as the background while using the My Design Center. You can scan the fabric as the background or scan the picture as the reference when creating the pattern.	-
5	Line	Line design key	Press this key to scan the line drawing to edit and convert to the embroidery data using the built-in camera. You can also import the line drawing image from the USB media or the computer and create the embroidery design.	354
6	Hlust,	Illustration design key	Press this key to scan the illustration to edit and convert to the embroidery data using the built-in camera. You can also import the illustration from the USB media or the computer and create the embroidery design.	357
7		Line tool key	Draw lines and set the color. You can select the line type and color as you need.	342
8		Brush tool key	Paint with brush and set the color. You can select the brush type and color as you need. Painted lines and areas will be converted to the pattern embroidered with fill stitch.	343
9	<b>@</b>	Stamp key	Press this key to select the stamp shape for pattern drawing. You can set the fill/stroke setting.	344
10	9	Erase key	Press this key to erase lines and shapes that have been drawn. You can select the size/shape of the eraser.	345
1	$\bigotimes$	Cut key	Press this key to cut out the selected section.	346
12		Select key	Press this key to select a section for moving by finger or pen, copying, deleting, changing size and rotating lines and shapes that have been drawn.	346
13	Rotato	Rotate key	Press this key to rotate the selected section.	346
14	Size	Size key	Press this key to change the size of the selected section.	346
15	B	Duplicate key	Press this key to duplicate the selected section.	-
16	Preview	Preview key	Press this key to convert the image data to embroidery data.	-
17		Recall key	Press this key to recall image data from the machine's memory, USB media or the computer.	-
18		Store key	Press this key to store the pattern being created.	-
(19)	F	Undo key	Press this key to undo the last operation that was performed and return to the previous operation. Each press of this key undoes one operation.	-
0	All Clear	All Clear key	Press this key to clear all the lines and shapes and start from the beginning.	-
2)	Cancel	Cancel key	Press this key to end the My Design Center. All lines and shaped are erased when you press this key.	-

## **Before Creating Designs**

The pattern preview displays the design smaller than the actual size. You can view the actual pattern size by setting the "Embroidery Frame Display".

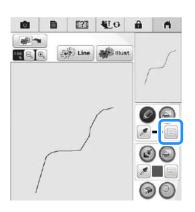


## ■ Setting the line types and colors

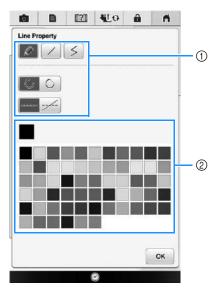
You can set or change the line types and colors anytime. You can also specify the line types and colors before drawing lines.



Press is to set the line types and colors.



 $\rightarrow$  The Line/Color type settings screen appears.



- ① Line types
- ② Color selection: touch the color palette to activate the drawing pen color.

#### Line types

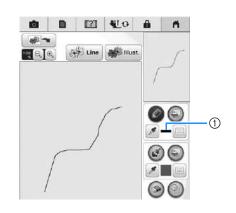
	Freehand line
	Select 6 for opening the end. Select
	to closing the end automatically.
/	Straight line with one stroke
5	Straight line changing directions to the point you select. If the end point is created near the start point, a closed object will be created.

 Stitch line
Line without stitch for creating a region. Created region will be defined by the gray line.

# Press ok to return to the pattern

## drawing screen.

 $\rightarrow$  The color bar on the line tool key is changed to the selected color.



#### (1) Color bar

#### Press ( ) and press on the line to change З color.

- $\rightarrow$  The connected line will be changed to the selected color.
- You can pick the color from the line already drawn, press 🎢 and select the desired color.

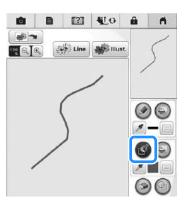
#### Memo T

 Press (a) to magnify the image when you cannot press on the line correctly.

## **Drawing Regions**

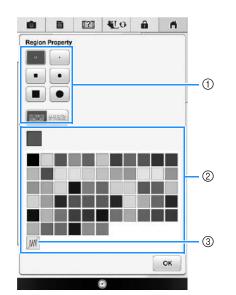


Press ( and draw with brush.



## Setting the brush types and fill colors

Press 🔲 to set the brush types and fill colors.



- ① Brush types
- ② Fill color selection: touch the color palette to activate the paint brush color.
- ③ Select *w* when you don't want any fill stitch.

## Brush shapes/sizes

Square brush	
Round brush	

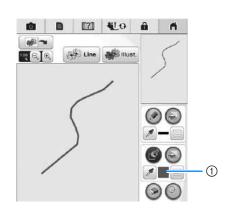
$\odot$	Small brush	
	Medium brush	
	Large brush	

## Fill stitch types

(11111) ¥#262	Fill stitch pattern
NWW BROOM	Stippling pattern

# Press K to return to the pattern drawing screen.

→ The color bar on the brush tool key is changed to the selected color.





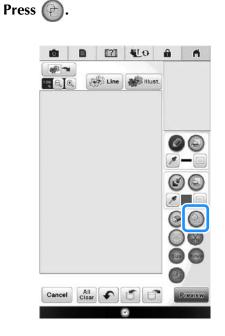
З

1

- Press 🔊 and press on the brush line to
- change color and fill stitch types. You can also set the fill color/stitch type to the closed area that is made by lines and brush lines.
- \* You can pick the color from the brush line or the area already drawn, press 📝 and select the

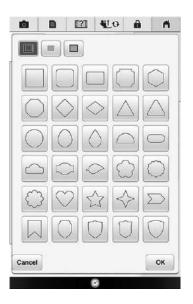
## Using the stamp key

desired color.





## Select a stamp type and stamp shape.



#### Stamp types

Outline
Fill stitch
Outline and fill stitch

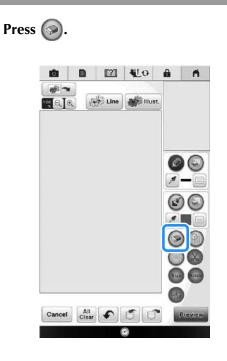
\* Press **Cancel** to return to the pattern drawing screen.



#### Press ok to set the selected stamp.

- $\rightarrow$  The pattern drawing screen is displayed.
- \* You can change size of, rotate or move the shape right after you create it by pressing (sin) or (see ).

## Using the erase key





Select the size and shape of the eraser.

• •	
•	
	ОК
	and the second se

3 Pr

Press or to set the selected erase.

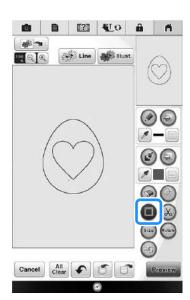
- $\rightarrow~$  The pattern drawing screen is displayed.
- **A** Drag along the area or line that you want to

erase while the key appears as 🕥.

## Using the select key

You can select the part of the design to move and/ or edit. Some keys are available only after you select the part.

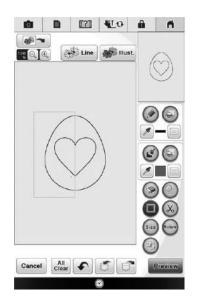






## Select the area you want to edit.

 $\rightarrow$  Selected area is marked with red square.



3 Edit the design with available keys. (See "Key functions" on page 341 for the details of each key function.)



## After Editing the Design

Press **Preview** to create the embroidery pattern.

## Memo

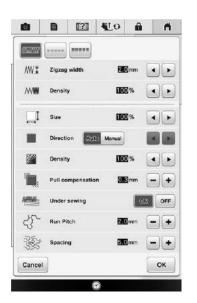
- We recommend saving the My Design Center pattern. You cannot return to the design screen after applying stitching settings and continuing to the embroidery edit screen.
- If the pattern is saved, you can start My Design Center again and further edit the pattern or create a new pattern with the same design and different stitching settings applied.

## **STITCH SETTINGS SCREEN**

Before creating the embroidery pattern, specify the stitch settings. Lines of the design are sewn with zigzag stitches, running stitches, or triple stitches, and areas are sewn with fill stitches or stippling stitches. Stitching of the areas was already selected in "Drawing Regions" on page 343, so specify values of detailed settings.

If the design data is saved, the settings can be changed after a trial embroidering.

After finished specifying the settings, press or to check the preview of the pattern.





## ■ Line sew stitch settings

Select the type of the line sew stitch from zigzag stitch (www), running stitch (www) or triple stitch (www).

Zigzag stitch

M I Zigzag width	Specifies the width of the satin stitches used to sew the lines of the design.
Min Density	Specifies the density of the satin stitches used to sew the lines of the design.

Running stitch ...... /Triple stitch ......

\* Both includes an under sewing.

Run Pitch	Specifies the length of the straight stitch of the design.
-----------	--

## ■ Fill stitch settings

Size	Increases/reduces the size of the pattern.
Direction	Specifies the sewing direction. Set to "Manual" when you have desired direction of fill stitch.
Density	Specifies the stitch density of fill stitch.
Pull compensation	Specifies to correct the shrinkage of the pattern by slightly shortening or lengthening the stitching. Change the setting after you embroider the pattern and can check the shrinkage.
Under sewing	Select if you need or not need the under sewing stabilize fabric.

## ■ Stippling stitch settings

୍ଦି <sup>C</sup> Run Pitch	Specifies the length of a stitch of the fill stitch of the design.
Spacing	Specifies the spacing between the stitches when embroidering the stippling stitch.

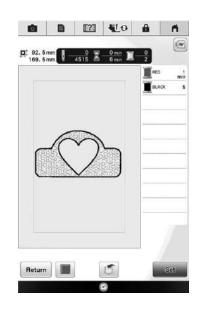
## **EMBROIDERY IMAGE PREVIEW SCREEN**

You can check the total stitch number, embroidery time and spool thread color number to embroider the pattern. Press im to check the pattern image with the embroidery frame.

Press to proceed to the embroidery edit screen.

11

Note
 Once you proceed to the embroidery edit screen, you cannot return to the previous page.



Press **m** to change the stitch settings again.

Press 💽 to save the pattern as the embroidering data.

Press Return to the pattern drawing screen.

# MY DESIGN CENTER WITH SCAN

## Using the Scanning Frame



Prepare the desired drawing/illustration.

# CAUTION

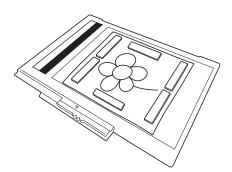
• To avoid having the embroidery foot strike the frame during the scanning process and possibly causing injury, check the following: the thickness of the fabric or paper, creases or folds in the fabric or paper that may be rolled up too close to the frame.

## 🔊 Memo

• Only one sheet of paper can be placed in the scanning frame per scan.

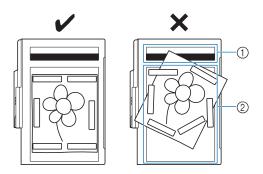
# Place the paper to be scanned in the scanning frame, and then secure the paper in place with the included magnets.

 Place the magnets at six locations around the paper to secure it, making sure that the line drawing is not covered.



#### Viv Note

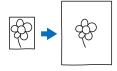
• When placing the paper in the scanning frame, make sure that the white balance area is not hidden; otherwise, the drawing cannot be scanned correctly. At the same time, be sure to place the scan image within the scan area. The image out of the scan area will not be scanned.



- ① White balance area
- ② Scan area
  - Make sure that the white balance area or the scan area is not dirty or scratched; otherwise, the image cannot be scanned correctly.
  - Be sure to use the included magnets. If any other magnets are used, they may become attached to the machine during scanning, or other problems, such as a misaligned scan image, may occur.
  - Be sure to place the magnets so that they secure the paper firmly. If the paper is placed unevenly, the image cannot be scanned correctly.
- If the scanning frame is dirty, wipe it with a cloth dampened with a diluted neutral detergent solution.

#### Memo

• If you want to scan the small piece of paper that cannot be placed with the magnets, copy the image on the paper to the larger paper and place on the scanning frame.



## Attach the embroidery unit to the machine, and then turn on the machine.

Refer to "Attaching the Embroidery Unit" on page 211.

#### Note

 Unthread the machine to avoid having the thread slipping out of the needle or getting caught on the embroidery frame.

Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to raise the presser foot, and then press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.

The presser foot is not raised high enough when raised with the presser foot lever.

# CAUTION

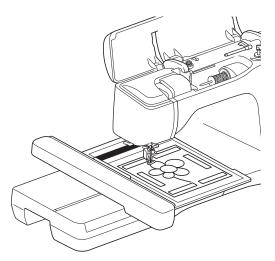
• If you want to scan the small piece of paper that cannot be placed with the magnets, copy the image on the paper to the larger paper and place on the scanning frame.

## Note

 Make sure that presser foot and needle are fully raised. If scanning is started with the presser foot and needle lowered, the scanning frame may hit the machine, causing damage.

#### **5** After attaching the scanning frame to the embroidery unit, swing the frame-securing lever toward you to secure the frame.

Refer to "ATTACHING THE EMBROIDERY FRAME" on page 261.

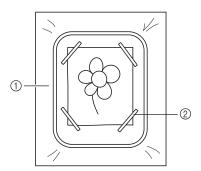


Note

- Unthread the machine to avoid having the thread pull out of the needle or becoming caught on the scanning frame.
- Be sure not to attach any presser foot other than the embroidery foot "W+" or "W", otherwise the presser foot will be scanned.

## Scanning with an Embroidery Frame

Drawings and illustrations can also be scanned using an embroidery frame. Hoop the embroidery frame with fabric larger than the frame. Place the paper to be scanned on the fabric, and then secure it, with tape.



① Fabric

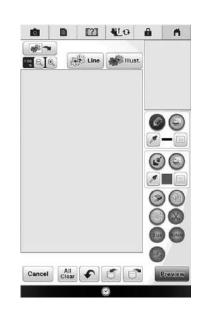
```
2 Tape
```

## Scanning to Trace Background Image

If you have a favorite picture or drawing, it can easily be traced on the scanned background image and you can create your own pattern.







 $\rightarrow$  The image display screen appears.

- 2 Using a magnets, affix a picture to the scanning frame and attach the frame to the machine. Refer to "Using the Scanning Frame" on page 350.

#### 🗸 Note

З

- When scanning starts, some of the machine lights will turn off in a certain circumstances, in order to increase the scan quality. The machine lights will return to their original brightness when scanning ends.
- You can import the data as a .jpg, .png, .bmp file type.
- $\rightarrow$  When the following message appears, press **o**k



- $\rightarrow$  Scanning begins.
- \* To stop scanning and return to the screen in

step 3, press Cancel

4 When scanning is finished, scanned image is displayed transparently in the pattern drawing area.



5 Trace the background image. Refer to "PATTERN DRAWING SCREEN" on page 340 about creating your pattern.



- ① Transparency adjustment
  - Press **o**r **r** to adjust the transparency of the background.

Each press of **P** lightens the background, making the line pattern darker. Each press of **G** darkens the background, making the line pattern lighter.

6 After editing the pattern, follow the procedure from "After Editing the Design" on page 346.

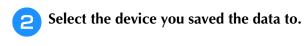
## ■ Importing the Background image

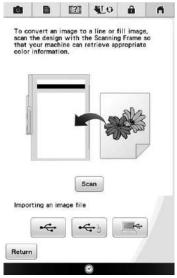
Prepare data of your favorite picture that you want to create the pattern with. Save the data as a .jpg file type to the PC or USB media.





 $\rightarrow$  The image display screen appears.

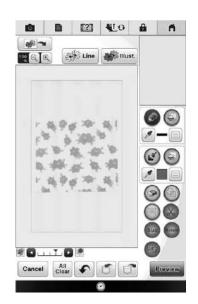




3	Select the data, and then press	ок
---	---------------------------------	----

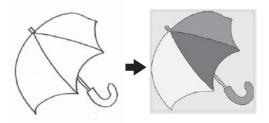
1			
		UND.00	
		ooket	
	3 xx	_XXXX	 J.,
			Set

• The selected image is displayed transparently in the pattern drawing area.



# LINE SCAN 📖

Custom patterns can be created from drawings. You can create patterns by scanning your drawings using the included scanning frame or importing an image from USB media or a computer.



## **Recommended line drawings for Line Scan**

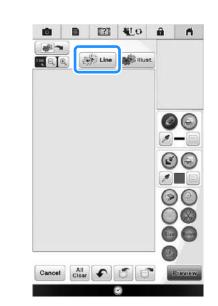
- Line drawings must be drawn clearly using lines with approximately 1 mm thickness.
- Line drawings should be drawn in a strong contrast.
- If the lines are too short or gathered too densely, they will not be scanned correctly.

## بر Note

- For details on creating patterns using color illustrations, refer to "ILLUSTRATION SCAN" on page 357.
  - If you cannot scan the drawings as expected, you can edit the design in the My Design Center. Refer to "PATTERN DRAWING SCREEN" on page 340.
  - Line drawings are scanned without recognizing the thickness of lines. If you want to change the thickness of lines, specify in the Settings screen. Refer to "STITCH SETTINGS SCREEN" on page 347.
  - Line drawings are scanned as black lines. If you want to change the colors, specify in the My Design Center. Refer to "Drawing Regions" on page 343.

## Using the Scanning Frame to Create a Pattern with Line Scan

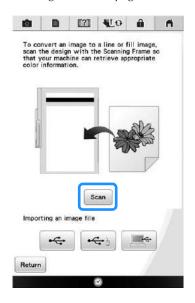




 $\rightarrow$  The image display screen appears.



If you scan the image, make sure that the scanning frame is attached to the machine. Refer to "Using the Scanning Frame" on page 350.



## Vote

• When scanning starts, some of the machine lights will turn off in a certain circumstances, in order to increase the scan quality. The machine lights will return to their original brightness when scanning ends.

 $\rightarrow$  When the following message appears, press **OK** 



 $\rightarrow$  Scanning begins.

To stop scanning and return to the screen in step (2), press Cancel.

# When scanning is finished, specify the "Gray-Scale Detection level" on the screen if necessary.

The "Gray-Scale Detection level" can change the black and white threshold for the image.



- \* If you do not know how the settings should be changed, first continue the operation without specifying settings and check the results.
- To stop scanning and return to the screen in

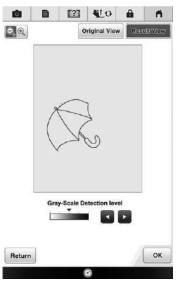
step **2**, press **Cancel**. The scanned image will be deleted when you return to the previous screen.

# 4 Move 🔊 to frame the image for the pattern.



→ The screen for confirming the converted image appears.

6 In the screen for confirming the converted image, you can adjust the "Gray-Scale Detection level" again, if necessary.

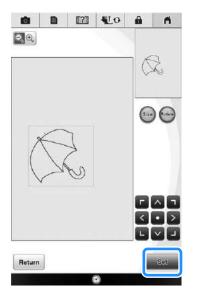


- \* If you do not know how the settings should be changed, first continue the operation without specifying settings and check the results.
- \* To enlarge the image, press  $\square \oplus$ .
- To display the image before being converted, press
   Original View
   Compare the images before and after being converted, and then change the settings if necessary.
- \* To return to the previous screen, press Return
- → After changes to the settings of "Detection level" is applied, OK changes to Retry . Press Retry to check that the image is as desired.



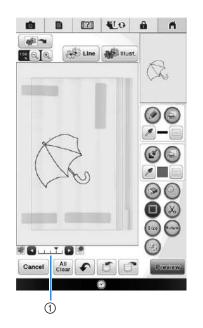


In this screen, the pattern can be resized, rotated or moved.



- → The pattern design editing screen for My Design Center appears.
- \* To return to the previous screen, press Return

# **9** Follow the procedure described on page 224 to edit the pattern as desired.



 The original image is displayed in the background. Use gauge ① to adjust the transparency of the background. Each press of lightens the background, making the line pattern darker. Each press of darkens the background, making the line pattern lighter.

## <sub>と</sub>Note

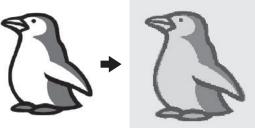
- During scanning, the small dots that appear and unnecessary lines can be erased.
  - To import an image from USB media or a

computer, press 🦛 , 🖛 or

Even to the second seco

# ILLUSTRATION SCAN

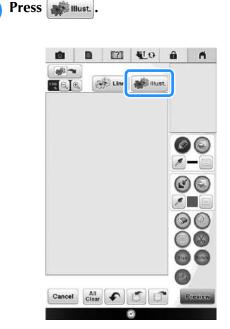
Custom patterns can be created from color illustrations. You can create patterns by scanning an illustration using the included scanning frame or importing an image from USB media or a computer.



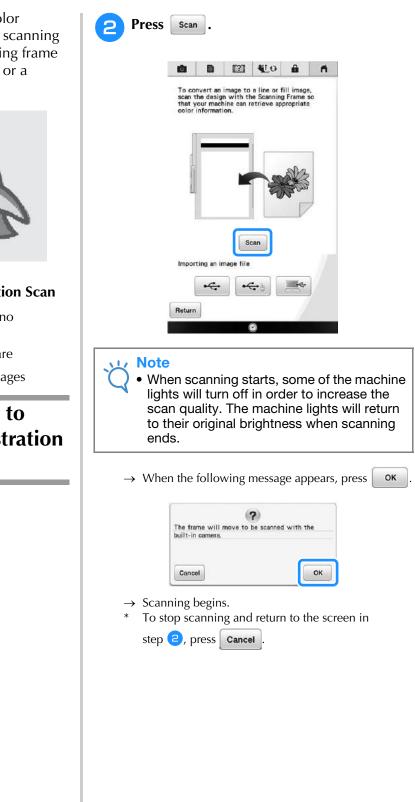
#### **Recommended illustrations for Illustration Scan**

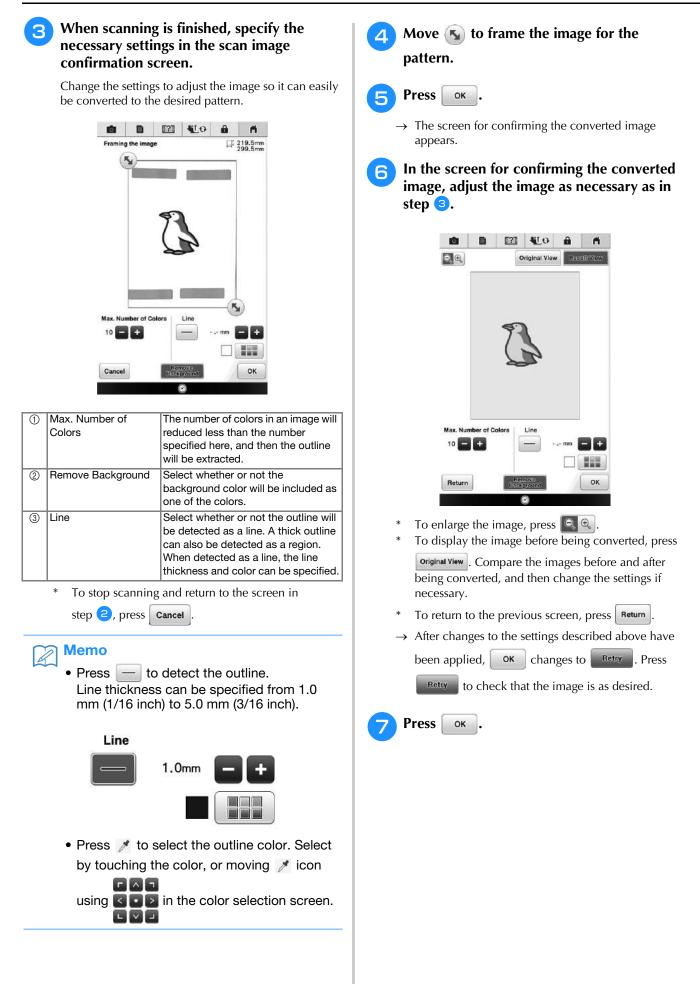
- Patterns that are clearly drawn, with no gradation, fading or blurriness.
- Patterns that are at least a 5 mm square
- Patterns that are extremely simple images

## Using the Scanning Frame to Create a Pattern with Illustration Scan



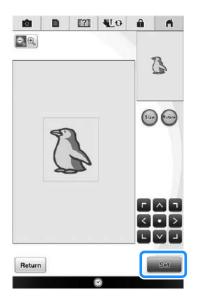
 $\rightarrow\,$  The image display screen appears.





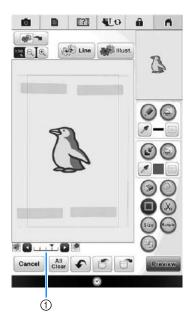


In this screen, the pattern can be resized, rotated or moved.

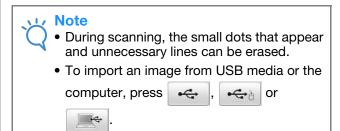


- → The pattern design editing screen for My Design Center appears.
- \* To return to the previous screen, press Return

**9** Follow the procedure described on page 224 to edit the pattern as desired.



 The original image is displayed in the background. Use gauge ① to adjust the transparency of the background. Each press of lightens the background, making the illustration pattern darker. Each press of darkens the background, making the illustration pattern lighter.

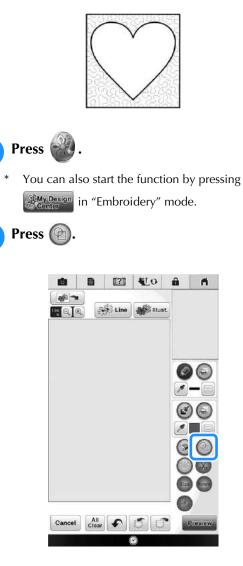


2

# STIPPLING

### Basic Stippling with My Design Center

Create a stippling design with the basic procedure. Example:



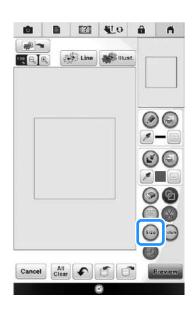
3 S

Select the square shape, and then press





Press 💿 to enlarge the square.



ОК

 $\bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

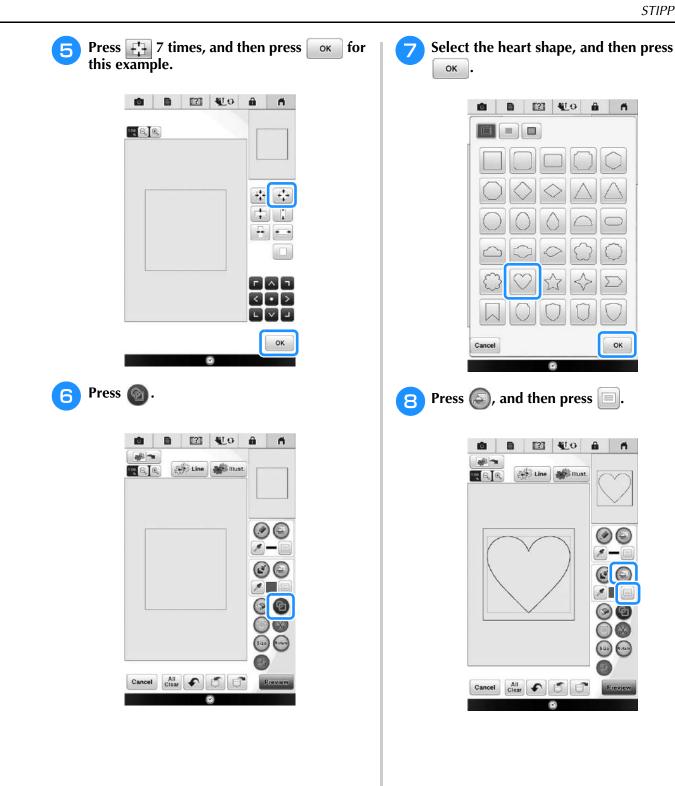
**/**-[

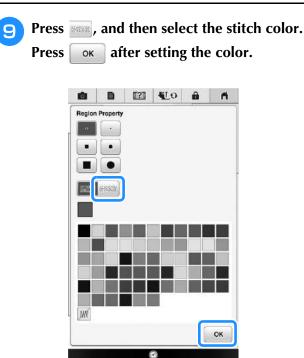
0

 $\bigcirc \otimes$ 

Size Rotate

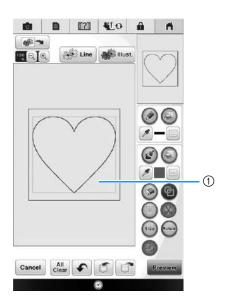
Preview





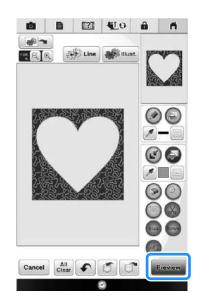
10)

Select the area you want to set stippling effect.



① Select this area.

Press Preview 11



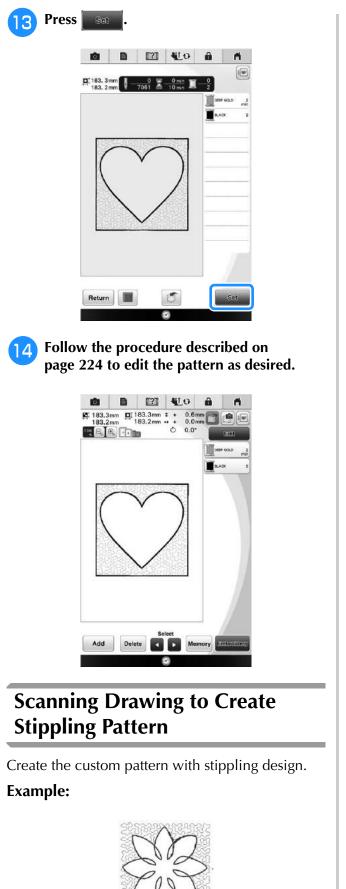
 $\rightarrow$  When the following message appears, press OK

	(?)
	ter" data will not be saved.
OK to continue?	

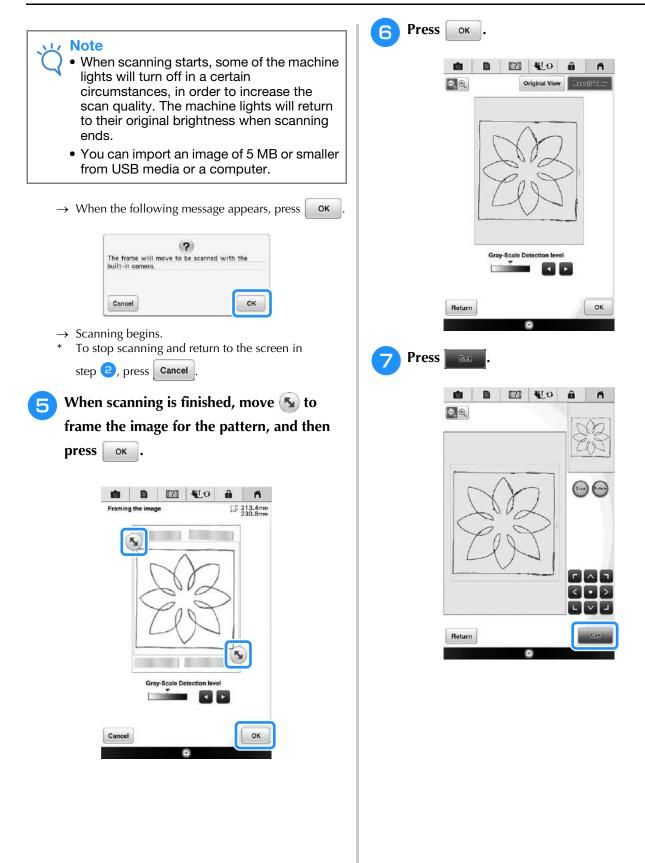
12

Adjust the stippling settings to create the desired effect, and then press ok.



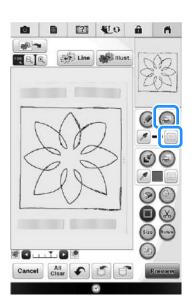


Set the drawing to create the pattern to the scan frame. Press You can also start the function by pressing My Design in "Embroidery" mode. Press Stine . 3 n Ċ. Line Illust. 1 . Q. Q. 06 (d) (~ Cancel All Clear Bres  $\rightarrow$  The image display screen appears. Set the scan frame to the machine, and then Δ press Scan . â n ġ. scan the design with the Scanning Frame that your machine can retain Scan Importing an im oe file --Return



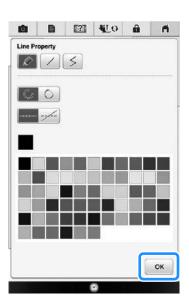


Press ( , and then press ).

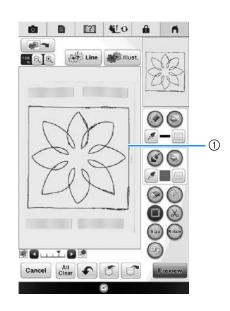


9

Press  $\rightarrow$  to set the outline of the pattern, and then press  $\circ \kappa$ .



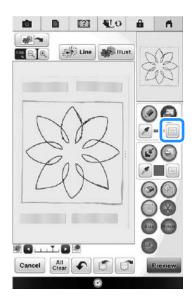
Select the outline of the pattern to set as the line without stitch.



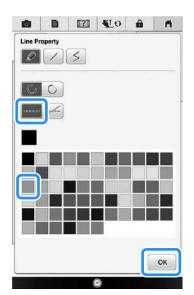
① Outline of the pattern



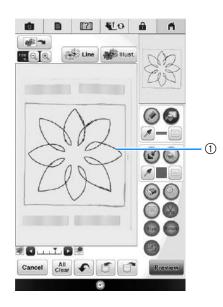
Press is to select the color of the stitch around the stippling effect.





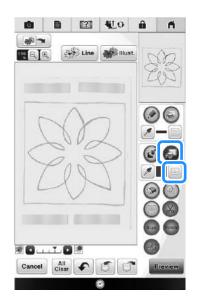


Select the stitch line around the stippling 13 effect.



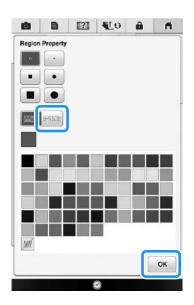
① Stitch line

14 Press 🖾, and then press 📃.





**15** Press **IDENT**, and then select the stitch color. after setting the color. ок





Select the area you want to set stippling effect.



Follow the procedure from step 1) of "Basic Stippling with My Design Center".

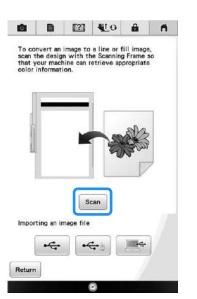
## **Scanning Fabric and Stippling**

Use the fabric pattern to coordinate with the stippling pattern.

I Se	et the fabric to the embroidery frame.
<b>2</b> P	ress 🎱.
*	You can also start the function by pressing
3 P	ress Line.
	Cancel All Clear Preview

 $\rightarrow$  The image display screen appears.

- **4** Set the embroidery frame to the machine,
  - and then press **Scan**.



#### L/ Note

- When scanning starts, some of the machine lights will turn off in a certain circumstances, in order to increase the scan quality. The machine lights will return to their original brightness when scanning ends.
- You can import an image of 5 MB or smaller from USB media or a computer.

 $\rightarrow$  When the following message appears, press OK

The frame will move to	he scanned with the
built-in camera.	v be scalling with the
Parts of Participation	
	_
	Ē

- $\rightarrow$  Scanning begins.
- <sup>c</sup> To stop scanning and return to the screen in step <sup>(2)</sup>, press <sup>(Cancel)</sup>.





n.

00

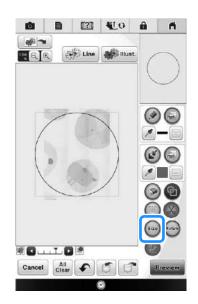
(1) 🕞



Select the circle shape, and then press



**7** Press **a** to enlarge the circle.



- Press 🕂 until the size of circle fits the pattern on the fabric, and then press 💽.
  - Use S to align the position of the circle to
    the pattern on the fabric.

00 /-0

00

00

Bian Plotate

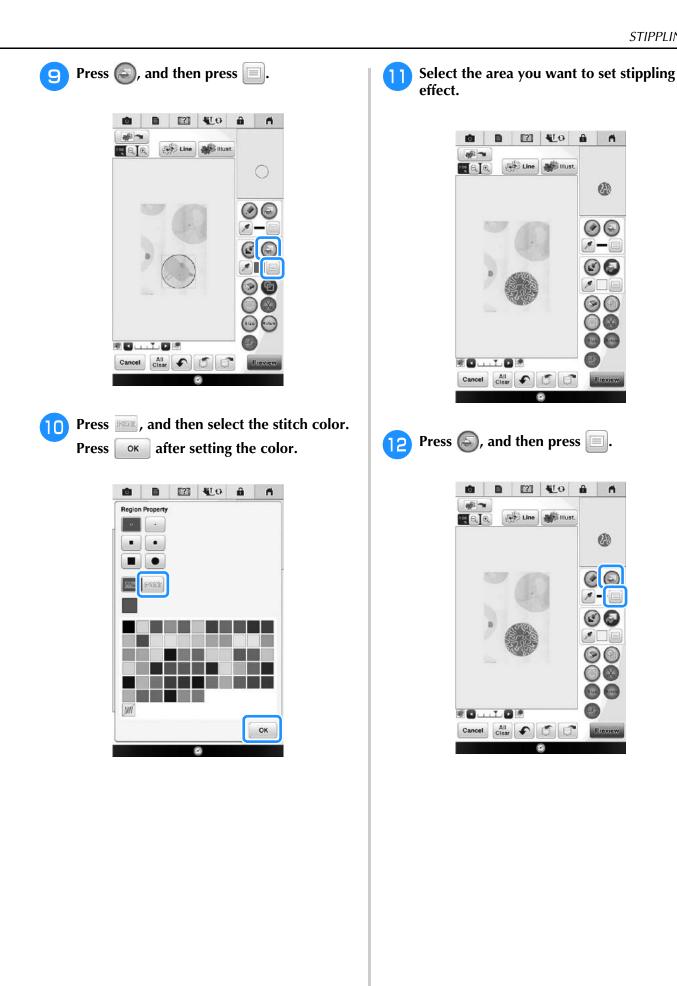
Prev

Ð

**/**]- [ 00 0 ) 🔀 Bian Plotate

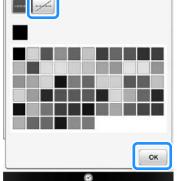
9

Preview



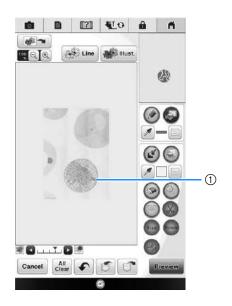
8







Select the outline of the pattern to set as the line without stitch.



① Outline of the pattern

**15** Follow the procedure from step **1** of "Basic Stippling with My Design Center".

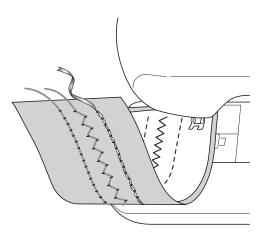
→ Start embroidering on the fabric that you scanned at first.

# Chapter 9 How to Create Bobbin Work

ABOUT BOBBIN WORK
PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK
Required Materials373
Bobbin case and bobbin cover
Lower thread
Upper thread
■ Needle
Presser foot
■ Fabric
Upper Threading374
Preparing the Bobbin Thread374
When tension is applied to the bobbin thread
When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread
CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)
Positioning the Fabric and Sewing
■ Finishing the thread ends
Bobbin Work Free Motion Sewing
CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY) 381
Selecting the Pattern
Start Embroidering
0
ADJUSTING BOBBIN WORK THREAD TENSION 385
Adjusting the upper thread tension
Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread
TROUBLESHOOTING
The thread was accidentally cut automatically and the bobbin
thread is caught inside the machine
The pattern is misaligned
The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring of
the bobbin case

# **ABOUT BOBBIN WORK**

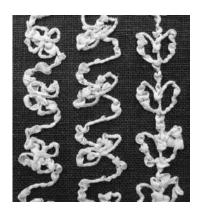
Beautiful embroidery work, with a three-dimensional appearance, can be created by winding the bobbin with heavy weight thread or ribbon, which is too thick to be threaded through the machine's needle. The decorative thread or ribbon will stitch out on the underneath side of fabric while sewing with the fabric wrong side facing up.



1. Utility stitches



2. Decorative stitches



3. Free motion sewing



Bobbin work embroidery is sewn using the bobbin work patterns included with this product in addition to some of the utility stitches.

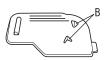
# PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK

## **Required Materials**

### Bobbin case and bobbin cover



 Bobbin case (gray) There is a notch at the location indicated by the letter "A".



1 Bobbin cover

There are two small v-shaped tabs on the back of the bobbin cover as indicated by the letter "B". The tabs help hold the bobbin in place so it does not lift up while thick thread is being pulled through.

### Lower thread

We recommend the following types of threads for bobbin work.

<Sewing/Embroidery>



No.5 or finer hand embroidery thread or decorative thread



Flexible woven ribbon (When embroidering: approx. 2mm (approx. 5/64 inch) recommended)

<Sewing only>



Fine embroidery ribbon (silk or silk-like material) (3.5 mm (approx. 1/8 inch) or less, recommended)

\* When wide ribbon or heavy weight threads are being used, we recommend test sewing with and without bobbin case tension being applied to see which gives the best stitching results. If wide ribbon such as 3.5mm (approx. 1/8 inch) is to be used, we recommend that bobbin case tension not be applied. Refer to page 376 for more detailed instructions.

### 🟒 Note

- Do not use thread heavier than No.5 hand embroidery thread.
- Some threads may not be appropriate for bobbin work. Be sure to sew trial stitches before sewing on your project.

### Upper thread

Upper thread choices can vary depending on the finished look you would like to achieve. By using sewing machine embroidery thread (polyester), multipurpose polyester thread, or monofilament (transparent nylon) thread the appearance of a single design can be changed many times just by choosing a different upper thread weight and/or color. If you do not wish for the upper thread to be visible, we recommend using transparent nylon monofilament thread or polyester light weight thread (50wt. or above) that is the same color as the lower thread.

### ■ Needle

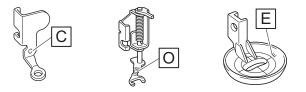
Use a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric being used. Refer to "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" on page 77 and "Embroidery Step by Step" on page 210.

### Presser foot

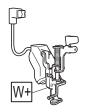
Utility stitches or decorative stitches: Monogramming foot "N"



Free motion sewing: Free motion quilting foot "C", Free motion open toe quilting foot "O" or Free motion echo quilting foot "E"



Embroidery: Embroidery foot "W+" or Embroidery foot "W" (optional)



### Fabric

Be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric, which includes the same threads and fabric as what is being used in your project.

### 

• The sewing results may be affected by the type of fabric used. Before sewing your project, be sure to sew trial stitches on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as the fabric used in the project.

# **Upper Threading**

# Install a needle appropriate for the upper thread and fabric to be used.

For details on installing the needle, refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 75.

### Attach the presser foot.

- $\rightarrow$  "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 70
- $\rightarrow$  "Using Free motion Quilting Foot "C"" on page 134
- → "Using free motion Open Toe Quilting Foot "O"" on page 136
- → "Echo Quilting Using the Free Motion Echo Quilting Foot "E"" on page 137
- → "Attaching Embroidery Foot "W+" with LED pointer" on page 211

### Thread the machine with the upper thread.

For details on threading the machine, refer to "Upper Threading" on page 62.

### Preparing the Bobbin Thread 🔤

In order to create bobbin work, the bobbin case must be replaced with the one for bobbin work. Before creating bobbin work, clean the bobbin case and the race.

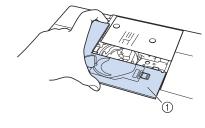


# Raise the needle and presser foot, and then turn off the machine.



Remove the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit.

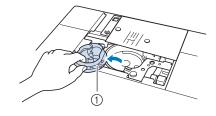
**3** Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you to remove it.



① Needle plate cover

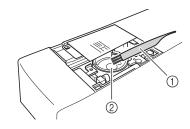


### Remove the bobbin case.



① Bobbin case

**5** Use the cleaning brush included with the machine or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and its surrounding area.

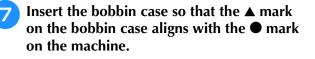


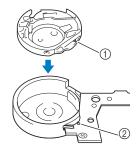
① Cleaning brush

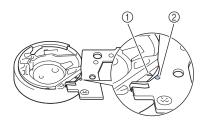


6

Wipe the bobbin case (gray) with a soft lint free cloth to clean it.







\* Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\bigcirc$  marks.



- ▲ mark
- 2 mark
- ③ Bobbin case

#### ير Note

 The bobbin case (gray) cannot be used for sewing in any way other than bobbin work. After sewing bobbin work, refer back to the steps in "Preparing the Bobbin Thread" on page 374 for removing and cleaning the bobbin case (gray), and then reinstall the standard bobbin case (black).

# **A** CAUTION

- Be sure to use the bobbin case (gray) when creating bobbin work. Using any other bobbin case may result in the thread becoming tangled or damage to the machine.
- Make sure that the bobbin case is correctly installed. If the bobbin case is incorrectly installed, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.

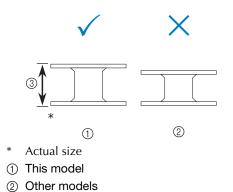
8 Wind a decorative thread around the bobbin by hand. After winding the bobbin so it is filled as shown below (about 80%), cut the thread.



For precautions on winding the bobbin for embroidering, refer to step <sup>2</sup> of "Selecting the Pattern" on page 381.

# **CAUTION**

• Be sure to use the machine's included bobbin or one designed specifically for this machine. Using any other bobbin may result in damage or injuries. Use only the included bobbin or bobbins of the same type (part code: SA156, (SFB: XA5539-151)). SA156 is Class 15 type bobbin.

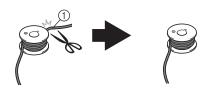


③ 11.5 mm (approx. 7/16 inch)

#### ப் Note

- Slowly and evenly wind the thread around the bobbin.
- For best results, wind the bobbin so the thread is snug and not twisted.

9 Using scissors carefully trim the thread tail as close to the bobbin as possible.



① Beginning of wound thread



If thread extends beyond the top of the bobbin too much, the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.

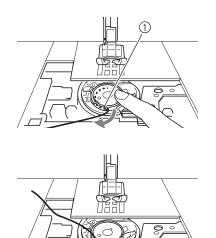


### Install the bobbin wound with thread.

Whether or not tension should be applied to the bobbin thread depends on the type of thread being used.

# ■ When tension is applied to the bobbin thread

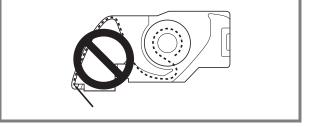
Insert bobbin into bobbin case so the thread unwinds from the left side. Then correctly pass the thread through the tension spring as shown below.



① Tension spring

# **A** CAUTION

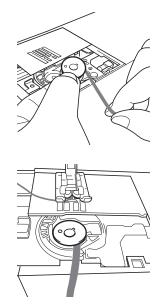
- When winding the bobbin, make sure the thread is not frayed. Sewing with frayed thread may result in the thread catching on the tension spring of the bobbin case, the thread completely becoming tangled or damage to the machine.
- Do not guide the bobbin thread through the groove in the needle plate cover, otherwise the lower threading cannot be done correctly.



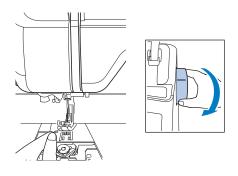
# When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread

If the bobbin thread in the trial stitching is too tight and adjusting the bobbin case tension does not help, do not pass the thread through the tension spring.

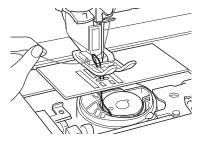
Hold the bobbin with your left hand so the thread unwinds from the right side and hold the end of the thread with your right hand.



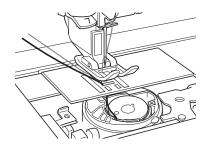
- Pull out about 8 cm (approx. 3 inches) of bobbin thread.
- Lightly hold the end of the upper thread while turning the handwheel toward you (counterclockwise) until the mark on the handwheel aligns with the center top of machine.



# Gently pull the upper thread to bring the bobbin thread up through the needle plate.



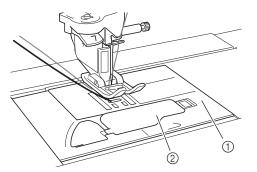
- → A loop of the bobbin thread comes out through the hole in the needle plate.
- 14 Insert tweezers through bobbin thread loop and pull bobbin thread above the needle plate.
- 15 Align the upper thread and bobbin thread, and then pull out about 10 cm (approx. 4 inches) of the threads and pass them under the presser foot toward the rear of the machine.





# Install the needle plate cover and bobbin cover with tabs.

For details on installing the needle plate cover, refer to "Cleaning the Race" on page 388.



- 1 Bobbin cover
- ② Bobbin cover with tabs

# A CAUTION

• When creating bobbin work, use the bobbin cover with tabs, otherwise the thread may become tangled or the needle may break.



• When installing the needle plate cover, do not allow it to pinch the thread.



Install the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit.

### 🕂 Note

- When installing the flat bed attachment or embroidery unit, do not allow it to pinch the thread.
- When the bobbin thread is replaced with a new one, be sure to repeat the procedure from 1, otherwise the lower threading will not be done correctly.
- $\rightarrow$  This completes the upper and lower threading.

#### <sub>と</sub>Note

 If utility stitches are to be used, refer to "CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)" on page 378. If embroidery patterns are to be used, refer to "CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY)" on page 381.

# CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)

## Positioning the Fabric and Sewing

#### Note

- Recommended stitches for bobbin work are open "airy" type stitches.
- Be sure to sew trial stitches using same fabric and threads as project in order to check the sewing results.
- The bobbin thread may become tangled due to the type of pattern and thread that are being used. Since this may cause the needle to break, immediately stop sewing if this occurs. Turn off the machine and cut out the tangled thread with scissors. Then, clean the race and bobbin case as described in "Preparing the Bobbin Thread" on page 374.

Turn on the machine.

Select a stitch in the Utility and Decorative

Stitches mode. For this example, press

#### බ Memo

• For best results, select a longer stitch length and a wider stitch width. Depending on the selected stitch, it may not be possible to change the stitch length and stitch width settings.



• Depending on the fabric, bunched stitches may result. We recommend selecting a simple stitch and sewing trial stitches to check the sewing results.

Examples of simple stitches:



### Adjust the upper thread tension.

For details on adjusting the upper thread tension, refer to "Setting the Thread Tension" on page 92.



### Memo

We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.

4

З

Make sure the automatic thread cutting

(3) and automatic reinforcement/reverse stitching (1) have been turned off.

# **A** CAUTION

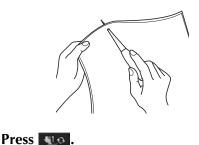
 Before sewing, make sure the automatic thread cutting has been turned off. If sewing is started with automatic thread cutting turned on, the thread may become tangled or the machine may be damaged.

**5** Place stabilizer on top (wrong side) of the fabric.

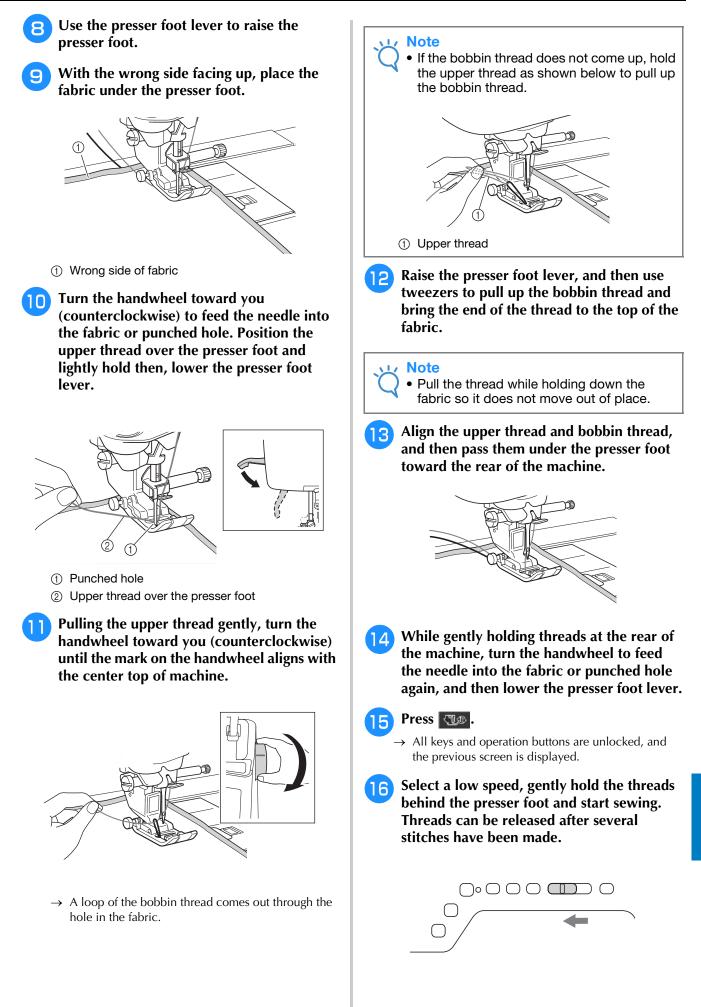
### Note

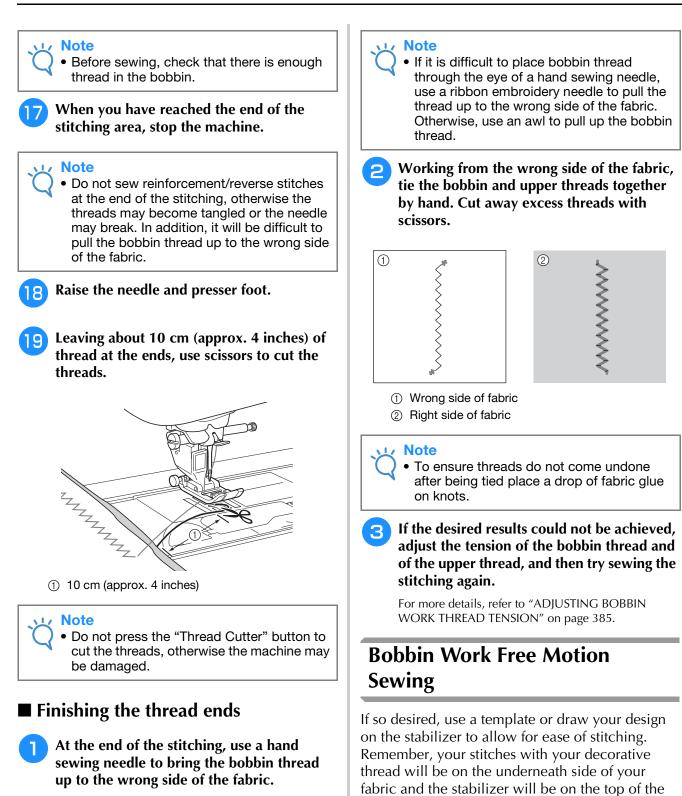
• Type and weight of stabilizer will depend on fabric and thread being used.

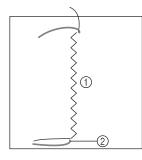
6 If thread is too thick to pull through fabric to machine surface use an awl to punch a small hole in the fabric at the beginning of stitching so the bobbin thread can be fed through the opening.



→ The screen changes, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.







Wrong side of fabric

- wrong side of your fabric.
  \* For bobbin work free motion sewing use the instructions for "CREATING BOBBIN WORK (SEWING)" on page 378.
  - \* For information about using the free motion quilting foot "C", free motion open toe quilting foot "O", or free motion echo quilting foot "E" refer to "Free Motion Quilting" on page 133.

# CREATING BOBBIN WORK (EMBROIDERY)

## Selecting the Pattern

### 🗤 Note

 Prepare the machine for bobbin work as described in "PREPARING FOR BOBBIN WORK" on page 373.

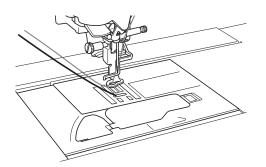
Attach the embroidery foot "W+" or "W" and the embroidery unit.

Install a bobbin wound with an adequate amount of thread for pattern.

#### 🟒 Note

- For an estimated length of bobbin thread required for each pattern, refer to the Quick Reference Guide included with the machine. Be sure to use a bobbin wound with enough thread. If the bobbin runs out of thread while sewing, the embroidery cannot be completed.
- Depending on the thread thickness, it may not be possible to wind the bobbin with the necessary length of thread. In this case, try winding the bobbin again, or use a lighter weight thread.

# Pull up the bobbin thread above the needle plate.





### Turn on the machine.

Press OK

Press

 $\rightarrow$  The carriage will move to the initialization position.

To select a bobbin work embroidery pattern, press (Embroidery).

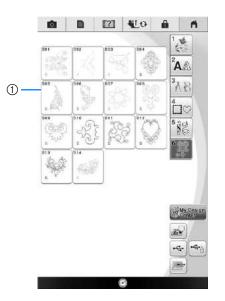


for bobbin work patterns.

# 8

# Select one of the bobbin work embroidery patterns.

Embroidery patterns for bobbin work appear with the letter "B" in the lower-left corner of the key.



#### ① "B" mark

- → Regardless of the setting that had been selected, the automatic thread cutting function is turned off.
- → When a bobbin work embroidery pattern is selected the embroidery sewing speed is automatically set at 350 spm.

#### 🟒 Note

• The beginning and end of stitching are specified for bobbin work patterns. They cannot be used for normal embroidering.

# **A** CAUTION

When sewing bobbin work, be sure to select an embroidery pattern for bobbin work. If any other type of pattern is selected, the machine may be damaged.

#### Vote

• Embroidery sewing speed defaults to 350 spm when a bobbin work embroidery pattern is selected. The Settings screen will not allow speed to be adjusted.

#### 🦙 Memo

• When an embroidery pattern for bobbin work is selected, the automatic thread cutting function is turned off. Afterward, if a pattern other than one for bobbin work is selected, the automatic thread cutting function is returned to the setting that was selected before the embroidery pattern for bobbin work was chosen.

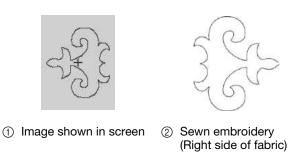
Press Sol and then press Embreddary

 $\rightarrow$  The embroidering screen is displayed.



#### **Note**

• Since bobbin work is sewn from the wrong side of the fabric, the pattern shown in the screen appears as a mirror image of the final sewn embroidery. If necessary, flip the image to preview it. In addition, when sewing with the thread colors shown in the embroidering screen, select a bobbin thread that matches what is shown in the screen.



### Memo

• With embroidery patterns for bobbin work, the size and thread density cannot be changed. In addition, the automatic thread cutting function cannot be turned on.

# Press , and then adjust the tension of the upper thread.

For details on adjusting the tension of the upper thread, refer to "Adjusting Thread Tension" on page 301.



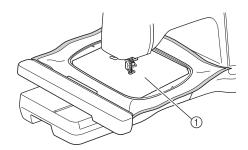
#### Memo

10

• We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.

### **Start Embroidering**

Hoop the fabric so the right side of the fabric is facing down with the stabilizer lying on the top. Use an embroidery frame that fits the size of the pattern and then attach the frame to the machine. These patterns are embroidered from the wrong side of the fabric so technically you are working in "reverse" of normal embroidering.



① Wrong side of fabric

# **A** CAUTION

 Always use a stabilizer material for embroidery. Otherwise, the needle may break and cause injuries. Not using a stabilizer material may result in a poor finish to your project.



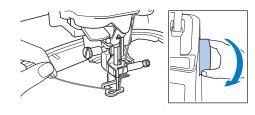


1+1.

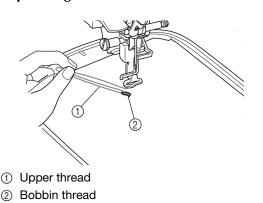
 $\rightarrow$  The embroidery frame moves to the beginning of stitching.

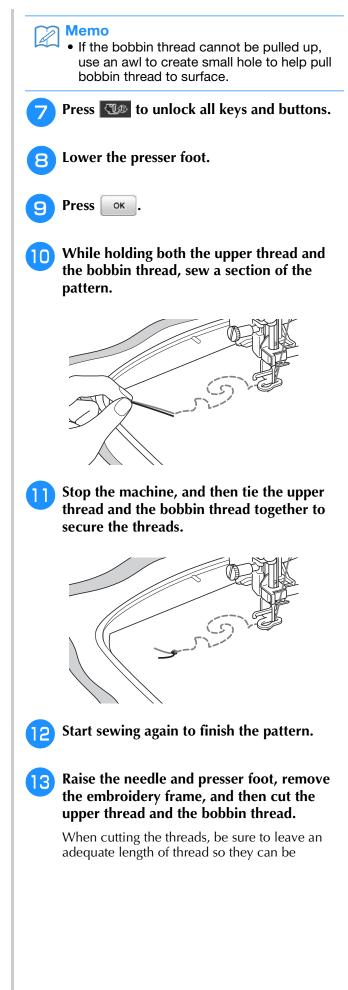
#### Press 10

- The screen changes, and all keys and operation buttons are locked.
- Using the presser foot lever, raise the presser foot.
- To bring the bobbin thread above the fabric, rotate the handwheel counterclockwise while holding the upper thread.

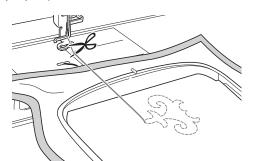


As shown below, pull the upper thread slightly to the left pulling the bobbin thread up through the fabric.

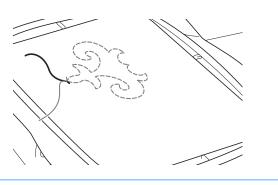




properly secured.



Using a hand sewing needle such as a ribbon embroidery needle, pull the bobbin thread to the top (wrong side) of the fabric, and then tie the upper thread and the bobbin thread together.



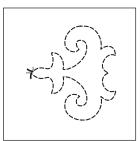
### Memo

 If there is a gap between the start point and end point of the pattern, cut the threads, remove the fabric from the machine, and then use a ribbon embroidery needle to hand sew stitches to connect the starting and ending points.

15 Remove the fabric from the embroidery frame, and check the finished embroidery.



1 Right side of fabric



② Wrong side of fabric

16 If the desired results could not be achieved, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread and of the upper thread, and then try sewing the pattern again.

For more details, refer to "ADJUSTING BOBBIN WORK THREAD TENSION" on page 385.

#### Memo

 Check bobbin after each bobbin work embroidery pattern is sewn to make sure there is adequate bobbin thread for the next pattern.

# **ADJUSTING BOBBIN WORK THREAD TENSION**

After sewing trial stitches and checking the sewing results, adjust the thread tensions if necessary. After adjusting the tensions, be sure to sew trial stitches again in order to check the sewing results.

### ■ Adjusting the upper thread tension

We recommend a setting between 6 and 8 for the upper thread tension.

If utility stitches are being used, refer to "Setting the Thread Tension" on page 92. If embroidery patterns are being used, refer to "Adjusting Thread Tension" on page 301.

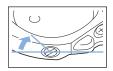
# Adjusting the tension of the bobbin thread

If the desired stitching cannot be achieved after adjusting the upper thread tension, adjust the tension of the bobbin thread. The tension of the bobbin thread can be adjusted by turning the slotted-head (–) screw on the bobbin case (gray) for bobbin work.

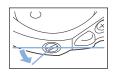


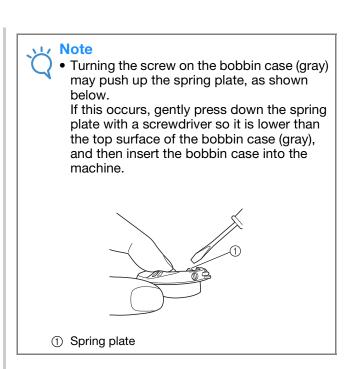
- ① Do not turn the phillips screw (+).
- ② Adjust with a small screwdriver.

To increase the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw  $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$  clockwise.



To decrease the tension of the bobbin thread, turn the slotted-head (–) screw  $30^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$  counterclockwise.





# **A** CAUTION

- DO NOT adjust the position of the phillips (+) screw on the bobbin case (gray) as this may result in damage to the bobbin case, rendering it useless.
- If the slotted screw (-) is difficult to turn, do not use force. Turning the screw too much or providing force in either (rotational) direction may cause damage to the bobbin case. Should damage occur, the bobbin case may not maintain proper tension.

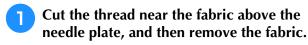
### Ly Note

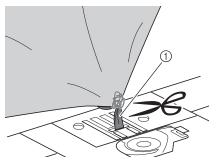
• If the bobbin thread tension is tight, the thread cannot be passed through the tension spring when the bobbin is installed in the bobbin case. (Refer to "When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread" on page 376.)

# TROUBLESHOOTING

Several solutions for minor problems are described below. If the problem persists, contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.

### The thread was accidentally cut automatically and the bobbin thread is caught inside the machine



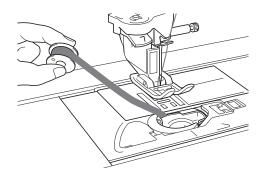


1 Thread

#### V Note

• If an embroidery pattern was sewn, remove the embroidery frame.

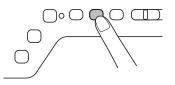
Remove the bobbin, and then hold it out toward the left side of the machine.

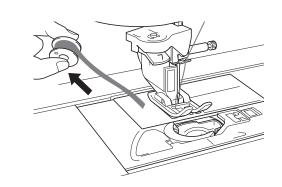




Lower the presser foot.

Apply slight tension on bobbin thread by holding thread out to the left side of presser foot. Press the "Thread Cutter" button again.





# **A** CAUTION

• Do not pull on the thread with excessive force, otherwise the machine may be damaged.

### The pattern is misaligned

Refer to "ADJUSTING BOBBIN WORK THREAD TENSION" and increase the upper thread tension. If the pattern is still misaligned, reduce the tension of the bobbin thread.

Example: Decorative Stitch

	②/控 (弦
Ŵ	遼
æ	藏
铅	盛
Ŵ	
	1 MARY

- ① Correct tension
- ② The upper thread tension is too loose, or the bobbin thread tension is too tight.

# ■ The bobbin thread catches on the tension spring of the bobbin case

Sew with no tension applied to the bobbin thread. (Refer to "When tension is not applied to the bobbin thread" on page 376.)



CARE AND MAINTENANCE 388
Restrictions on oiling
Precautions on storing the machine
Cleaning the LCD Screen
Cleaning the Machine Casing
Cleaning the Race
Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area
About the Maintenance Message
ADJUSTING THE SCREEN 391
Adjusting the Brightness of the Screen Display
Touch Panel is Malfunctioning
TROUBLESHOOTING 392
Frequent Troubleshooting Topics
Upper Thread is Too Tight392
Symptom
Cause
Remedy
Symptom
Cause
Remedy
Incorrect Thread Tension
Symptoms
Cause/remedy 395
Fabric is Caught in the Machine and Cannot be Removed396
Removing the fabric from the machine
Checking machine operations
List of Symptoms
Getting ready
<ul> <li>While sewing</li></ul>
6
ERROR MESSAGES 405
Alarm Sounds
SPECIFICATIONS 411
UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE 412
Upgrade Procedure Using USB Media412
Upgrade Procedure Using Computer413
STITCH SETTING CHART
INDEX 423

# CARE AND MAINTENANCE

# **A** CAUTION

• Be sure to unplug the machine before cleaning it. Otherwise, electric shock or injury may result.

## **Restrictions on oiling**

In order to prevent damaging this machine, it must not be oiled by the user. This machine was manufactured with the necessary amount of oil applied to ensure correct operation, making periodic oiling unnecessary.

If problems occur, such as difficulty turning the handwheel or an unusual noise, immediately stop using the machine, and contact your authorized Brother dealer or the nearest Brother authorized service center.

# Precautions on storing the machine

Do not store the machine in any of the locations described below, otherwise damage to the machine may result, for example, rust caused by condensation.

- Exposed to extremely high temperatures
- \* Exposed to extremely low temperatures
- \* Exposed to extreme temperature changes
- Exposed to high humidity or steam
- Near a flame, heater or air conditioner
- \* Outdoors or exposed to direct sunlight
- \* Exposed to extremely dusty or oily environments

#### 🟒 Note

 In order to extend the life of this machine, periodically turn it on and use it. Storing this machine for an extended period of time without using it may reduce its efficiency.

## **Cleaning the LCD Screen**

If the screen is dirty, gently wipe it with the included LCD cleaning cloth or a soft, dry cloth. Do not use organic solvents or detergents.



• Do not wipe the LCD screen with a damp cloth.

#### 🦙 Memo

 Occasionally, condensation may form on the LCD screen or it may become fogged up; however, this is not a malfunction. After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.

### **Cleaning the Machine Casing**

If the surface of the machine is dirty, lightly soak a cloth in a neutral detergent, squeeze it out firmly, and then wipe the surface. Then wipe again with a dry cloth.

### Cleaning the Race

Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.



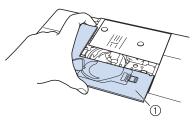
- Turn the main power to OFF.
- Remove the needle and the presser foot holder (see pages 71 through 75).



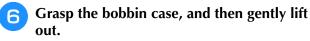
Remove the flat bed attachment or the embroidery unit if either is attached.

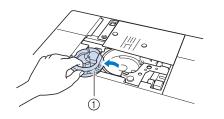


Grasp both sides of the needle plate cover, and then slide it toward you.



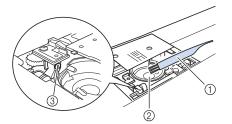
- ① Needle plate cover
- $\rightarrow$  The needle plate cover is removed.





① Bobbin case

Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the race and bobbin thread sensor and the surrounding area.

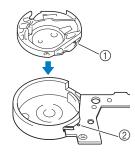


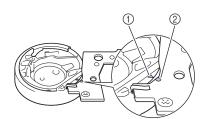
- ① Cleaning brush
- ② Race
- ③ Bobbin thread sensor

#### レ Note

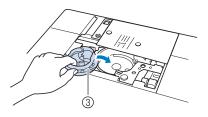
- Do not apply oil to the bobbin case.
- If lint or dust collects on the bobbin thread sensor, the sensor may not operate correctly.

Insert the bobbin case so that the  $\blacktriangle$  mark on the bobbin case aligns with the  $\bigcirc$  mark on the machine.





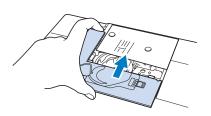
Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and ullet marks.



- ▲ mark on the bobbin case
- 2  $\blacksquare$  mark on the machine
- ③ Bobbin case
- \* Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.

# **A** CAUTION

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XE5342-101 (green marking on the screw), XC8167-551 (no color on the screw), XE8298-001 (gray, for bobbin work)), contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.
- Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.
- 9 Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.



#### V Note

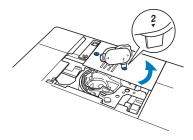
• If the needle plate has been removed it is especially important to reinstall the needle plate and tighten the screws prior to installing the bobbin case.

### Cleaning the Cutter in the Bobbin Case Area

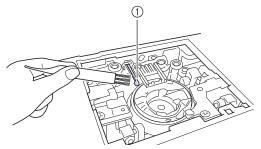
The cutter below the needle plate should be cleaned. If dust or lint accumulate on the cutter, it will be difficult to cut the thread when the "Thread Cutter" button is pressed or the automatic thread cutting function is used. Clean the cutter when the thread is not easily cut.

Follow steps 1 through 5 in "Cleaning the Race" to remove the needle plate cover.

Use the screwdriver included with the machine to unscrew and remove the needle plate.



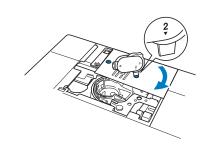
Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any lint and dust from the cutter in the bobbin case area.



① Cutter

Do not touch the cutter, otherwise injuries may result.

**4** Use the screwdriver included with the machine to screw and attach the needle plate.



**5** Insert the tabs on the needle plate cover into the needle plate, and then slide the cover back on.

## About the Maintenance Message



Once this message appears, it is recommended to take your machine to an authorized Brother dealer or nearest Brother authorized service center for a regular maintenance check. Although this message will disappear and the machine will continue to

function once you press or, the message will display several more times until the appropriate maintenance is performed.

Please take the time to arrange for the maintenance your machine requires once this message appears. Such steps will help to ensure you receive continued, uninterrupted hours of machine operation for the future.

# **ADJUSTING THE SCREEN**

### Adjusting the Brightness of the **Screen Display**

If the screen does not look very clear under certain situations, you can adjust the brightness of the screen display.

	<b>Press</b> The settings screen appears.				
2 Press E.					
_	$\rightarrow$ The General settings screen appears.				
	Displa screer		ge 4 of the Ge	eneral settings	
			r 🛨 to adjus display.	t the brightness of	
		Ô		A A	
		Wy		8 <b>2</b>	
		ų	Needle Position- UP/DOWN		
		<u>V</u> V	Needle Position- Stitch Placement	ON GET	
		Ð	Mouse Pointer	* • •	
		40	Upper and Bobbin Thread Sensor	OFF	
		æ	Machine Speaker Volume	8 -+	
		0	Volume	8 -+	
		æ	Light	3 -+	
		Ð	Screen Display Brightness	9 -+	
			4/9 🕨	ок	
	l		0		
*	The s	creen	will dim as the n	umber on the settings	

settings screen decreases. The screen will appear brighter as the numbers increase.

## Touch Panel is Malfunctioning

If the screen does not respond correctly when you touch a key (the machine does not perform the operation or performs a different operation), follow the steps below to make the proper adjustments.



Holding your finger on the screen, turn the main power switch to OFF and back to ON.

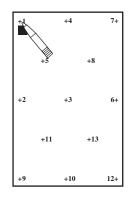


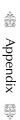
 $\rightarrow$  The touch panel adjustment screen is displayed.

Using the included touch pen, lightly touch the center of each +, in order from 1 to 13.

#### Note

• Only use the included touch pen to touch the screen. Do not use a mechanical pencil, pin, or other sharp object. Do not press too hard on the screen. Otherwise, damage may result.







З

Turn the main power to OFF, then turn it back to ON.

#### Note

• If you finish the screen adjustment and the screen still does not respond, or if you cannot do the adjustment, contact your authorized Brother dealer.

# TROUBLESHOOTING

If the machine stops operating correctly, check the following possible problems before requesting service. You can solve most problems by yourself. If you need additional help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips. Visit us at "<u>http://support.brother.com</u>".

If the problem persists, contact your authorized Brother dealer or the nearest Brother authorized service center.

### **Frequent Troubleshooting Topics**

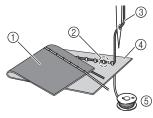
Detailed causes and remedies for common troubleshooting topics are described below. Be sure to refer to this before contacting your authorized Brother dealer.

■ Upper Thread is Too Tight	page 392
Tangled Thread on Wrong Side of Fabric	page 393
Incorrect Thread Tension	page 395
Fabric is Caught in the Machine and Cannot be Removed	page 396

# Upper Thread is Too Tight

### Symptom

- \* The upper thread appears as a single continuous line.
- \* The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric. (Refer to the illustration below.)
- \* The upper thread has tightened up, and comes out when pulled.
- \* The upper thread has tightened up, and wrinkles appear in the fabric.
- \* The upper thread tension is tight, and the results do not change even after the thread tension is adjusted.



- ① Lower side of fabric
- ② Lower thread visible from upper side of fabric
- ③ Upper thread
- ④ Upper side of fabric
- (5) Lower thread

### Cause

### Incorrect lower threading

If the lower thread is incorrectly threaded, instead of the appropriate tension being applied to the lower thread, it is pulled through the fabric when the upper thread is pulled up. For this reason, the thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.

### Remedy

Correctly install the lower thread.



Turn off the sewing machine.

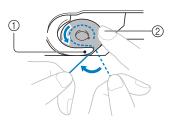
- Remove the bobbin from the bobbin case.
- Place the bobbin in the bobbin case so that the thread unwinds in the correct direction.
  - \* Hold the bobbin with your right hand with the thread unwinding to the left, and hold the end of the thread with your left hand. Then, with your right hand, place the bobbin in the bobbin case.



If the bobbin is inserted with the thread unwinding in the wrong direction, sewing will be done with an incorrect thread tension.

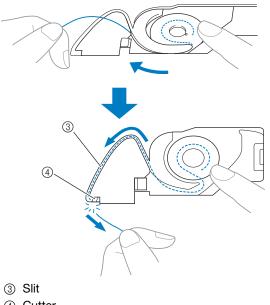
### While holding the bobbin in place with your finger, pass the thread through the slit in the needle plate.

Hold down the bobbin with your right hand, and then pull the end of the thread around the tab with your left hand.



- ① Tab
- ② Hold down the bobbin with your right hand.

Pull the thread to pass it through the slit in the needle plate, then cut it with the cutter.



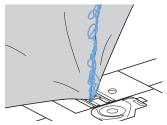
(4) Cutter

Sewing with the correct thread tension is possible after the bobbin has been correctly installed in the bobbin case.

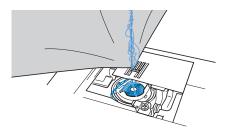
### Tangled Thread on Wrong Side of Fabric

### Symptom

The thread becomes tangled on the lower side of the fabric.



- After starting sewing, a rattling noise is made and sewing cannot continue.
- Looking under the fabric, there is tangled thread in the bobbin case.



### Cause

#### Incorrect upper threading

If the upper thread is incorrectly threaded, the upper thread passed through the fabric cannot be firmly pulled up and the upper thread becomes tangled in the bobbin case, causing a rattling noise.

### Remedy

Remove the tangled thread, and then correct the upper threading.

### Remove the tangled thread. If it cannot be removed, cut the thread with scissors.

\* Refer to "Cleaning the Race" in "CARE AND MAINTENANCE" on page 388.

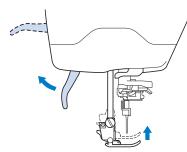
### Remove the upper thread from the machine.

### Refer to the following steps to correct the upper threading.

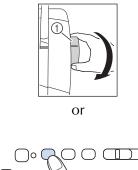
If the bobbin was removed from the bobbin case, refer to "Setting the Bobbin" on page 59 and "Remedy" in the section "Upper Thread is Too Tight" on page 392 to correctly install the bobbin.

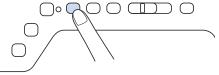


Raise the presser foot using the presser foot lever.



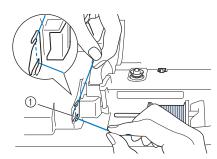
- If the presser foot is not raised, the sewing machine \* cannot be threaded correctly.
- Raise the needle by turning the handwheel 5 toward you (counterclockwise) so that the mark on the wheel points up, or press "Needle Position" button once or twice to raise the needle.





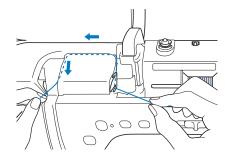
1 Mark

While holding the thread with both hands, 6 pull the thread up from under the thread guide plate.



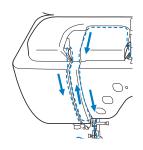
① Thread guide plate

While holding the thread in your right 7 hand, pass the thread through the thread guide in the direction indicated.



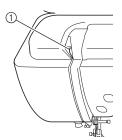


Guide the thread down, up, then down through the groove, as shown in the illustration.



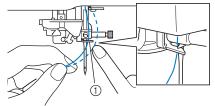
#### Memo

Look in the upper groove area to check if the thread catches on the take-up lever visible inside the upper groove area.



(1) Look in the upper groove area

Pass the thread through the needle bar 9 thread guide (marked "6") by holding the thread with both hands and guiding it as shown in the illustration.



① Needle bar thread guide

Thread the needle according to steps 10 10 and **15** in "UPPER THREADING" on page 62.

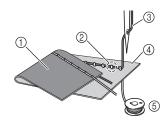
### **Incorrect Thread Tension**

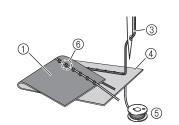
#### Symptoms

- Symptom 1: The lower thread is visible from the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 2: The upper thread appears as a straight line on the upper side of the fabric.
- Symptom 3: The upper thread is visible from the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 4: The lower thread appears as a straight line on the lower side of the fabric.
- Symptom 5: The stitching on the lower side of the fabric is loose or has slack.

#### □ Symptom 1

#### □ Symptom 3





- ① Lower side of fabric
- 2 Lower thread visible on upper side of fabric
- ③ Upper thread
  - ④ Upper side of fabric
  - 5 Lower thread
  - ⑥ Upper thread visible from lower side of fabric

#### ■ Cause/remedy

#### Cause 1

#### The machine is not correctly threaded.

<With symptoms 1 and 2 described above>

The lower threading is incorrect.

Adjust the upper thread tension and then refer to "Upper Thread is Too Tight" on page 92.

<With symptoms 3 through 5 described above>

The upper threading is incorrect.

Adjust the upper thread tension and then refer to "Tangled Thread on Wrong Side of Fabric" on page 393 to correct the upper threading.

#### Cause 2

#### A needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used.

The sewing machine needle that should be used depends on the type of fabric sewn and the thread thickness. If a needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are not being used, the thread tension will not be adjusted correctly, causing wrinkles in the fabric or skipped stitches.

\* Refer to "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" on page 77 to check that a needle and thread appropriate for the fabric are being used.

#### Cause 3

#### An appropriate upper tension is not selected.

Adjust the upper thread tension to select an appropriate thread tension.

- The appropriate thread tension differs according to the type of fabric and thread being used.
  - \* Adjust the thread tension while test sewing on a piece of scrap fabric that is the same as that used in your project.

#### Vie Note

• If the upper threading and lower threading are incorrect, the thread tension cannot be adjusted correctly, even by adjusting the upper thread tension. Check the upper threading and lower threading first, and then adjust the thread tension.

- \* When the lower thread is visible on the upper side of the fabric. Set the upper thread tension to a lower number. (Loosen the thread tension.)
- \* When the upper thread is visible on the lower side of the fabric. Set the upper thread tension to a higher number. (Tighten the thread tension.)



# Fabric is Caught in the Machine and Cannot be Removed

If the fabric is caught in the sewing machine and cannot be removed, the thread may have become tangled under the needle plate. Follow the procedure described below to remove the fabric from the machine. If the operation could not be completed according to the procedure, instead of attempting to complete it forcefully, contact your authorized Brother dealer or the nearest Brother authorized service center.

## Removing the fabric from the machine



Immediately stop the sewing machine.

Turn off the sewing machine.

#### Remove the needle.

If the needle is lowered into the fabric, turn the handwheel away from you (clockwise) to raise the needle out of the fabric, and then remove the needle. Refer to "CHANGING THE NEEDLE" on page 75.

## Remove the presser foot and presser foot holder.

Refer to "CHANGING THE PRESSER FOOT" on page 70.

## Lift up the fabric and cut the threads below it.

If the fabric can be removed, remove it. Continue with the following steps to clean the race.



#### Remove the needle plate cover.



① Needle plate cover

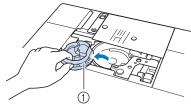
7 Cut out the tangled threads, and then remove the bobbin.





Remove the bobbin case.

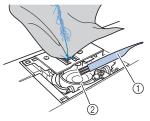
If threads remain in the bobbin case, remove them.



① Bobbin case

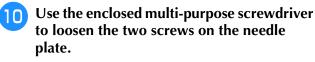


Use the cleaning brush or a vacuum cleaner to remove any dust or loose threads from the race and its surrounding area.



- ① Cleaning brush
- 2 Race

If the fabric could be removed	Continue with step 16.
If the fabric could not be removed	Continue with step 10.



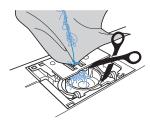




• Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

#### Slightly lift up the needle plate, cut any tangled threads, and then remove the needle plate.

Remove the fabric and threads from the needle plate.

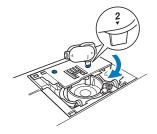


If the fabric cannot be removed, even after completing these steps, contact your authorized Brother dealer or the nearest Brother authorized service center.

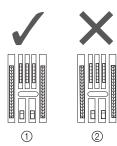
- Remove any threads in the race and around the feed dogs.

Turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.

- Align the two screw holes in the needle plate with the two holes at the needle plate mounting base, and then fit the needle plate onto the machine.
- Lightly finger-tighten the screw on the right 15) multi-purpose screwdriver side of the needle plate. Then, use the disc-shaped screwdriver to firmly tighten the screw on the left side. Finally, firmly tighten the screw on the right side.



Turn the handwheel to check that the feed dogs move smoothly and do not contact the edges of the slots in the needle plate.

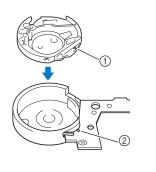


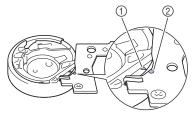
- ① Correct position of feed dogs
- ② Incorrect position of feed dogs

#### Note

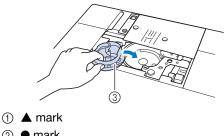
 Be careful not to drop the removed screws in the machine.

Insert the bobbin case so that the **A** mark 16 on the bobbin case aligns with the 
mark on the machine.





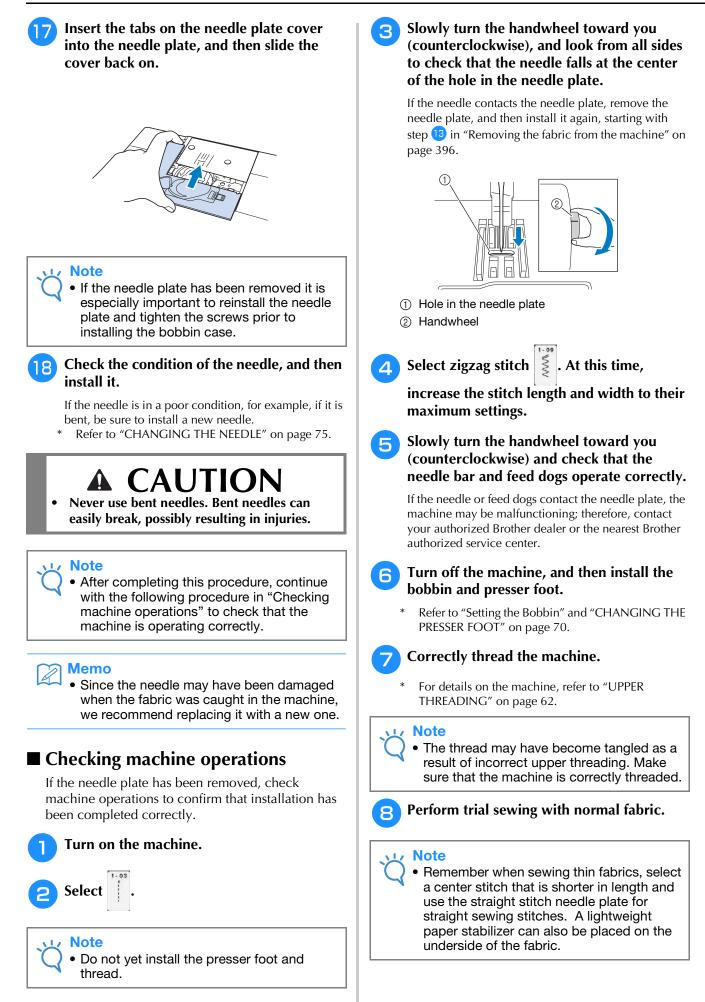
Align the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\bigcirc$  marks.



- $\textcircled{2} \bullet mark$
- Bobbin case
- Make sure that the indicated points are aligned before installing the bobbin case.

## CAUTION

- Never use a bobbin case that is scratched; otherwise, the upper thread may become tangled, the needle may break, or sewing performance may suffer. For a new bobbin case (part code: XE5342-101 (green marking on the screw), XC8167-551 (no color on the screw), XE8298-001 (gray, for bobbin work)), contact your nearest authorized Brother dealer.
- Make sure that you fit the bobbin case properly, otherwise the needle may break.



### List of Symptoms

If you have a minor problem with your sewing machine, check the following solutions. If the solutions suggested do not correct the problem, contact your authorized Brother dealer. Press  $\square \square \rightarrow \square$  Operation Guide

→ Troubleshooting for advice about minor sewing problems during sewing. Press Return at any time to return to the original screen.

### ■ Getting ready

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Cannot thread the needle.	Needle is not in the correct position.	Press the "Needle Position" button to raise the needle.	17
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	75
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	62
	The needle threader hook is bent and does not pass through the eye of the needle.	Contact your authorized Brother dealer.	_
	The needle threader lever cannot be moved or returned to its original position.	Contact your authorized Brother dealer.	_
	A size 65/9 needle is being used.	The needle is incompatible with the needle threader. Manually pass the thread through the eye of the needle.	65
Cannot lower the presser foot with the presser foot lever.	Presser foot was raised using the "Presser Foot Lifter" button.	Press the "Presser Foot Lifter" button to lower the presser foot.	17
Bobbin thread does not wind neatly on the	The thread is not passed through the bobbin winding thread guide correctly.	Correctly pass the thread through the bobbin winding thread guide.	55
bobbin.	Bobbin spins slowly.	Press <b>1</b> in the bobbin winding window to increase the bobbin winding speed.	56
	The thread that was pulled out was not wound onto the bobbin correctly.	Wind the thread that was pulled off around the bobbin 5 or 6 times clockwise.	55
	The empty bobbin was not set on the pin properly.	Set the empty bobbin on the pin and slowly turn the bobbin until you hear it click in place.	54
While winding the bobbin, the bobbin thread was wound below the bobbin winder seat.	You have not wound the bobbin thread properly when you are initially winding thread on the bobbin as well as being sure that the bobbin thread is set in the guides.	After removing the thread wound below the bobbin winder seat, wind the bobbin correctly. Follow the drawn images on the top of the machine for guidance when threading the machine for bobbin winding.	54
The bobbin thread	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
cannot be pulled up.	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	59
Machine does not operate	All keys and buttons have been locked by	Press to unlock all keys and the buttons.	70, 75
Nothing appears in	Main power switch is not turned on.	Turn the main power to ON.	30
the LCD.	The plug of the power cord is not inserted into an electrical outlet.	Insert the plug of the power cord into an electrical outlet.	31
The LCD screen does not look very clear.	The brightness of the screen is not adjusted.	Adjust the "Screen Display Brightness" in the settings screen.	391
Nothing happens, even if the LCD display is pressed	The screen has been locked.	Press either of the following keys to unlock the screen.	_
The LCD screen is fogged up.	Condensation has formed on the LCD screen.	After a while, the cloudiness will disappear.	_
Embroidery unit does	Embroidery unit is not attached correctly.	Reattach the embroidery unit correctly.	211
not operate.	Embroidery frame was attached before the unit was initialized.	Remove the embroidery unit, and then perform the initialization process correctly.	211

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Pointer of the embroidery foot "W+"	With thick elastic fabric, the position will be misaligned only at raised parts in the fabric.	Manually adjust the position according to the thickness of the fabric.	264
with LED pointer does not indicate the position correctly	With fabric having a very uneven surface, the position is not correctly aligned.	The pointer indication should be used only as a reference.	_
Specifying with sensor pen cannot be	The sensor pen has not been calibrated.	Before using the sensor pen for the first time, be sure to calibrate it.	52
done accurately.	The pen is being held differently than when it was calibrated.	When using the sensor pen, be sure to hold it at the same angle as when it was calibrated. The specification location may be misaligned if the pen is held at a slightly different angle. In this case, make fine adjustments after making the selection.	52

## ■ While sewing

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Machine does not	"Start/Stop" button was not pressed.	Press the "Start/Stop" button.	17
operate.	There is no pattern selected.	Select a pattern.	113, 170, 214, 313
	Presser foot is not lowered.	Lower the presser foot.	17
	"Start/Stop" button was pressed with the foot controller attached.	Remove the foot controller, or use the foot controller to operate the machine.	83
	The "Start/Stop" button was pressed while the machine is set for the sewing speed controller to control the zigzag stitch width.	Use the foot controller instead of the "Start/ Stop" button to operate the machine, or set the "Width Control" to "OFF" in the settings screen.	33, 83
Needle breaks.	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	75
	Needle clamp screw is not tightened.	Tighten the needle clamp screw.	76
	Needle is turned or bent.	Replace the needle.	75
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/thread/needle combinations" chart.	77
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the recommended presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	Upper thread tension is too tight.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Fabric is pulled during sewing.	Do not pull the fabric during sewing.	—
	Spool cap is set incorrectly.	Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.	62
	There are scratches around the opening in the needle plate.	Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	119
	There are scratches around the opening in the presser foot.	Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	70
	There are scratches on the bobbin case.	Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	388
	Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	75
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	59
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	62
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	59
	Presser foot is attached incorrectly.	Attach the presser foot correctly.	70
	Screw of the presser foot holder is loose.	Securely tighten the screw of the presser foot.	71
	Fabric is too thick.	Use fabric that the needle can pierce when the handwheel is turned.	87
	Fabric is fed forcefully when sewing thick fabric or thick seams.	Allow the fabric to be fed without being forcefully pushed.	77, 87
	Stitch length is too short.	Adjust the stitch length.	91
	Stabilizer is not attached to fabric being embroidered.	Attach stabilizer.	175, 256
	Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.	Use a correctly wound bobbin.	54

\_\_\_\_\_

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Upper thread breaks.	Machine is not threaded correctly (used the wrong spool cap, spool cap is loose, the thread did not catch the needle bar threader, etc.)	Rethread the machine correctly.	62
	Knotted or tangled thread is being used.	Remove any knots or tangles.	—
	The selected needle is not appropriate for the thread being used.	Select a needle that is appropriate for the type of thread being used.	77
	Upper thread tension is too tight.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	_
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	75
	There are scratches around the opening of the needle plate.	Replace the needle plate, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	119
	There are scratches around the opening in the presser foot.	Replace the presser foot, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	70
	There are scratches on the bobbin case.	Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	388
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	77
	While sewing, the thread became knotted or tangled.	Rethread upper and lower thread.	59, 62
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	59
The thread is tangled on the wrong side of the fabric.	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine. Be sure that the presser foot is in the raised position when threading the machine so that the upper thread sets properly in the upper tension.	62
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	77
The upper thread is too tight.	The bobbin thread is incorrectly installed.	Correctly install the bobbin thread.	59
Bobbin thread	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	59
oreaks.	Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.	Use a correctly wound bobbin.	54
	There are scratches on the bobbin or it doesn't rotate properly.	Replace the bobbin.	59
	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc. to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the race, etc.	_
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	59
Fabric puckers.	There is a mistake in the upper or bobbin threading.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.	59, 62
	Spool cap is set incorrectly.	Check the method for attaching the spool cap, then reattach the spool cap.	62
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	77
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Stitches are too long when sewing thin fabrics.	Shorten the stitch length.	91
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Wrong presser foot.	Use the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
The stitch is not sewn correctly.	The presser foot that is used is not appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.	Attach the presser foot that is appropriate for the type of stitch that you wish to sew.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	The thread tension is incorrect.	Adjust the tension of the upper thread.	92
	The thread is tangled, for example, in the bobbin case.	Remove the tangle thread. If the thread is tangled in the bobbin case, clean the race.	388
Skipped stitches	Machine is threaded incorrectly.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread it correctly.	62
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	77

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Skipped stitches	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Needle is installed incorrectly.	Reinstall the needle correctly.	75
	Needle is defective.	Replace the needle.	75
	Dust or lint has collected under the needle plate.	Remove the dust or lint with the brush.	388
	Thin or stretch fabrics are being sewn.	Sew with one sheet of thin paper under the fabric.	89
No stitching	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin thread correctly.	59
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	62
High-pitched sound	Dust or lint is caught in the feed dogs.	Remove the dust or lint.	388
while sewing	Pieces of thread are caught in the race.	Clean the race.	388
	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	62
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	59
	There are needle holes or friction scratches in the bobbin case.	Replace the bobbin case, or consult your authorized Brother dealer.	388
Fabric does not feed through the machine.	Feed dogs are set in the down position.	Press , and then turn the handwheel to raise the feed dogs.	133
	Stitches are too close together.	Lengthen the stitch length setting.	91
	Wrong presser foot was used.	Use the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	Thread is entangled.	Cut the entangled thread and remove it from the race.	_
	Zigzag foot "J" is slanted on a thick seam at the beginning of stitching.	Use the presser foot locking pin (black button on the left side) on zigzag foot "J" to keep the presser foot level while sewing.	88
The fabric feeds in the opposite direction.	The feed mechanism is damaged.	Contact your authorized Brother dealer.	-
The needle contacts the needle plate.	The needle clamp screw is loose.	Firmly tighten the needle clamp screw. If the needle is bent or blunt, replace it with a new one.	75
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
Fabric being sewn with the machine cannot be removed.	Thread is tangled below the needle plate.	Lift up the fabric and cut the threads below it, and clean the race.	393
A broken needle has fallen into the machine.	_	Turn off the machine, and then remove the needle plate. If the needle that fell into the machine can be seen, use tweezers to remove it. After removing the needle, return the needle plate to its original position. Before turning on the machine, slowly turn the handwheel toward you to check that it turns smoothly. If the handwheel does not turn smoothly or the needle that fell into the machine cannot be removed, consult your authorized Brother dealer.	_
The handwheel feels sluggish when it is turned.	Thread is tangled in the bobbin case.	Remove the tangled thread from the bobbin case. Re-install the bobbin case so it is correctly positioned.	393

### ■ After sewing

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Thread tension is incorrect.	Upper threading is incorrect.	Check the steps for threading the machine and rethread the machine.	62
	Bobbin is set incorrectly.	Reset the bobbin. (If needle plate was removed, reinstall needle plate and tighten screws prior to installing bobbin case.)	59
	Using improper needle or thread for the selected fabric.	Check the "Fabric/Thread/Needle Combinations" chart.	77
	Presser foot holder is not attached correctly.	Reattach the presser foot holder correctly.	71
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Bobbin thread is incorrectly wound.	Use a correctly wound bobbin.	54
	Needle is turned, bent or the point is dull.	Replace the needle.	75
	A bobbin designed specifically for this machine is not used.	Incorrect bobbins will not work properly. Only use a bobbin designed specifically for this machine.	59
Character or decorative patterns are misaligned.	Pattern adjustment settings were set incorrectly.	Revise the pattern adjustment settings.	176
Pattern does not turn out.	Wrong presser foot was used.	Attach the correct presser foot.	"STITCH SETTING CHART"
	Did not use a stabilizer material on thin fabrics or stretch fabrics.	Attach a stabilizer material.	175
	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Fabric was pulled, pushed or fed at an angle while it was being sewn.	Sew while guiding the fabric with your hands so that the fabric is fed in a straight line.	82
	The thread is tangled, for example, in the bobbin case.	Remove the tangle thread. If the thread is tangled in the bobbin case, clean the race.	
Embroidery pattern does not sew out	Thread is twisted.	Use scissors, etc., to cut the twisted thread and remove it from the bobbin case, etc.	_
correctly.	Thread tension is set incorrectly.	Adjust the thread tension.	92, 301
	Fabric was not inserted into the frame correctly (fabric was loose, etc.).	If the fabric is not stretched tight in the frame, the pattern may turn out poorly or there may be shrinkage of the pattern. Set the fabric into the frame correctly.	258
	Stabilizing material was not attached.	Always use stabilizing material, especially with stretch fabrics, lightweight fabrics, fabrics with a coarse weave, or fabrics that often cause pattern shrinkage. See your authorized Brother dealer for the proper stabilizer.	256
	There was an object placed near the machine, and the carriage or embroidery frame hit the object during sewing.	If the frame bumps something during sewing, the pattern will turn out poorly. Do not place anything in the area where the frame may bump it during sewing.	273
	Fabric outside the frame edges interferes with the sewing arm, so the embroidery unit cannot move.	Reinsert the fabric in the embroidery frame so that the excess fabric is away from the sewing arm, and rotate the pattern 180 degrees.	258
	Fabric is too heavy, so the embroidery unit cannot move freely.	Place a large thick book or similar object under the arm head to lightly lift the heavy side and keep it level.	-
	Fabric is hanging off the table.	If the fabric is hanging off the table during embroidery, the embroidery unit will not move freely. Place the fabric so that it does not hang off the table or hold the fabric to keep it from dragging.	273
	Fabric is snagged or caught on something.	Stop the machine and place the fabric so that it does not get caught or snagged.	_
	Embroidery frame was removed during sewing (for example, to reset the bobbin). The presser foot was bumped or moved while removing or attaching the embroidery frame, or the embroidery unit was moved.	If the presser foot is bumped or the embroidery unit is moved during sewing, the pattern will not turn out. Be careful when removing or reattaching the embroidery frame during sewing.	280
	Stabilizer is incorrectly attached, for example, it is smaller than the embroidery frame.	Attach the stabilizer correctly.	256

Problem	Cause	Solution	Page
Loops appear on the	The thread tension is incorrectly set.	Adjust the thread tension.	301
surface of the fabric when embroidering	The tension of the upper thread is incorrectly set for the combination of the fabric, thread and pattern being used.	Use the embroidery needle plate cover.	274
	The combination of the bobbin case and bobbin thread is incorrect.	Change the bobbin case or bobbin thread so that the correct combination is used.	273

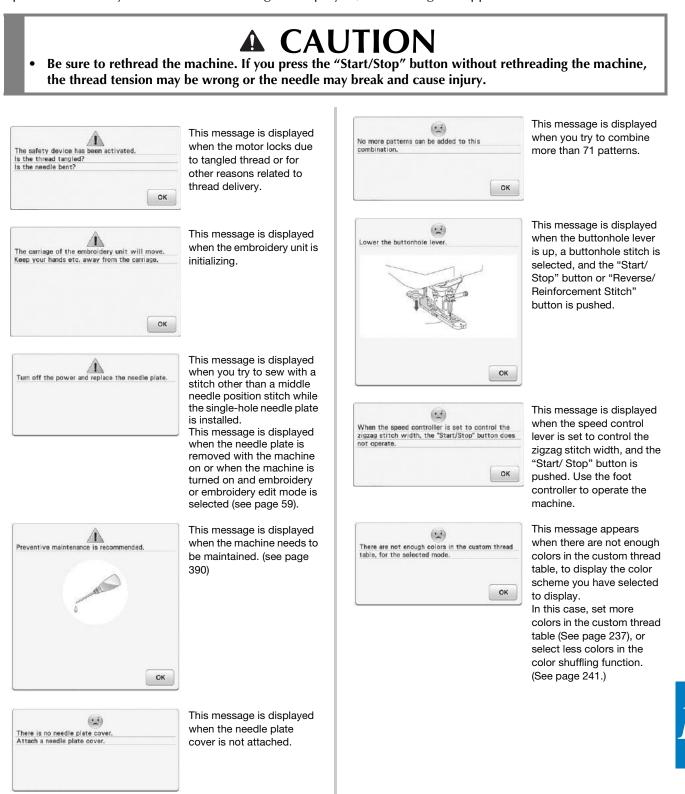
## **A** CAUTION

- This machine is equipped with a thread detection device. If the "Start/Stop" button is pushed before the upper threading is done, the machine will not operate properly. Also, depending on the pattern selected, the machine may feed the fabric even if the needle is raised. This is due to the needle bar release mechanism. At these times, the machine will make a sound different from what is made during normal sewing. This is not the sign of a malfunction.
- If the power is disconnected during sewing: Turn the main power to OFF and unplug the machine. If you restart the machine, follow the instructions for operating the machine correctly.

## **ERROR MESSAGES**

If the machine is not properly set and the "Start/Stop" button or the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed, or if the operation procedure is incorrect, the machine does not start. An alarm sounds and an error message is displayed on the LCD. If an error message displays, follow the instructions in the message.

Below is an explanation of error messages. Refer to these when necessary (if you press or do the operation correctly while the error message is displayed, the message disappears).



h colors in the thread table,
de.

In twin needle mode, the automatic needle threading button cannot be used. OK





Close

This message appears when there are not enough colors in the thread table, to display the color scheme effect you have selected. In this case, select another effect or the custom thread table (300 color palette) or less colors in the color shuffling function. (See page 241.) If there are not enough number of colors set in the custom thread table, set more colors in the table. (See page 237.)

This message is displayed when the automatic needle threading button is pushed while twin needle sewing is set.

This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pressed before the edge of the fabric is detected. To detect the edge of the fabric using the built-in camera, press

**Close**, raise the presser foot, and then perform the operation again. (see page 162)

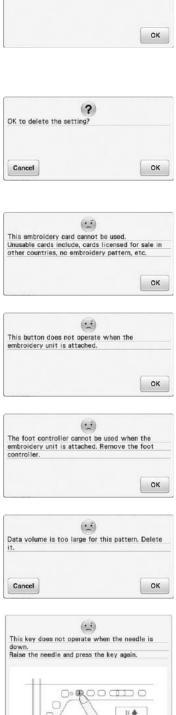
This message is displayed when the built-in camera cannot detect the edge of the fabric.

If this message appeared after sewing has reached 1 to 2 cm (about 3/8 to 3/4 inch) from the edge of the fabric, refer to step 13 in "Edge Sewing" on

page 167. If this message appeared during edge sewing, the edge of the fabric cannot be detected by the built-in

camera. Press Close , raise the presser foot, raise the needle if it is lowered, and then perform the procedure described in "Edge Sewing" on page 164 starting from step

6. If this error message appears again, sew without using edge sewing function.



....

Failed to save file.

This message is displayed when an unusable embroidery card is inserted. This message is displayed when the "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button is pushed while the embroidery unit is

attached.

and 98)

This message appears

when you try to save more

than 100 camera image or

settings screen image files

case, delete a file from the

USB media or use different

USB media. (See page 36

This message appears

pressed to delete the

To delete the selected

settings, press

when Delete or All Delete is

settings for a utility stitch.

OK

in the USB media. In this

This message is displayed when the foot controller is pressed while the embroidery unit is attached and machine is set up for embroidering.

This message is displayed when the patterns you are editing take up too much memory, or if you are editing too many patterns for the memory.

This message is displayed when a key on the LCD display is touched while the needle is in the down position.

This message is displayed when there are too many characters and the curved character configuration is impossible.

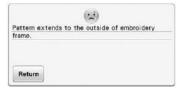
OK

OK

(....)

Cannot change the configuration of the characters.

406



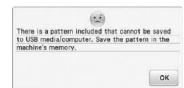
Pattern extends to the outside of embroidery frame. If you plan to add more patterns, rotate the pattern combination.

Remove the embroidery frame or scanning frame.

(:_:)		
dery frame.	6	
		OK
	dery frame.	dery frame.

This edi	ting function cannot be used when the
pattern	is out of the red outline. Use this
function	after moving the pattern.

OK



(1)	
Change to a larger embroidery frame.	
	1
	OK

This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode, and the character pattern combination is too large to fit in the embroidery frame.

This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the combined character pattern is too large for the embroidery frame. You can rotate the pattern 90 degrees and continue combining characters.

This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the embroidery unit tries to initialize while the embroidery frame is attached.

This message is displayed when the machine is ready to sew an embroidery pattern, and the "Start/ Stop" button is pushed while the embroidery frame is not attached.

This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery edit mode, and you try to use an editing function when the pattern is not completely within the red outline.

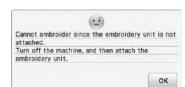
This message is displayed when you try to save a copyright protected pattern to USB media/Computer. According to copyright laws, patterns that are illegal to reproduce or edit cannot be saved to USB media or computer. If this message displays, save the pattern in the machine's memory.

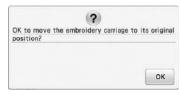
This message is displayed when the machine is in embroidery mode and the small frame is attached, and the selected pattern does not fit in the small frame.

This message appears when embroidery frame (small) is attached while aligning the embroidery position using the built-in camera.











Make sure embroidery frame is moved as far back as possible. LOCK DOWN THE FRAME-SECURING LEVER.



This message is displayed when Reset is pressed when changing thread colors.

This message appears if the machine is turned off while sewing, then turned

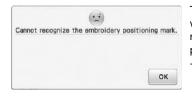
on again. Press **OK** to return the machine to the condition (pattern position and number of stitches) when it was turned off. Follow the procedure described in "If the Thread Breaks During Sewing" on page 281 to align the needle position and sew the remainder of the pattern.

This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed and the machine is in embroidery mode, but the embroidery unit is not attached.

This message is displayed when replacing the embroidering bobbin thread.

This message is displayed when rotating a saved combined pattern in the Embroidery screen.

This message is displayed when the embroidery frame is attached.



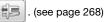
(:) Remove the embroidery positioning mark. 10 CLOSE

This message is displayed when the machine failed to recognize the embroidery positioning mark. - Confirm that the embroidery positioning mark is in the selected area. If problem persists, see page 268 to

reposition mark. - Machine failed to recognize printed positioning mark. Set "Page Scaling" to "None (100%)", and try printing the embroidery positioning mark again. (see page 299)

This message is displayed when the machine has recognized the embroidery position mark. Remove the embroidery positioning

sticker and press OK to continue. To remove the embroidery positioning sticker more easily, press



This message appears

being used to align the embroidery position, but the embroidery positioning

when the built-in camera is

sticker is too near an edge

or the pattern extends from the embroidery frame.

Change the positioning of

aligning the position again.

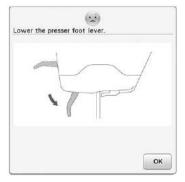
the embroidery position

sticker, and then try

See page 263.

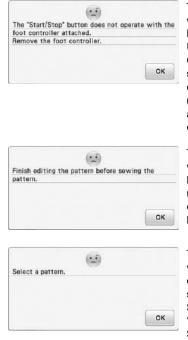
The pattern extends our of the pattern area. Change position of the pattern and scan the new area.

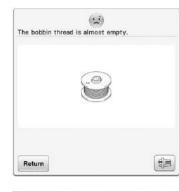


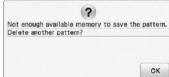


This message is displayed when the upper thread is broken or not threaded correctly, and the "Start/ Stop" button or the "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed.

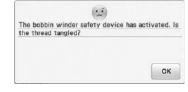
This message is displayed when the "Presser Foot Lifter" button is pushed while the presser foot lever is raised/the needle is lowered.







	(?)	
OK to delete t	the selected pattern?	





This message is displayed when the "Start/Stop" button is pushed to sew Utility stitches or Character/Decorative stitches while the foot controller is connected. (This message does not appear when embroidering).

This message is displayed when the "Start/ Stop" button is pushed while the machine is in embroidery edit mode and a pattern is being edited.

This message is displayed when there is no stitch or embroidery pattern selected and the "Start/ Stop" button or the "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button is pressed.

This message is displayed when the bobbin thread is running out.

This message is displayed when the memory is full and the stitch or pattern cannot be saved.

This message is displayed when, after selecting a

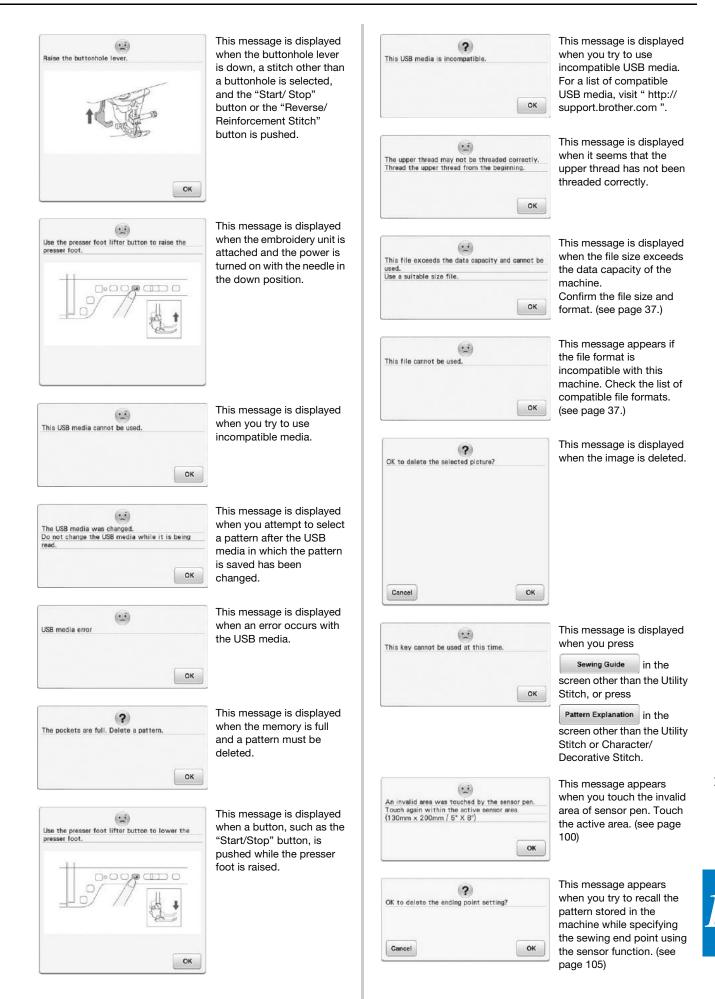
pattern,	Utility Stitch	,
Character Decorative Stitch	, or	ń

pressed and the pattern is about to be deleted.

is

This message is displayed when the bobbin is being wound, and the motor locks because the thread is tangled, etc.

This message is displayed when there is a possibility that the data for the selected pattern is corrupted.



fove the sensor pen away from the currently narked position.
narked position.



This message appears when you press down the sensor pen tip before



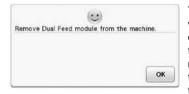
pressing for the certain period. Move the sensor pen away from the current position.

This message appears when something is wrong with the sensor unit of the machine. Consult your authorized Brother dealer.

An invalid sewing area was touched by the sensor pen. Touch again within the valid sewing area. This message appears when you touch the invalid area of sewing with the sensor pen. Touch the active area. (see page 100)

This message appears when the time/date is not set. Set time/date. (see page 31)

(...) Remove Embroidery foot with LED pointer from ок







This message appears when you try to start sewing utility/decorative stitch or character pattern with the embroidery foot with the LED pointer attached to the machine. Remove the embroidery foot with the LED pointer before entering the sewing mode. (see page 221)

This message appears when you try to start embroidering with the dual feed foot attached to the machine. Remove the dual feed foot before entering the embroidery mode. (see page 72)

This message appears when the function to specify the sewing end point cannot be used with the current stitch. Select other stitch. (see page 105)

This message appears when the dual feed foot cannot be used with the current stitch. Select other stitch.

(:	
This function cannot be used while in mode.	the sensor
	ок

This message appears when the selected function is not available with the sensor function. (see page 100, 268)

#### ■ Alarm Sounds

If the operation was performed incorrectly, an alarm sounds to indicate that an error occurred. If the operation was performed correctly, the machine beeps to confirm the operation.

#### 

• To cancel the operation beep or to change the volume, press , display screen 4/9, and then change the setting for "Machine Speaker Volume". See page 34 for more details.

## **SPECIFICATIONS**

	Item	Specification			
Sewing Machine (Box 1 of 2)	Dimensions of machine	Approx. 662 mm (W) $\times$ 348 mm (H) $\times$ 321 mm (D) (approx. 26-1/16 inches (W) $\times$ 13-11/16 inches (H) $\times$ 12-5/8 inches (D))			
	Dimensions of box	Approx. 740 mm (W) $\times$ 620 mm (H) $\times$ 405 mm (D) (approx. 29-1/8 inches (W) $\times$ 24-13/32 inches (H) $\times$ 15-15/16 inches (D))			
	Weight of machine	Approx. 17 kg (approx. 37.5 lb)			
	Weight of box (for shipping)	Approx. 26 kg (approx. 57.3 lb)			
	Sewing speed	70 to 1050 stitches per minute			
	Needles	Home sewing machine needles (HA × 130)			
Embroidery Unit (Box 2 of 2)	Dimensions of embroidery unit	Approx. 595 mm (W) $\times$ 139 mm (H) $\times$ 524 mm (D) (approx. 23-7/16 inches (W) $\times$ 5-15/32 inches (H) $\times$ 20-5/8 inches (D))			
	Dimensions of machine with embroidery unit attached	Approx. 916 mm (W) $\times$ 348 mm (H) $\times$ 524 mm (D) (approx. 36-1/16 inches (W) $\times$ 13-11/16 inches (H) $\times$ 20-5/8 inches (D))			
	Dimensions of box	Approx. 735 mm (W) × 620 mm (H) × 190 mm (D) (approx. 28-15/16 inches (W) × 24-13/32 inches (H) × 7-15/32 inches (D))			
	Weight of embroidery unit	Approx. 4.6 kg (approx. 10.1 lb)			
	Weight of box (for shipping)	Approx. 7.4 kg (approx. 16.3 lb)			
Total Shipping Weight (Comb	vination of all 2 boxes complete)	Approx. 37 kg (approx. 81.6 lb)			

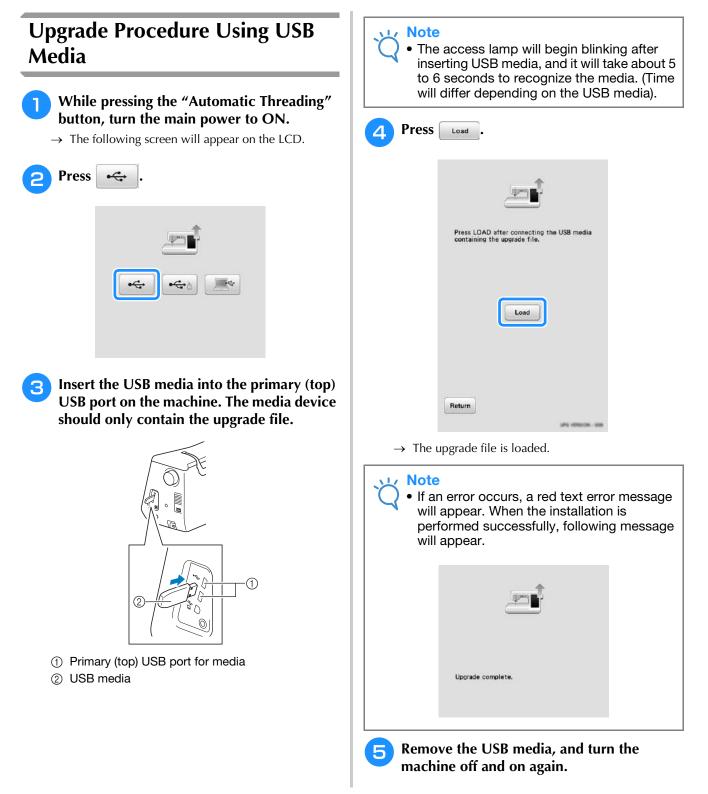
\* Please be aware that some specifications may change without notice.

## UPGRADING YOUR MACHINE'S SOFTWARE

You can use USB media or a computer to upgrade software for your sewing machine. When an upgrade program is available on "http://support.brother.com", please download the files following the instructions on the website and steps below.

#### <sub>レ</sub>Note

- When using USB media to upgrade the software, check that no data other than the upgrade file is saved on the USB media being used before starting to upgrade.
- Compatible operating systems: Microsoft Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8

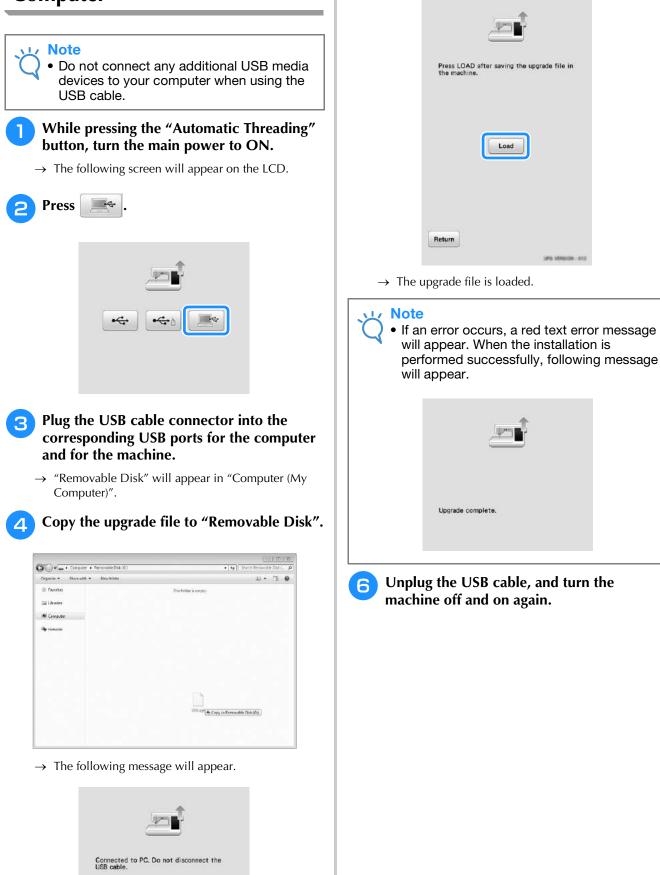


When the message disappears, press Load

Load

5







## STITCH SETTING CHART

The following chart shows information for each utility stitch concerning applications, stitch lengths, stitch widths, and whether or not the twin needle mode can be used.

• Quil

• Quilting foot "C" is used when the straight stitch needle plate is attached to the machine. Refer to "Using Free motion Quilting Foot "C"" on page 134.

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot Applications			h width (inch)]	Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin	
	0	<b>60</b>		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle	
1-01	Straight stitch (Left)		Å	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-02	Straight stitch (Left)		Ś	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-03	Straight stitch (Middle)		ŝ	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-04	Straight stitch (Middle)		Ś	General sewing, gather, pintuck, etc. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-05    	Triple stretch stitch		ĥ	General sewing for reinforcement and decorative topstitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-06	Stem stitch	-1)[-	ĥ	Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	1.0 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-07 1-107	Decorative stitch	<b>N</b> F	ĥ	Decorative stitching, top stitching	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-08     	Basting stitch	-1)[-	ŝ	Basting	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	20 (3/4)	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/ 16)	NO
1-09	Zigzag stitch		ŝ	For overcasting, mending. Reverse stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 5.0 (0 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-10 WW	Zigzag stitch		ĥ	For overcasting, mending. Reinforcement stitch is sewn while pressing "Reverse/ Reinforcement Stitch" button.	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 5.0 (0 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1.11	Zigzag stitch (Right)	-1)[-	ĥ	Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-12 ×	Zigzag stitch (Left)		ĥ	Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right.	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.3 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)
1-13	2 steps elastic zigzag	-1)[c	ĥ	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK (J)

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications		ch width n (inch)]	Stite [mn	Twin	
outon	outen name	0	90	Applications	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
1.14	2 steps elastic zigzag		K	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
1-16 VVVV	3 steps elastic zigzag	-)[C	Å	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
	Overcasting stitch		G	Reinforcing of light and medium weight fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-17	Overcasting stitch		G	Reinforcing of heavyweight fabric	5.0 (3/16)	2.5 - 5.0 (3/32 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-18	Overcasting stitch		G	Reinforcing of medium, heavyweight and easily friable fabrics or decorative stitching.	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
19	Overcasting stitch		ŝ	Reinforced seaming of stretch fabric	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-20	Overcasting stitch		K	Reinforcing of medium stretch fabric and heavyweight fabric, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-21 X	Overcasting stitch	-1)[-	ŝ	Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
	Overcasting stitch	۲) L	ŝ	Stretch knit seam	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-23	Single diamond overcast	L L	ŝ	Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-24	Single diamond overcast	L L	Å	Reinforcement of stretch fabric	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.8 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
1-25         	With side cutter		Ś	Straight stitch while cutting fabrics	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 2.5 (0 - 3/32)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-26 VVS	With side cutter		S	Zigzag stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 5.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
  >27  >S	With side cutter		s	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	3.5 (1/8)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-28 S	With side cutter		S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-29 1.1.29	With side cutter		S	Overcasting stitch while cutting fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.5 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-30    P	Piecing stitch (Right)		ŝ	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	5.5 (7/32)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-31   p	Piecing stitch (Middle)	-1)[c	c O	Piecework/patchwork	_	-	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Press	er foot	Applications		ch width n (inch)]		ch length n (inch)]	Twin
outon		0	<b>5</b> 7		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
1-32	Piecing stitch (Left)		K	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	1.5 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-33 + + + -	Hand-look quilting	, in the second s	ŝ	Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	0.0 (0)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-34 VQ	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch		K	Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.0 - 5.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
1-35 }	Quilting appliqué stitch	-1)[ <b>-</b>	ß	Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	1.5 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.8 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
1-36 1-38 28 20	Quilting stippling		ŝ	Background quilting	7.0 (1/4)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
2-01	Blind hem stitch	let a	R	Hemming woven fabrics	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
2-02	Blind hem stitch stretch	(ch. es	R	Hemming stretch fabric	0.0 (0)	+3.03.0 (+1/81/8)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
2-03	Blanket stitch		Å	Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-04	Shell tuck edge	L L	ŝ	Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK ( J )
3	Satin scallop stitch	<b>N</b> F	ŝ	Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.1 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-06	Scallop stitch	<b>N</b> F	Å	Decorating collar of blouse, edge of handkerchief	7.0 (1/4)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
2-07	Patchwork join stitch	L L	Å	Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	4.0 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.2 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-08	Patchwork double overlock stitch		ŝ	Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-09	Couching stitch		ŝ	Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.2 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-10	Smocking stitch		ŝ	Smocking, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-11	Feather stitch		ŝ	Fagoting, decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-12 KQ KQ	Fagoting cross stitch		Å	Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
2-13 2-13 2-13 2-13 2-13 2-13 2-13 2-13	Tape attaching	<b>F</b>	Å	Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)

Stitch	Stitch name	Press	er foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stite [mn	Twin	
Suton	Suten name	0	<b>60</b>		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
2-14	Ladder stitch	L L	ĥ	Decorative stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
2-15	Rick-rack stitch		ĥ	Decorative top stitching	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
2-16	Decorative stitch		ĥ	Decorative stitching	1.0 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
2.17	Decorative stitch		ĥ	Decorative stitching	5.5 (7/32)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
\$	Serpentine stitch		ĥ	Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
2-19 MMN	Decorative stitch	N	Å	Decorative stitching and appliqué	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
2-20	Decorative stippling stitch	<b>N</b> S	ĥ	Decorative stitching	7.0 (1/4)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-01    	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> F	ĥ	Decorative hems, triple straight at left	1.0 (1/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-02	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> F	Å	Decorative hems, triple straight at center	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-03	Hemstitching zigzag	<b>N</b> Sel	Å	Decorative hems, top stitching	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-04 E	Hemstitching	N	Å	Decorative hems, lace attaching pin stitch	3.5 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-05	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> Fol	Å	Decorative hems	3.0 (1/8)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-06 **	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> F	Å	Decorative hems daisy stitch	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3.07 000	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> F	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-08	Hemstitching	<b>N</b> F	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-09	Hemstitching	N	ĥ	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
3-10	Hemstitching	N	K	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-11 ×	Hemstitching	N	K	Heirloom, decorative hems	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot		Applications		h width ı (inch)]	Stite [mn	Twin	
onten		0	90		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
3-12	Honeycomb stitch	R	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-13	Honeycomb stitch	N	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.5 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK ( J )
3-14 XX	Hemstitching	N	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK ( J )
3-15	Hemstitching	R	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-16 ×	Hemstitching	N	Å	Heirloom, decorative hems	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	OK ( J )
3-17 ≢	Hemstitching	P	ŝ	Heirloom, decorative hems	4.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-18	Hemstitching	N	ŝ	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
3-19 ***	Hemstitching	N	Å	Decorative hems and bridging stitch	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК (Ј)
3-20	Hemstitching	P	ŝ	Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	ОК ( J )
3-21	Hemstitching	N	ŝ	Decorative hems, smocking	6.0 (15/64)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-22 72	Hemstitching	R	ŝ	Decorative hems, smocking	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/16 - 3/16)	NO
3-23 {/	Hemstitching	P	ŝ	Decorative hems, smocking	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-24	Hemstitching	R	Å	Decorative hems	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
3-25	Ladder stitch	N	ŝ	Decorative hems. Fagoting, attaching ribbon	7.0 (1/4)	0.0 - 7.0 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 3/32)	NO
<b>1</b> - 01	Narrow rounded buttonhole		A	Buttonhole on light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
<b>1</b> - 02	Wide round ended buttonhole	U-du E-	A	Buttonholes with extra space for larger buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4- 03 <b>()</b>	Tapered round ended buttonhole	0-dil E-	A	Reinforced waist tapered buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
<b>1</b> - 04	Round ended buttonhole		A	Buttonholes with vertical bar tack in heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications		h width ı (inch)]		h length n (inch)]	Twin
outon	outen name	<b>S</b>		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
4- 05	Round ended buttonhole		Buttonholes with bar tack	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
0 0	Round double ended buttonhole		Buttonholes for fine, medium to heavyweight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4- 07	Narrow squared buttonhole		Buttonholes for light to medium weight fabrics	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-08	Wide squared buttonhole		Buttonholes with extra space for larger decorative buttons	5.5 (7/32)	3.5 - 5.5 (1/8 - 7/32)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-09	Squared buttonhole		Heavy-duty buttonholes with vertical bar tacks	5.0 (3/16)	3.0 - 5.0 (1/8 - 3/16)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-10 ***	Stretch buttonhole		Buttonholes for stretch or woven fabrics	6.0 (15/64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.0 (1/16)	0.5 - 2.0 (1/32 - 1/16)	NO
4-11	Heirloom buttonhole		Buttonholes for heirloom and stretch fabrics	6.0 (15/64)	3.0 - 6.0 (1/8 - 15/64)	1.5 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	NO
4-12	Bound buttonhole		The first step in making bound buttonholes	5.0 (3/16)	0.0 - 6.0 (0 - 15/64)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 4.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
J.	Keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in heavyweight or thick fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
<b>J</b>	Tapered keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes in medium to heavy weight fabrics for larger flat buttons	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
<b>J</b>	Keyhole buttonhole		Buttonholes with vertical bar tack for reinforcement in heavyweight or thick fabrics	7.0 (1/4)	3.0 - 7.0 (1/8 - 1/4)	0.5 (1/32)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-16 []	4 steps buttonhole 1	PR ~	Left side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-17	4 steps buttonhole 2	F ~	Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-18 []	4 steps buttonhole 3	F ~	Right side of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-19 []	4 steps buttonhole 4		Bar tack of 4 step buttonhole	5.0 (7/32)	1.5 - 7.0 (1/16 - 1/4)	0.4 (1/64)	0.2 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO
4-20	Darning		Darning of medium weight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 3/32)	NO
4-21	Darning		Darning of heavyweight fabric	7.0 (1/4)	2.5 - 7.0 (3/32 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 2.5 (1/64 - 3/32)	NO
4-22	Bar tack		Reinforcement at opening of pocket, etc.	2.0 (1/16)	1.0 - 3.0 (1/16 - 1/8)	0.4 (1/64)	0.3 - 1.0 (1/64 - 1/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foc	er foot Applications		ch width n (inch)]	Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin	
outon		0	<b>60</b>	Applications	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
4-23 ©	Button sewing		M	Attaching buttons	3.5 (1/8)	2.5 - 4.5 (3/32 - 3/16)	_	_	NO
4-24 O	Eyelet	<b>N</b> T	Å	For making eyelets, holes on belts, etc.	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	7.0 (1/4)	7.0 6.0 5.0 (1/4 15/64 3/16)	NO
4-25	Star eyelet	N	ĥ	For making star-shaped eyelets on holes.	-	-	_	-	NO
5-01	Diagonally left up (Straight)	N	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	-	-	_	-	NO
5-02   ↑	Reverse (Straight)		ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	-	-	-	-	NO
5-03	Diagonally right up (Straight)	N	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	-	-	-	-	NO
5-04 	Sideways to left (Straight)	<b>N</b> S	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	-	_	-	NO
5-05 →	Sideways to right (Straight)	N	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	-	-	_	-	NO
5-06	Diagonally left down (Straight)	N	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	-	-	_	-	NO
5-07	Forward (Straight)	<b>N</b> Sel	Å	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	-	_	-	NO
5-08	Diagonally right down (Straight)	<b>N</b> T	Å	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	-	_	-	NO
5-09 ↔	Sideways to left (Zigzag)	<b>N</b> S	Å	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	_	-	_	-	NO
5-10 →	Sideways to right (Zigzag)	<b>N</b> F	ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric	-	-	_	-	NO
5-11 ≹↓	Forward (Zigzag)		ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	-	-	-	-	NO
5-12 {{ }}↑	Reverse (Zigzag)		ĥ	For attaching appliqué on tubular pieces of fabric and mitering corners	_	-	_	_	NO
Q- 01	Piecing stitch (Middle)		Ċ	Piecework/patchwork	_	-	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q- 02	Piecing stitch (Right)		ĥ	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) right seam allowance	5.50 (7/32)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q- 03	Piecing stitch (Left)		Å	Piecework/patchwork 6.5 mm (approx. 1/4 inch) left seam allowance	1.50 (1/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Presser foot	Applications	Stitch width [mm (inch)]		Stitch length [mm (inch)]		Twin	
outon		0	90		Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
Q- 04	Hand-look quilting		Å	Quilting stitch made to look like hand quilting stitch	3.50 (1/8)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q- 05	Basting stitch		Å	Basting	3.50 (1/8)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	20 (3/4)	5 - 30 (3/16 - 1-3/ 16)	NO
Q- 06	Stem stitch		Å	Reinforced stitching, sewing and decorative applications	1.00 (1/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0- 07 WQ	Quilting appliqué zigzag stitch	L L	ĥ	Zigzag stitch for quilting and sewing on appliqué quilt pieces	3.50 (1/8)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.0 - 5.0 (0 - 3/16)	NO
0-08	Zigzag stitch (Right)		Å	Start from right needle position, zigzag sew at left	3.50 (1/8)	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.6 (1/16)	0.3 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-09	Zigzag stitch (Left)		Å	Start from left needle position, zigzag sew at right	3.50 (1/8)	2.50 - 5.00 (3/32 - 3/16)	1.6 (1/16)	0.3 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-10 0-10	2 steps elastic zigzag		Å	Overcasting (medium weight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-11	3 steps elastic zigzag		Å	Overcasting (medium, heavyweight and stretch fabrics), tape and elastic	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-12	Quilting appliqué stitch		Å	Quilting stitch for invisible appliqué or attaching binding	2.00 (1/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-13 11	Shell tuck edge	L L	Å	Shell tuck edge finish on fabrics	4.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Blanket stitch		Å	Appliqués, decorative blanket stitch	3.50 (1/8)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-15 0-28839	Quilting stippling	L.	Å	Background quilting	7.00 (1/4)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-16	Overcasting stitch		Å	Stretch knit seam	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-17 Q-1 V V V V	Tape attaching		Å	Attaching tape to seam in stretch fabric	5.50 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.4 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q-18	Serpentine stitch	P	Å	Decorative stitching and attaching elastic	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q- 19	Feather stitch		K	Fagoting, decorative stitching	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-20	Fagoting cross stitch		K	Fagoting, bridging and decorative stitching	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
	Couching stitch		K	Decorative stitching, attaching cord and couching	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.2 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO

Stitch	Stitch name	Press	er foot	Applications		h width (inch)]		h length 1 (inch)]	Twin
outen	Suten name	0	57	Αμρισατίστο	Auto.	Manual	Auto.	Manual	needle
0-22	Patchwork double overlock stitch		ĥ	Patchwork stitches, decorative stitching	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-23	Smocking stitch		ĥ	Smocking, decorative stitching	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-24	Rick-rack stitch		ĥ	Decorative top stitching	4.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.5 (3/32)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-25 WWW	Decorative stitch		ĥ	Decorative stitching and appliqué	6.00 (15/64)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.0 (1/16)	0.2 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
C NNN	Decorative stitch		ĥ	Decorative stitching	5.50 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	1.6 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-27	Hemstitching	N	ĥ	Heirloom, decorative hems	5.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
G-28	Hemstitching	N	ĥ	Decorative hems and bridging stitch	6.00 (15/64)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	2.0 (1/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
0-29	Single diamond overcast		K	Reinforcement and seaming stretch fabric	6.00 (15/64)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	3.0 (1/8)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
Q- 36	Overcasting stitch		ĥ	Reinforcement of stretch fabric or decorative stitching	4.00 (3/16)	0.00 - 7.00 (0 - 1/4)	4.0 (3/16)	0.4 - 5.0 (1/64 - 3/16)	NO
C- 01	Free motion couching stitch	e	×	Free motion couching stitch	3.50 (1/8)	2.75 - 3.75 (3/32 - 1/8)	-	-	NO

## INDEX

#### A

#### B

Back to beginning key
Ball point needle 75/107 77, 304
Bar tacks 155
Basting 120
Blind hem stitches
Block move key 203
Bobbin
pulling up the bobbin thread
runs out of thread 280
setting
winding
Bobbin case
cleaning
Bobbin clip 19
Bobbin cover
Bobbin holder (switch) 56
Bobbin winder 15
Bobbin work
Border key 243, 246
Built-in camera
Button sewing 156
4 hole buttons 157
shank 157
Buttonhole lever
Buttonholes
four-step
odd-shaped/buttons that do not fit the button holder plate 152
one-step 149

### C

Calibrating the sensor pen
Character spacing key 235
Character/Decorative Stitches
adjustments 176
combining
editing
key functions 178
retrieving 192, 193
saving
selecting 170
sewing
-

stitch selection screens	1	171
Cleaning		
LCD screen	3	388
machine casing	3	388
race		
Clock		31
Color shuffling function	2	241
Combining Patterns		
character/decorative stitches		
embroidery edit	2	252
Connecting patterns	3	321
Cord guide bobbin cover	1	125
Couching	1	147
Crazy quilt	1	124
Custom Thread Table	237, 2	240
Cut/Tension key		301

### D

Darning	154
Dart seam	121
Density key	231
Dual feed foot	72

#### E

Echo quilting	137
Eco mode	. 36
Edge sewing	
edge sewing using the built-in camera	162
Editing	
character/decorative stitches	178
embroidery edit	224
MY CUSTOM STITCH	200
Elastic zigzag stitches	125
Elongation key	180
Embroidery	
adjusting the speed	305
automatic thread cutting function (END COLOR TRIM)	
edges or corners	
key functions	
restarting from the beginning	282
resuming embroidery after turning off the power	
ribbons or tape	
selecting patterns	
small fabrics	
thread color display	
thread trimming function (JUMP STITCH TRIM)	
Embroidery appliqué	
Embroidery edit	
changing the thread color	236
combined patterns 252,	
custom thread table 237,	240
key functions	225
repeated patterns	
Embroidery foot "W2"	211
Embroidery frame display	
Embroidery frames	
attaching	261
inserting fabric	258
removing	261
types	
using the embroidery sheet	
Embroidery needle plate cover	
Embroidery patterns	
aligning the position	286
checking the position	
combining	
duplicating	
editing	
-	

linked characters		308
pattern selection screens		215
retrieving 22	21,	315
saving	~	314
selecting		214
sewing		273
using a frame pattern to make an appliqué	7,	318
Embroidery positioning sticker		266
Embroidery sheet		
Embroidery unit 1	7,	211
carriage		. 17
Enlarger key		
Error messages		405
Eyelet		157

#### F

Fabrics
fabric/thread/needle combinations
sewing heavyweight fabrics
sewing lightweight fabrics 89
sewing stretch fabrics
Fagoting 144
Feed dogs 16, 133
Flat bed attachment 15, 212
Flat fell Seam 122
Forward/Back key 281, 282
Free motion quilting
free motion echo quilting foot "E" 137
free motion open toe quilting foot "O" 136
free motion quilting foot "C" 134
Free motion sewing mode 133

#### G

-	
Gathering	
Grid direction key	201
Guideline marker	

#### н

Handle	
Handwheel	
Heirloom	146
Hemstitching	
daisy stitch	146
drawn work	147
Home page screen	

#### I

Image key	 114,	182,	202,	226
Insert key	 			204

#### K

Key functions	
character/decorative stitches	
embroidery	251
embroidery edit	225
MY CUSTOM STITCH	200
utility stitches	111
Knee lifter	15, 96

#### L

L/R Shift	
LCD screen	
cleaning	
light	
Lower threading	
pulling up the bobbin thread	61
setting the bobbin	59
winding the bobbin	

#### Μ

Machine operation mode key	
Main power switch	
Mirror image key	
MPEG-4 (MP4) videos	
Multi color key	232
Multi-directional sewing	
Multi-function foot controller	15, 26, 83, 84
Multi-purpose screwdriver	
MY CUSTOM STITCH	
designing	198
entering data	
key functions	
retrieving	206
saving	206
storing in your list	206
My Design Center	
, 0	

### Ν

Needle	
changing the needle	75
changing the needle position	118
checking the needle location	
fabric/thread/needle combinations	
mode	
twin needle	65
Needle bar thread guides	
Needle calibration	· · · · ·
Needle clamp screw	
Needle mode selection key	
Needle plate	
Needle position	
Needle Position button	

#### 0

Operation buttons	15,	, 17
Overcasting	124,	126

#### Р

Patchwork 124
Piecing 131
Pintuck 123
Pivoting
Point delete key 202
Power cord
Power cord receptacle15
Presser foot
attaching
pressure
removing
types
Presser foot code 250
Presser foot holder
Presser foot holder screw
Presser foot lever
Presser Foot Lifter button
Presser foot/Needle exchange key 65, 70, 75
Pre-tension disk 15, 55, 58
Print and stitch

#### Q

Quilting	129
free motion	
with satin stitches	133

#### R

Race	388
Reinforcement stitch	. 85
Reinforcement Stitch button	. 85

Repeated patterns 243
Retrieving
character/decorative stitch patterns 192
computer 194, 222
embroidery patterns 315
machine's memory 192, 315
MY CUSTOM STITCH designs 206
stitch settings 115
USB media 193, 221
utility stitches 115
Reverse Stitch button
Reverse/Reinforcement Stitch button
Reverse/Reinforcement stitches
Rotate key 227

#### S

Satin stitches 133, 18	81
Saving	
character/decorative stitches 19	
computer 191, 3	14
embroidery patterns 3*	13
machine's memory 190, 3	13
MY CUSTOM STITCH designs 20	
stitch settings 1	
USB media 190, 3	
utility stitches 1	
Scallop stitches	
Scan	
Screen saver	
Sensor functions	
embroidering position	68
guideline marker	
L/R Shift	
needle drop position	
Sensor pen	
Sensor pen holder	51
Set key	
Settings	51
automatic thread cutting	04
display language	
embroidery settings	
general settings	
machine setting mode key	
sewing settings	
stitch length	
stitch width	
thread tension	
thread trimming	
Sewing key 24	
Sewing machine help key	
Sewing speed controller (speed control slide) 15, 17, 8	
Sewing type selection key	
Shelltuck stitches 14	
Shutoff support mode	
Side cutter 12	
Single/Repeat sewing key 18	30
Single/Triple stitching key 20	01
Size key 22	
Size selection key 18	30
Smocking stitches 14	
Soft cover case	22
Speaker	34
Specifications 47	11
Spool cap	15
Spool net	69
Spool pin	15
Spool stand	
Spool stand LED	
Stabilizer 2!	
Start/Stop button	
Starting point key	
Step stitch patterns	
Stitch setting chart	
Straight stitch foot	

Straight stitch needle plate		1	19
Straight stitches			
Supplemental spool pin	15,	54,	66

#### Т

	_
Tape attaching12	25
Tape or elastic attaching 14	15
Test key 202, 20	
Thread	
fabric/thread/needle combinations7	7
thread tension	)1
Thread color display 30	)5
Thread cutter	33
Thread Cutter button 1	7
Thread density key 18	31
Thread guide	
Thread guide plate 15, 57, 6	
Thread marks 24	
Thread palette key 236, 24	10
Top cover 1	5
Top stitching 14	
Touch pen	
holder 1	5
Trial key 27	'1
Troubleshooting	92
Tutorial video	15
Twin needle 6	55

#### U

Uninterrupted embroidering
Upgrading 412
Upper threading
twin needle mode65
using the "Automatic Threading" button
using the spool net
USB cable 48, 191, 222, 298, 314, 413
USB media
recalling 193, 221
saving 190, 313
usable
USB mouse
USB port connector
for computer 15, 191, 314
for media 15, 190, 313
Utility stitches
key functions 111
pattern explanation key 47
retrieving 115
saving 115
selecting 110
sewing type selection key 44
stitch selection screens 112
stitch setting chart 414

#### V

#### W

Z	
Zigzag stitches Zipper insertion	
centeredside	

10



Please visit us at <u>http://support.brother.com</u> where you can get product support and answers to frequently asked questions (FAQs).

English 882-W20/W22 Printed in Taiwan

